

P. J. Hillery

THE GEORGIAN LANGUAGE

An outline grammatical summary

ქართული ენა

Made by Vidaba

Minsk, 2013

INTRODUCTION

Conventions

All text in the Georgian script has been transliterated to make the material more accessible. Details of this scheme are provided in the section on the Georgian alphabet.

Georgian illustrative material is presented in two formats: (1) isolated words and word collocations, and (2) illustrative phrases and sentences. In both cases, a transliteration of the Georgian is given in italics, while (2) is accompanied by a basic grammatical analysis of the material. Boundaries between the morphemes (that is, basic grammatical units) are usually marked in the transliteration, but they have sometimes been omitted for the sake of clarity. In keeping with the Georgian practice, proper names have not been capitalized in the transliterations.

All verb roots are marked in bold. Incorrect or unattested forms are preceded by an asterisk.

The symbol Ø is used to denote that no affix is added (e.g., წერს *ts'er-Ø-s* 'he writes it', where it emphasizes that this verb incorporates no present/future stem formant).

In the grammatical analyses, the subject of tripersonal verbs is indicated by 'X', the direct object by 'Y', and the indirect object by 'Z'. Other verbs are marked analogously. The basic definition of the verb is given in the present. To take the example of the verb მისცემს *mi-s-tsem-s* ('he will give it to him'), the basic grammatical analysis would read

X-gives-Y-to-Z (fut 3s 3s 3s)

This is to be read as the future screeve with all three objects in the third person, that is, 'he (X) will give (future screeve) it (Y) to him (Z)', that is, 'he will give it to him'. A gloss of the form

X-gives-Y-to-Z (aor 3p 1s 2s)

would correspond to the English 'they (X) gave (aorist screeve) me (Y) to you (Z)', that is, 'they gave me to you'.

Grammatical detail not directly relevant to the point being illustrated is not always made explicit.

A significant amount of information is given in tabular form. This approach is designed to provide a concise overview of complex material, to highlight overall patterns in the grammar of the language, and to act as a useful reference tool. Complex tables are usually accompanied by illustrative examples.

The following two points should be kept in mind:

- Georgian does not distinguish between 'he / him', 'she / her' and 'it' and, although only the masculine form is used in the translations, either of the other two pronouns can usually be substituted.
- The Georgian verb invariably includes an implicit subject and – if transitive – one or more objects, whether or not these are always expressed in English. For example, the Georgian verb გაუგზავნის *ga-u-gzavn-i* means 'he will send it to him'; the verb itself incorporates all three persons, 'he', 'it', and 'him'.

The Caucasian Languages

There is considerable linguistic diversity in the area between the Black and Caspian Seas, which is divided into the North and South Caucasus by the Caucasus mountain range. It is not surprising that a number of the world's major language families are represented in this region, which finds itself between Europe, the Near East, and Asia. These language families are:

- Indo-European (Armenian, Ossetian, etc.)
- Altaic (Azerbaijani, Karachai-Balkarian, etc.)
- Afro-Asiatic (Modern Aramaic).

These language families have extended into a part of Eurasia where a number of indigenous tongues (about 40), collectively known as the Caucasian languages, have been spoken for at least four millennia, and which today have a total of about 5.5 million speakers in the Caucasus, in some countries of the Near East (largely as the result of forced migrations), and elsewhere (as the result of the movements of migrants during the last two decades).

The Caucasian languages are divided into a number of areal groups (that is, groups based on geographic regions), each consisting of a number of related languages:

- North West Caucasian (abbreviated NWC) or the Adyghe-Abkhaz group, whose main members are Kabardian and Adyghe
- North Central Caucasian (abbreviated NCC) or Nakh, which includes Chechen and Ingush, and which, together with the Avar-Andi-Tsez languages, is known by some as the Nakh-Daghestanian group and is viewed as a western branch of the NEC languages
- North East Caucasian (abbreviated NEC) or Daghestanian, which includes Avar, Lezghian, and Dargwa
- the South Caucasian (Kartvelian) languages, which are spoken in western and central parts of the South Caucasus.

Although a number of Soviet specialists have held the view that there is a genetic relationship between the Caucasian language groups, most linguists do not consider that this has been satisfactorily demonstrated. There are a number of areal features that are common to the Caucasian language families, including:

- ejective consonants
- an agglutinative morphology
- verb subject and object prefixes
- use of postpositions
- ergativity.

However, these features (which are described elsewhere in this grammar) may also be accounted for in terms of a Sprachbund (or linguistic area), either because the families have been in close contact for a long time or because they all share some features from a common source. While it is possible that a link between the North Caucasian groups may one day be demonstrated, a relationship between these and the Kartvelian languages will undoubtedly be more difficult to establish.

Numerous attempts have been made to link Caucasian languages with other languages and language families, but several have been discredited, and others lack convincing evidence. There have been several endeavors to find links with Basque or with the languages of the ancient Near East (Hattic, Hurrian, etc.). Ablaut patterns (that is, vowel changes in word roots) and a small number of loan words have been used to support the view that there were early contacts between the Kartvelians and the Indo-Europeans. More speculative hypotheses include the Kartvelian languages in the Nostratic 'superfamily', while the other groups have been assigned to the Sino-Caucasian (or Dene-Caucasian) superfamily.

In addition to the areal features common to all or some of the Caucasian language groups, there are also some striking differences between the various languages in their sound systems, grammar, and syntax. The Kartvelian group is distinguished from the others in a number of respects, including the following (which are dealt with in detail elsewhere in this description):

- the use of relative pronouns and conjunctions together with finite verb forms in subordinate and relative constructions
- the absence of noun classes
- formal rather than functional ergativity
- the exclusive use of postpositions in locative expressions.

The Kartvelian group also has the simplest consonantal system, although it permits more complex consonant clusters than any other Caucasian language. Georgian, the Kartvelian literary language, is written in the only native Caucasian script to have survived in use up to the present day.

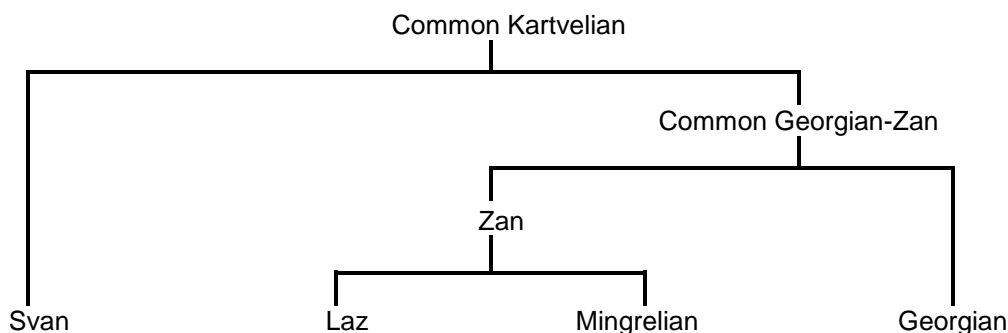
The Kartvelian Languages

The Kartvelian languages of the South Caucasus are:

- Svan, spoken by about 40,000 in the high mountainous areas of the north-west Caucasus centered on Mest'ia and Lent'ekhi
- Laz (Ch'an), spoken by about 50,000 on the Black Sea coast between Pazar (Atina) and Sarpi
- Mingrelian, with about 360,000 speakers in an area between the Black Sea and the Tskhenists'q'ali river and bordering the Svan homeland to the north
- Georgian, spoken by more than 3 million over an area stretching from the Black Sea to the Alazani basin.

Georgian serves both as a lingua franca and as a literary language for speakers of Svan and Mingrelian, while most Laz speakers are bilingual in Turkish.

The relationship between Mingrelian and Laz is close and, although mutually unintelligible, they are viewed by some as dialects of a single language, known as Zan. Glottochronological studies suggest that Zan diverged from Georgian – both of which are derived from Common Georgian-Zan – about 2,700 years before the present. (Mingrelian is somewhat closer to Georgian than is Laz). The validity of such studies, which are based upon vocabulary comparisons, is disputed. Based on the same studies, the time depth for the separation of the Svan language from Common Georgian-Zan is estimated to be of the order of 4,000 years. As a result of this early separation, Svan preserves a number of archaic forms. Also, on account of its relatively isolated location in the Caucasus mountains, it has fewer loan-words from languages such as Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and Greek, from which the other Kartvelian languages to the south have borrowed extensively.



The Kartvelian languages

All Kartvelian languages have, to a greater or lesser extent, been influenced by the culturally dominant member of the group, Georgian. Although the above figures for the divergence of the various branches may be speculative, the internal relationships within the Kartvelian language group are well established. It has been possible to reconstruct a number of the features of the proto-language, known as Common Kartvelian or Proto-Kartvelian. A straightforward illustration is the reconstructed Common Kartvelian root *-*ts'on-* corresponding to the concept of 'weigh', which has identical reflexes in the four Kartvelian languages:

Svan	ონწონ	<i>on-ts'on</i>
Mingrelian	დოვწონი	<i>do-v-ts'on-i</i>
Laz	ფწონი	<i>p-ts'on-i</i>
Georgian	ავწონე	<i>a-v-ts'on-e</i>

all meaning 'I weighed it'.

The following is an extract from a Mingrelian folk tale, together with a translation into Georgian. It is given here as a general illustration of the surface similarities between the two languages. The symbol 'ə' is used to indicate an unrounded mid-back vowel present in the Zugidi-Samurzaq'an dialect of Mingrelian (and not the schwa); 'ç' indicates the glottal stop.

Mingrelian

arti sats'əq'ali chilami k'ochi koçopen do arti skuashi met'i vanoçunue, mara dzalami skvimi do shelebiani çope do sakh eli jokhode 'geria'. arti dghasə te boshik ot'q'aləsha midartə do onjuas çudesha miishəni, ...

Georgian

erti sats'q'ali tsoliani k'atsi q'opila da erti shvilis met'i ar hq'olia; magram dzalian lamazi da dzlieri q'opila da sakheli erkva 'geria'. ert dghes es bich'i sanadirod ts'avida da saghamos sakhishi rom modioda, ...

The table below lists the first ten cardinal numbers in each of the Kartvelian languages. Equivalent data from representatives of each of the other Caucasian language families have been included to contrast with the obvious similarities between the Kartvelian languages. Each of the three non-Kartvelian languages shown is spoken in close proximity to a member of the Kartvelian group. Abkhaz belongs to the North West Caucasian group and has about 80,000 speakers to the north-west of the areas where Mingrelian and Svan are spoken. The North Central Caucasian language Ts'ova-Tush (or Bats) has about 3,000 speakers in the otherwise Georgian-speaking district of Tusheti. The

Tsezic language Bezhta (a member of the Avar-Andi-Tsez group of the North East Caucasian languages) is spoken by about 9,000 people, around 400 of whom live in settlements in the Georgian-speaking Q'vareli district.

number	KARTVELIAN LANGUAGES				NWC	NCC	NEC
	Svan	Mingrelian	Laz	Georgian	Abkhaz	Ts'ova-Tush	Bezhta
1	ešxu	arti	arti / (ɔ)ar	erti	ak'ə	çə	hōs
2	yor / yerbi	žiri / žeri	žuri	ori	y°ba	ši	q'ona
3	semi	sumi	sumi	sami	xpa	qo	l'ana
4	woštɰw	otxi	o(n)txo / otxu	otxi	pšba	d-wiv'	ōq'ōnā
5	woxušd / woxwišd	xuti	xu(ti)	xuti	x°ba	pxi	l'ina
6	usgwa	amšvi	a(n)ši	ekvsi	fba	yetx	il'na
7	išgwid	škviti	šk(v)iti	švidi	bəžba	vorl'	aλna
8	ara	(b)ruo	ovro	rva	aaba	barl'	beλna
9	čxara	čxoro	čxo(v)ro	cxra	ž°ba	iş	ač'ena
10	yešd / yešt'	viti	viti	ati	ž°aba	iṭ	ac'ona

Numerals 1-10 in selected Caucasian languages

Ergativity in Georgian is purely formal (that is, its use is obligatory), unlike the situation in some other Caucasian languages where it can have semantic significance. In Ts'ova-Tush, the contrast between the use of the absolutive and the ergative is used to express the degree of control by the subject over the events described.

Svan patterns similarly to Georgian, whereas Mingrelian uses the narrative case to mark the subjects of both transitive and intransitive verbs in the aorist. Laz uses the narrative to mark the subject of transitive verbs in all series, not only in the aorist.



Minority languages in Georgia (selected)

1. Chechen; 2. Ts'ova-Tush (Bats); 3. Bezhta, Hunzib; 4. Udi; 5. Azerbaijani; 6. Armenian; 7. Laz (Ch'an); 8. Mingrelian; 9. Abkhaz; 10. Svan; 11. Ossetian.

Georgian Dialects

The dialects of Georgian can be divided into an eastern and a western group on the basis of shared features; a total of 17 can be identified. They differ from each other in certain aspects of phonology, morphology, syntax, and vocabulary, but all retain an overall set of features not very dissimilar to the standard language. Some of the dialects have come under the strong influence of neighboring languages. Ingilo, spoken in a part of the Alazani river valley that is now in Azerbaijan, has been influenced by Azerbaijani and by Avar, while Klarjian has come under the influence of Turkish, the dominant language of the region in which it is spoken. The Persian influence on the Fereidan dialect of Georgian is a special case, as the latter is spoken today in Iran by the descendants of Kakhetians who were deported there by the Safavid monarch Shah 'Abbas I in the seventeenth century. Among the features which are found in the Georgian dialects are the following:

- the addition of *ჲ*- *y*- and *ჳ*- *w*- before certain vowels (as in *ერთი erti* → *ჲერთი yerti* 'one', *ორი ori* → *ჳორი wori* 'two', etc.)
- a distinction between long and short vowels
- additional vowel sounds not found in the standard language
- presence of both *ჟ q* and *ყ q'* sounds
- the use of the *n*-plural
- plural adjectival forms
- non-standard verb forms
- words not found in the standard language.

In general, the mountain dialects are more conservative and preserve a number of archaisms that have disappeared from other dialects. However, the simplification of certain complexities of standard Georgian also occurs in the dialects. The standard literary language is based on Kartlian dialect of the eastern lowlands.

Georgian has exerted an influence on other languages of the area, especially on Ts'ova-Tush and on some of the Tsezic languages.

Agglutination

Georgian is predominantly an agglutinative language (that is, one in which elements combine linearly to form words), but it does have some inflectional features (that is, where there is no exact one-to-one correspondence between the basic elements and the form of the resulting words). The agglutinative nature of the language is most evident in the verb complex. For example, the Georgian verb *დაგვალევინებდითო dagvalevinebdito* ("you would give it to us to drink", he said') may be broken down into the following grammatical units:

და-გვ-ა-ლევ-ინ-ებ-დ-ი-თ-ო
da-gv-a-lev-in-eb-d-i-t-o

preverb – indirect object marker – pre-radical vowel – verb root (-ლევ- *-lev-* 'drink') – causative marker – present/future stem formant – stem augment – screeve marker – plural marker – indirect speech marker.

Of course, not all verbs (or other parts of speech) are necessarily as complex as this example. These various elements and their functions are examined in some detail elsewhere in this description of Georgian grammar.

Why Study Georgian?

Georgian has the status of official language in the Republic of Georgia. It is used in all areas of society, and a working knowledge of the language is essential for effective communication in the country.

Georgian is not only more accessible than the other Caucasian languages because of the wealth of published material available, it is also often the only language in which materials essential to the study of Georgian and Caucasian society, culture, history, and linguistics is available.

A knowledge of the language can make the study of more accessible aspects of Georgian culture, such as folk singing, film, and the like, much more rewarding.

Georgian has a number of interesting features, and is of considerable intrinsic value to linguists.

Georgian literature

A knowledge of the language also allows direct access to a rich literary tradition stretching back over one and a half millennia. The oldest extant works are lives of the saints, although historical and philosophical texts survive from an early date. The high point of the Golden Age of Georgian literature is represented by the thirteenth century epic romance *ვეფხისტყაოსანი vepkhist'q'aosani* ('The Knight in the Panther's Skin') by Shota Rustaveli. Georgian literary output declined after the area suffered a number of invasions, but the sixteenth century saw the beginning of a renaissance that lasted until the middle of the nineteenth century. Although in earlier periods Georgian literature incorporated elements from neighboring Byzantium and Persia, it later found a more European orientation. In the late nineteenth century, Georgian literature played an important role in the reawakening of national consciousness.

Georgian also has an extremely rich repertoire of folk poetry and songs.

GEORGIAN ALPHABET

The *Mkhedruli* Alphabet

The contemporary Georgian script is known as *Mkhedruli*, from მხედრული *mxedruli* ('military'), in contrast to the earlier *Khutsuri*, from ხუცურსი *xucuri* ('ecclesiastical'), script. The oldest surviving examples of *Mkhedruli* date from the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and it may well be that the script was a development of a cursive form of *Khutsuri*. The forms of the *Khutsuri* letters may have been derived from the northern Arsacid variant of the Pahlavi (or Middle Iranian) script, which itself was derived from the older Aramaic. However, the direction of writing (from left to right), the use of separate symbols for the vowel sounds, the numerical values assigned to the letters in earlier times, and the order of the letters all point to significant Greek influence on the script.

ა	ბ	გ	დ	ე	ვ	ზ	თ	ი	კ	ლ	მ	ნ	ო	პ	ჟ	რ
a	b	g	d	e	v	z	t	i	k'	l	m	n	o	p'	ž	r
ა	ბ	გ	დ	ე	ვ	ზ	თ	ი	კ	ლ	მ	ნ	ო	პ	ჟ	რ
ს	ტ	უ	ფ	ქ	ღ	ყ	შ	ჩ	ც	ძ	წ	ჭ	ხ	ჯ	ჰ	
s	t'	u	p	k	gh	q'	sh	ch	ts	dz	ts'	ch'	kh	j	h	

Georgian *Mkhedruli* alphabet

Modern Georgian makes use of 33 letters, while Old Georgian had a further five letters that have now have fallen out of use (Ⴀ, Ⴁ, Ⴃ, Ⴄ, and Ⴅ). The *Mkhedruli* alphabet is given in the table above, together with the transliteration scheme now being phased in on this website (in rows 2 and 5).

Older versions of pages on this site (revision 2.X) use a transcription scheme that is now being phased out (rows 3 and 6 above). This scheme was not ideal in that it used several digraphs (that is, sequences of two or more letters pronounced as a single sound), but it did have the merit of being suited to the English-speaking learner. There was little ambiguity, as the digraph letter pairs rarely occur as combinations of two individual letters. Examples of where this transcription scheme had to be modified to avoid misunderstanding are *khid.ze* for the Georgian ხიდზე ('on the bridge'; now *xidze*), **not** *ხიდე **khidze* (now **xize*), and *surat.s* for სურათს ('picture' – accusative; now *surats*), **not***სურაც **surats* (now **surac*). In such cases, the use of a dot in the transcription clarified the Georgian spelling.

Georgian does not distinguish between upper and lower case letters. For emphasis and in some other situations, letters which are normally printed with ascenders and descenders, or both, are all printed as if to fit between two parallel horizontal lines. This is similar to the English capital letters, the difference being that in Georgian the forms of the letters always remain unaltered.

Some letters have variant forms which occur in some fonts and are widely encountered in handwriting; these are რ *r*, ლ *l*, ო *o*, and ჯ *j*. Georgian handwriting can sometimes present difficulties, not least because of the number of ligatures used.

Letter names

The letters of the Georgian alphabet have traditional names (ანი *ani*, ბანი *bani*, განი *gani*, დანი *doni*, etc.), but these are little used nowadays. Instead, vowels are pronounced as written, and consonants are vocalized by the addition of an ე *e*; for example, ჟ *ž* is pronounced as ჟე *že*.

Letter frequencies

The table below gives the relative frequencies (in percentage points) of the letters of the Georgian alphabet, based on an analysis of some 100,000 letters in a non-specialized text.

ა	ბ	გ	დ	ე	ვ	ზ	თ	ი	კ	ლ	მ	ნ	ო	პ	ჟ	რ
15.4	3.5	2.1	4.3	9.6	3.5	0.9	3.3	10.9	1.6	4.5	4.8	3.9	4.7	0.4	0	5.8
ს	ტ	უ	ფ	ქ	ღ	ყ	შ	ჩ	ც	ძ	წ	ჭ	ხ	ჯ	ჰ	
7.1	1.0	2.4	0.7	1.2	0.5	0.9	1.6	0.3	1.1	0.5	0.8	0.2	2.0	0.3	0.3	

Georgian letter frequencies (%)

The *Asomtavruli* Alphabet

The *asomtavruli* ('capital') majuscule letters, which date from the fifth to the tenth centuries, are sometimes encountered in decorative inscriptions.

THE SOUNDS OF GEORGIAN

The Consonants

Modern Georgian comprises 33 consonant phonemes. These are listed and classified in the following table, which also includes IPA transcriptions. The sound of an individual consonant may be heard by clicking on the corresponding symbol on the diagram. (Note that some selected allophones are also shown, only one of which is heard in the corresponding phoneme sound sample.)

	bilabial		labio-dental	dental		alveolar		post-alveolar		velar		uvular	glottal
	vcl.	vcd.	vcd	vcl.	vcd.	vcl.	vcd.	vcl.	vcd.	vcl.	vcd.	vcl.	vcl.
plosive	ფ [pʰ]	ბ [b]		თ [tʰ]	დ [d]					კ [kʰ]	გ [g]		
ejective	ჰ [pʰ]			ტ [tʰ]						ჰ [kʰ]		ყ [qʰ]	
affricative						ც [tsʰ]	ძ [dz]	ჩ [tʃʰ]	ჯ [dʒ]				
ejective						ჭ [tsʰ]		ჭ [tʃʰ]					
nasal		მ [m]			ნ [n]								
trill							რ [r]						
tap							რ [r]						
fricative	ვ [φ]	ვ [β]	ვ [v]			ს [s]	ზ [z]	შ [ʃ]	ჯ [ʒ]	ხ [x]	ყ [χ]	ყ [χ]	ჰ [h]
approximant	ვ [w]	ვ [w]					რ [ɹ]						
lateral approximant							ლ [l, l̥]						

vcl (voiceless); vcd. (voiced); selected allophones are shown shaded

Georgian consonants

Triadic Subsystem

Some 16 Georgian consonants (the plosives and fricatives) can be organized into groups of three, each triad comprising a voiced, voiceless aspirated, and voiceless ejective sound. The table below illustrates this classification. The voiceless ejective ყ *q'* is included, but it has no corresponding voiced and voiceless aspirated sounds.

voiced	ბ <i>b</i>	დ <i>d</i>	ძ <i>dz</i>	ჯ <i>j</i>	გ <i>g</i>	—
voiceless aspirated	ფ <i>p</i>	თ <i>t</i>	ც <i>c</i>	ჩ <i>ch</i>	კ <i>k</i>	—
voiceless ejective	ჰ <i>p'</i>	ტ <i>t'</i>	ჭ <i>ts'</i>	ჭ <i>ch'</i>	ჰ <i>k'</i>	ყ <i>q'</i>

Consonant system

Ejective Consonants

Let us take the triad comprising ბ – ქ – ჰ *b – k – k'* as an example. The contrast between the voiced and the voiceless aspirated sounds in Georgian is similar to the difference between the English /g/ sound in 'ghoul' [gu:l] and the /k/ sound in 'cool' [kʰu:l]. The /k/ sound in 'school' [sku:l], on the other hand, is voiceless but not aspirated. (Aspiration is the audible breath that accompanies some sounds, and which can be detected if the palm of the hand is placed in front of the mouth while producing the sound.) If the sound of the letters <ck> in 'sickness' are articulated in an emphatic manner and accompanied by simultaneous closure of the vocal tract (such as occurs between the syllables of the negative response 'uh-oh'), the result can sometimes approach that of the third element of the triad, the voiceless ejective. In technical terms, the ejectives are produced using air compressed in the mouth cavity, while the supply of air from the lungs is cut off by complete closure of the glottis (the aperture between the folds of the vocal cords). To produce the ejective ჰ *k'*, for example, the basic /k/ sound (as in 'school') and a 'glottal stop' (as in the unwritten release of the glottis between the two /o/ sounds in 'cooperate'), are produced simultaneously.

The ejectives consonants play a significant role in the Georgian sound system, and must be mastered at an early stage by the learner. Georgian has six such sounds:

პ	<i>p'</i>	~ up keep
ტ	<i>t'</i>	~ sit com
წ	<i>ts'</i>	~ sits near
ჭ	<i>ch'</i>	~ much noise
კ	<i>k'</i>	~ sick ness
ყ	<i>q'</i>	—

The substitution of an ejective for a voiceless aspirated consonant can change the meaning of a word (that is, the ejectives have phonemic status), as in these word pairs:

ფაფა <i>papa</i> 'porridge'	↔	პაპა <i>p'ap'a</i> 'grandfather'
თითა <i>tita</i> (grape variety)	↔	ტიტა <i>t'it'a</i> 'tulip'
ცილი <i>tsili</i> 'slander'	↔	წილი <i>ts'ili</i> 'share'
ქუდი <i>kudi</i> 'cap'	↔	კუდი <i>k'udi</i> 'tail'
ჩირი <i>chiri</i> 'dried fruit'	↔	ჭირი <i>ch'iri</i> 'misfortune'

It is not uncommon for the native English-speaking learner to confuse the ejectives with the corresponding voiced consonants (for example, the Georgian პ *p'* may be heard as ბ *b*, კ *k'* may be heard as გ *g*). This can result in confusion between such word pairs as ბარგი *bargi* 'luggage' and პარკი *p'ark'i* 'park, bag'.

The ejective ყ *q'* can present some difficulty, as there is no near equivalent English sound. Its pronunciation can also vary dependent upon neighboring sounds. The basic ყ *q'* sound is uvular. This pronunciation is similar to the Arabic ق *qāf*. It is sometimes realized, however, as an ejective uvular fricative, similar to the Arabic خ *khāf*.

Other Consonants

The non-ejectives in the table above can be approximated as follows:

ბ	<i>b</i>	bit
დ	<i>d</i>	dab
ძ	<i>dz</i>	pads
ჯ	<i>j</i>	just
გ	<i>g</i>	got
ფ	<i>p</i>	pool
თ	<i>t</i>	tool

Three other pairs of consonants show a voiceless / voiced contrast. These are:

ს	s	see
ზ	z	zoo
შ	sh	she
ჟ	zh	pleasure
ღ	gh	—
ხ	kh	loch

The sound ხ *kh* is velar, and is similar to the sound of <ch> in the Scottish 'loch' or the German 'acht'. Its voiced equivalent, ღ *gh*, occurs in the Spanish 'luego', and is similar to the Arabic غ *ghayn*.

The sounds of მ *m* and ნ *n* are approximately as in 'mow' and 'now', and ჰ *h*, which is rare in Georgian, is as in 'ham'. The pronunciation of რ *r* varies from that in 'rye' to the *r* in the Spanish 'pero' (a single tap). Two varieties of ლ occur: one as in Standard Southern British English 'leaf', and the other as in 'pool'. The sound of ვ *v* can vary from a weak English /v/ (or, indeed, an /f/ before voiceless consonants), as in ვხედავ *vkhedav* 'I see it' (where the first occurrence is close to /f/ and the latter to a /v/), through the sound of in the Spanish 'saber', as in ვინ *vin* 'who', to that of /w/ in 'wail' (as in ხვალ *khval* 'tomorrow'), depending on adjacent sounds. It is particularly weak when it occurs between two consonants.

Note that all English near equivalent sounds are only approximations to the Georgian. Note also that the non-native sound of the English letter <f> is usually rendered in borrowings by the Georgian ფ *p*, e.g., ფლორიდა *plorida* 'Florida'.

Consonant Duplication

Consonant duplication sometimes occurs as a consequence of compounding or the addition of affixes. In these cases, both consonants are pronounced, e.g., მედა *med·da* 'medical sister', მათთან *mat·tan* 'at their place', მმართველი *m·martveli* 'ruler', etc.

Consonant Clusters

Groups of consonants are widespread in Georgian, especially what are known as 'harmonic clusters', in which the point of articulation of the group moves from the front to the back of the mouth, and in which the individual elements are of the same type (voiced, voiceless aspirated or voiceless ejective). Examples are:

დ + ღ	დღე	<i>dghe</i>	'day'
ტ + ყ	ტყე	<i>t'q'e</i>	'forest'
ბ + გ	ბგერა	<i>bgera</i>	'sound'
თ + ქ	თქვენ	<i>tkven</i>	'you'
ზ + ღ	ზღვა	<i>zghva</i>	'sea'
ს + ხ	სხვა	<i>skhva</i>	'other'

Consonant clusters can range from two to six or more terms. Two extreme examples of word-initial clusters are მწვრთნელი *mts'vrtneli* ('trainer') and გვრტკენი *gvprtskveni* ('you are peeling us').

The Vowels

Georgian has five monophthongal vowel sounds: two – ი *i* and ე *e* – are unrounded front vowels, two – უ *u* and ო *o* – are rounded back vowels, while the vowel, ა *a* is articulated with the lips in the neutral position. Short and long vowels are not distinguished in standard Georgian, and vowel length is between short and half-long.

Estimated locations of the Georgian vowels in the IPA vowel quadrilateral are shown here. The sound of an individual vowel may be heard by clicking on the corresponding symbol on the diagram.

MISCELANEOUS

Assimilation and Dissimilation

Assimilation

In general, individual sounds have minimal influence on adjacent sounds in Georgian (that is, there is little or no assimilation). However, there are some instances of this process as in following examples, where assimilation is evident in the derivation of the form in the right-hand column.

*სიმშილი * <i>si-m+shi+l-i</i> 'hunger'	→	შიმშილი <i>shimshil-i</i> 'hunger'
*სიში * <i>si-sh-i</i> 'fear'	→	შიში <i>shish-i</i> 'fear'
*ბჭისკარი * <i>bch'-is+k'ar-i</i> 'gate'	→	ჭიმკარი <i>ch'ishk'ar-i</i> 'gate'
*ტხდება * <i>t'kh-d-eb-a</i> 'it breaks'	→	ტყდება <i>t'q'-d-eb-a</i> 'it breaks'

Dissimilation

This sound change mechanism (where segments influence each other such that they become less alike) is exemplified by the replacement of -რ- -r- by -ლ- -l- in the vicinity of another -რ- -r- sound, e.g., რუსი *rus-i* ('a Russian')+ -ურ -ur → *რუსური **rus-ur-i* → რუსული *rus-ul-i* 'Russian' (adjective).

Syncope and Vowel Loss

Syncope

Under certain circumstances, the last vowel of a stem ending in a consonant is lost. This is quite common with the vowels ა a, ე e, and ო o. It occurs, for example, when the plural marker -ებ- -eb- is added to a noun, as in the following examples. (The syncope vowel is underlined in the singular form.)

SINGULAR		PLURAL
მხატვარი <i>mkhat'v<u>ar-i</u></i> 'painter'	→	მხატვრები <i>mkhat'vr-eb-i</i> 'painters'
მეზობელი <i>mezob<u>el-i</u></i> 'neighbor'	→	მეზობლები <i>mezobl-eb-i</i> 'neighbors'
მინდორი <i>mind<u>or-i</u></i> 'field'	→	მინდვრები <i>mindvr-eb-i</i> 'fields'

The third example is particularly interesting, as it illustrates how the loss of an ო o can sometimes result in the reinstatement of a ვ v.

Vowel Loss

Some stems end in a vowel, which is lost when a suffix with an initial vowel is added, as in these nouns when the genitive marker -ის -is is added.

NOMINATIVE		GENITIVE
დედა <i>deda</i> 'mother'	→	დედის <i>ded-Ø-is</i> 'mother's'
მამა <i>mama</i> 'father'	→	მამის <i>mam-Ø-is</i> 'father's'
რძე <i>rdze</i> 'milk'	→	რძის <i>rdz-Ø-is</i> 'milk's'
ხე <i>khe</i> 'tree'	→	ხის <i>kh-Ø-is</i> 'tree's'

Metathesis

The letter ვ *v* can sometimes shift its position from after to before the consonants ნ *n*, ლ *l*, and რ *r*, a process known as 'metathesis'. For example, in place of the expected *თრვამეტი **trvamet'i* for '18', we find instead თვრამეტი *tvramet'i*, where the ვ *v* moves from after to before the რ *r*.

Taking the verb root -კლ- *-k'l-* 'kill', we can form the future მოკლავს *mo-k'l-av-s* ('he will kill him'), while the Georgian for 'killer' is formed using the prefix + suffix combination მ- — -ელ *m- — -el*. However, in place of the form *მკლაველი **m-k'l-av-el-i* which might be expected, the actual form is მკვლელი *m-k'vl-el-i*, where the ა *a* in the suffix -ავ *-av* has been dropped (as a result of a process known as syncope), and the ვ *v* has become part of the root as a result of metathesis.

Ablaut

Ablaut refers to a vowel change in a word that result in a change to the grammatical function of the word (as in the English words 'get' and 'got'). In Georgian, this takes the form of alternations between -ე- *-e-* and -ი- *-i-* in verb roots, as between the roots of the future and aorist screeves of the verb გააჩენს *ga-a-chen-s* ('she will give birth to him' ' future) → გააჩინა *ga-a-chin-a* ('she gave birth to him' ' aorist).

Stress

Stress in Georgian is dynamic and very weak. It is not significant at the lexical level (that is, it is not used to differentiate between words that are otherwise the same). In words of two and three syllables, the stress is usually on the first. In longer words, the stress is often on the third syllable from the end (the antepenultimate). However, there is often a secondary stress in addition to the main one in longer words. Examples are ჩიტი *chít'i* ('bird'), ქალაქი *kálaki* ('town'), and პარასკევი *p'arásk'evi* ('Friday').

Georgian intonation is generally even, except in the case of yes-no questions, which end on a rising pitch. Contrast the following two sentences; the question has a marked rising intonation.

ხვალ მოვა.
khval mo-v-a
tomorrow X-comes (fut 3s)
He will come tomorrow.

ხვალ მოვა?
tomorrow X-comes (fut 3s)
khval mo-v-a ?
Will he come tomorrow?

Colloquial Pronunciation

Generally speaking, the written forms of Georgian words and their pronunciation correspond extremely closely. There are, however, a number of deviations that may be observed in the colloquial language, although these should not be viewed as errors. Some of these deviations are listed here.

- The sound ζ *v* is often omitted before უ *u*, e.g.,

მე ვუყურებ <i>me v-u-q'ur-eb</i> 'I am looking at it.'	→	*მე უყურებ <i>*me u-q'ur-eb</i> 'I am looking at it.'
--	---	---

დავუწერ <i>da-v-u-ts'er</i> 'I will write it for him.'	→	*დაუწერ <i>*da-u-ts'er</i> 'I will write it for him.'
--	---	---

- Some heterogeneous combinations of voiced and voiceless consonants have a tendency to become homogeneous due to the process of assimilation, e.g.,

თგ <i>tg</i>	→	დგ <i>dg</i>
ერთგული <i>ert+gul-i</i> 'faithful'	→	*ერთდგული <i>*erd+gul-i</i> 'faithful'

სგ <i>sg</i>	→	ზგ <i>zg</i>
მსგავსი <i>msgavs-i</i> 'similar'	→	*მზგავსი <i>*mzgavs-i</i> 'similar'

გთ <i>gt</i>	→	ქთ <i>kt</i>
გთხოვ <i>g-tkhov</i> 'I ask you.'	→	*ქთხოვ <i>*k-tkhov</i> 'I ask you.'

ბს <i>bs</i>	→	ფს <i>ps</i>
დადებს <i>da-deb-s</i> 'He will place it.'	→	*დადეფს <i>*da-dep-s</i> 'He will place it.'

- The form **ეხლა* **ekhla* very frequently replaces *ახლა* *akhla* in the colloquial language.

ახლა <i>akhla</i> 'now'	→	*ეხლა <i>*ekhla</i> 'now'
-------------------------------	---	---------------------------------

- The adverbial ending *-(ა)დ* *-a(d)* is often pronounced **-(ა)თ* **-(a)t*, e.g.,

ზუსტად <i>zust-ad</i> 'exactly'	→	*ზუსთათ <i>*zust-at</i> 'exactly'
---------------------------------------	---	---

ცრუდ <i>tsru-d</i> 'falsely'	→	*ცრუთ <i>*tsru-t</i> 'falsely'
------------------------------------	---	--------------------------------------

- The letter ლ *l* is omitted in certain consonant clusters, e.g.,

სახლში <i>sakhl-shi</i> 'in the house, at home'	→	*სახში <i>*sakh-shi</i> 'in the house, at home'
---	---	---

ძაღვზე <i>dzaghl-ze</i> 'on / about the dog'	→	*ძაღვე <i>*dzagh-ze</i> 'on / about the dog'
--	---	--

- Variant forms of a number of common words are frequently heard in the colloquially language. These variants are never written.

NORM		COLLOQUIAL
არის <i>ar-i-s</i> 'he is'	→	*არი <i>*ar-i</i> 'he is'
აქვს <i>a-kv-s</i> 'he has'	→	*აკ <i>*a-k</i> 'he has'
კარგი <i>k'arg-i</i> 'good'	→	*კაი <i>*k'ai</i> 'good'
მაგრამ <i>magram</i> 'but'	→	*მარა <i>*mara</i> 'but'
რომ <i>rom</i> 'that'	→	*რო <i>*ro</i> 'that'
ხომ <i>khom</i> [particle]	→	*ხო <i>*kho</i> [particle]

WORD FORMATION

Derivation Strategies

Georgian uses these three main derivational means to form new stems.

Reduplication

The stem is repeated, sometimes with a slight alteration. Examples are

ნელა <i>nela</i> 'slowly'	→	ნელნელა <i>nel-nela</i> 'very slowly, gradually'
ცხელი <i>tskhel-i</i> 'hot'	→	ცხელცხელი <i>tskhel-tskhel-i</i> 'very hot'
ახლო <i>akhlo</i> 'close'	→	ახლომახლო <i>akhlo-makhlo</i> 'near at hand'

Compounding

The two stems, which may be from different parts of speech, are combined as in the following examples:

ჯარი <i>jar-i</i> ('army') + კაცი <i>k'ats-i</i> ('man')	→	ჯარისკაცი <i>jar-is-k'ats-i</i> ('soldier' – first element in genitive case)
გონება <i>goneba</i> ('mind') + მახვილი <i>makhvil-i</i> ('sharp')	→	გონებამახვილი <i>goneba-makhvil-i</i> ('quick-witted')
ორი <i>or-i</i> ('two') + სული <i>sul-i</i> ('soul')	→	ორსულად <i>or-sul-ad</i> ('pregnant' – second element in adverbial case)

Compounds of the following type, which juxtapose words with related meanings, are quite frequent in Georgian.

სახლი <i>sakhl-i</i> ('house') + კარი <i>k'ar-i</i> ('door')	→	სახლ-კარი <i>sakhl-k'ar-i</i> ('house and home')
მიწა <i>mits'a</i> ('land') + წყალი <i>ts'q'al-i</i> ('water')	→	მიწა-წყალი <i>mits'a-ts'q'al-i</i> ('homeland')
პური <i>p'ur-i</i> ('bread') + მარილი <i>maril-i</i> ('salt')	→	პურმარილი <i>p'ur+maril-i</i> ('meal for guest')

Affixation

This is the most productive method of derivation, and usually involves either adding a suffix, or adding both a prefix and a suffix (known as a 'circumfix'). Here are examples of both mechanisms.

BASE		AFFIX		DERIVED
ძმა <i>dzm-a</i> 'brother'	+	-ობა <i>-oba</i> [abstraction]	→	ძმობა <i>dzm-oba</i> 'brotherhood'
ნაკლი <i>nak'l-i</i> 'flaw'	+	უ- — -ო <i>u- — -o</i> [deprivation]	→	უნაკლო <i>u-nak'l-o</i> 'flawless'

Derived Words

Some of the affixes available in Georgian to derive new words affixation are listed here.

Attribution

The derived word embodies the thing or quality named by the stem.

-იან <i>-ian</i>	ცოლი <i>tsol-i</i> ('wife') → ცოლიანი <i>tsol-ian-i</i> ('married') მარილი <i>maril-i</i> ('salt') → მარილიანი <i>maril-ian-i</i> ('salty')
-იერ <i>-ier</i>	ნიჭი <i>nich-i</i> ('talent') → ნიჭიერი <i>nich'-ier-i</i> ('talented') კანონი <i>k'anon-i</i> ('law') → კანონიერი <i>k'anon-ier-i</i> ('legal') [also -იელ <i>-iel</i> if the stem contains რ <i>r</i> , e.g., ხორცი <i>khorts-i</i> ('meat, flesh') → ხორციელი <i>khorts-iel-i</i> ('corporal, carnal')]
-ოსან <i>-osan</i>	ცხენი <i>tskhen-i</i> ('horse') → ცხენოსანი <i>tskhen-osan-i</i> ('horseman') ქუდი <i>kud-i</i> ('cap') → ქუდოსანი <i>kud-osan-i</i> ('wearing a cap')
-ოვან <i>-ovan</i>	სახელი <i>sakhel-i</i> ('name') → სახელოვანი <i>sakhel-ovan-i</i> ('renowned') ძალა <i>dzala</i> ('strength') → ძალოვანი <i>dzal-ovan-i</i> ('strong')

Deprivation

The derived word is characterized by the absence of the thing or quality named by the stem.

უ- — -ო <i>u- — -o</i>	ცოლი <i>tsol-i</i> ('wife') → უცოლო <i>u-tsol-o</i> ('unmarried') მარილი <i>maril-i</i> ('salt') → უმარილო <i>u-maril-o</i> ('without salt')
უ- — -ურ <i>u- — -ur</i>	ბედი <i>bed-i</i> ('fate, fortune') → უდებური <i>u-bed-ur-i</i> ('unfortunate') გემო <i>gemo</i> ('taste') → უგემური <i>u-gem-ur-i</i> ('tasteless') [also უ — ულ <i>u — ul</i> if the stem contains რ <i>r</i> , e.g., ფერი <i>per-i</i> ('colour') → უფერული <i>u-per-ul-i</i> ('colourless')]

Trade

The derived word describes someone who practices a trade based on what is named by the stem.

მე- — -ე <i>me- — -e</i>	პური <i>p'ur-i</i> ('bread') → მეპურე <i>me-p'ur-e</i> ('baker') ბაღი <i>bagh-i</i> ('garden') → მებაღე <i>me-bagh-e</i> ('gardener')
მე- — ურ <i>me- — -ur</i>	ზღვა <i>zghva</i> ('sea') → მეზღვაური <i>me-zghva-ur-i</i> ('sailor') ბადე <i>bade</i> ('net') → მებადური <i>me-bad-ur-i</i> ('fisherman') [also მე — ულ <i>me — ul</i> if the stem contains რ <i>r</i> , e.g., ბარგი <i>barg-i</i> ('luggage') → მებარგული <i>me-barg-ul-i</i> ('porter')]

Place name

The derived word usually is a place name based on the name of a nationality.

-ეთ <i>-et</i>	სომეხი <i>somekh-i</i> ('Armenian') → სომხეთი <i>somkh-et-i</i> ('Armenia') უცხო <i>utskho</i> ('foreigner') → უცხოეთი <i>utskho-e-ti</i> ('abroad')
სა- — -ეთ <i>sa- — -et</i>	ფრანგი <i>prang-i</i> ('Frenchman') → საფრანგეთი <i>sa-prang-et-i</i> ('France'), ბერძენი <i>berdzen-i</i> ('Greek') → საბერძნეთი <i>sa-berdzn-et-i</i> ('Greece')
სა- — -ო <i>sa- — -o</i>	ქართველი <i>kartvel-i</i> ('Georgian') → საქართველო <i>sa-kartvel-o</i> ('Georgia') მეგრელი <i>megrel-i</i> ('Mingrelian') → სამეგრელო <i>sa-megrel-o</i> ('Mingrelia')

Origin

The derived word describes someone or something originating in the place named by the stem.

-ელ <i>-el</i>	სოფელი <i>sopel-i</i> ('village') → სოფლელი <i>sopl-el-i</i> ('villager') თბილისი <i>tbilis-i</i> ('Tbilisi') → თბილისელი <i>tbilis-el-i</i> ('person from Tbilisi')
-ურ <i>-ur</i>	ბერძენი <i>berdzen-i</i> ('a Greek') → ბერძნული <i>berdzn-ul-i</i> ('Greek') ქალაქი <i>kalak-i</i> ('town') → ქალაქური <i>kalak-ur-i</i> ('urban') [also -ულ <i>-ul</i> if the stem contains რ <i>r</i> , e.g., რუსი <i>rus-i</i> ('a Russian') → რუსული <i>rus-ul-i</i> ('Russian')]

Purpose

The derived word describes something, the purpose of which is related to the thing or concept named by the stem.

სა- — -ე <i>sa- — -e</i>	თითი <i>tit-i</i> ('finger') → სათითე <i>sa-ti-t-e</i> ('thimble') ღორი <i>ghor-i</i> ('pig') → საღორე <i>sa-ghor-e</i> ('pigsty')
სა- — -ო <i>sa- — -o</i>	ექიმი <i>ekim-i</i> ('doctor') → საექიმო <i>sa-ekim-o</i> ('medical') სტუმარი <i>st'umar-i</i> ('guest') → სასტუმრო <i>sa-st'umr-o</i> ('hotel, guest-room')
სა- — -ურ <i>sa- — -ur</i>	ფეხი <i>pekh-i</i> ('foot') → საფეხური <i>sa-pekh-ur-i</i> ('step') დგომა <i>dgom-a</i> ('standing') → სადგური <i>sa-dg-ur-i</i> ('station') [also სა — ულ <i>sa — ul</i> if the stem contains რ <i>r</i> , e.g., ბარგი <i>barg-i</i> ('burden') → საბარგული <i>sa-barg-ul-i</i> ('truck platform')]

Abstraction

The derived word is an abstract concept based on the thing or concept named by the stem.

-ობა <i>-oba</i>	მეგობარი <i>megobar-i</i> ('friend') → მეგობრობა <i>megobr-ob-a</i> ('friendship'), მუშა <i>mush-a</i> ('workman') → მუშაობა <i>musha-ob-a</i> ('work')
-ება <i>-eba</i>	ბედნიერი <i>bednier-i</i> ('happy') → ბედნიერება <i>bednier-eba</i> ('happiness') მეცნიერი <i>metsnier-i</i> ('scientist') → მეცნიერება <i>metsnier-eba</i> ('science')
სი- — -ე <i>si- — -e</i>	ლამაზი <i>lamaz-i</i> ('beautiful') → სილამაზე <i>si-lamaz-e</i> ('beauty') ღარიბი <i>gharib-i</i> ('poor') → სიღარიბე <i>si-gharib-e</i> ('poverty')

Miscellaneous

-იკო <i>-ik'o</i>	მამა <i>mama</i> → ('father') მამიკო <i>mam-ik'o</i> ('dad') შოთა <i>shota</i> ('Shota' - male name) → შოთიკო <i>shot-ik'o</i> ('dear Shota')
-ნარ <i>-nar</i>	მუხა <i>mukha</i> ('oak tree') → მუხნარი <i>mukh-nar-i</i> ('oak wood') ბუჩქი <i>buchk-i</i> → ბუჩქნარი <i>buchk-nar-i</i> ('brush')
ნა- — -არ <i>na- — -ar</i>	სოფელი <i>sopel-i</i> ('village') → ნასოფლარი <i>na-sopl-ar-i</i> ('site of former village') ქალაქი <i>kalak-i</i> ('town') → ნაქალაქარი <i>na-kalak-ar-i</i> ('site of former town')

NOUNS

Nouns

Georgian nouns do not distinguish gender or class (with the exception of an occasional weak distinction between animate and inanimate). The pronouns that reference these nouns can therefore refer to either males or females (or, indeed, to non-animate entities).

There are no articles ('a', 'the') in Georgian, so the Georgian noun მეგობარი *megobari* may be translated as 'friend', 'a friend', or 'the friend', as the context requires.

Noun stems mostly end in a consonant or in a vowel other than -o -i.

Noun Cases

Georgian has seven cases as described here. These also apply to adjectives and pronouns.

Nominative

This case is used for the subjects of intransitive verbs in all series, for the subjects of transitive verbs in the present series, for the direct objects of transitive verbs in the other series, and for the direct objects of indirect verbs. It is also the case in which nouns are cited. The nominative case marker is -o -i.

Narrative

This case is often known in English as the ergative, and is used for the subjects of transitive verbs in the aorist series. The narrative case marker is -ma -ma.

Dative

The dative is used for subjects of indirect verbs and of transitive verbs in the perfect series. It is also used for the direct object of transitive verbs in the present series, and to mark the indirect objects of transitive verbs (except in the perfect series) and of intransitive verbs. The dative is also found in expressions of place and time. The dative case marker is -s -s.

Genitive

The genitive is used for possession and to mark other close relationships. The genitive case marker is -is -is.

Instrumental

The instrumental expresses means, and corresponds to the English 'by means of', as in this example.

ბადით თევზაობს.
bad-it tevza-ob-s.
net (inst sg) X-fishes (pres 3s)
He is fishing with a net.

The instrumental case marker is -it -it.

Adverbial

The adverbial case found in contexts such as the following.

მდივნად დანიშნეს.
mdivn-ad da-nishn-es.
secretary (adv sg) X-appoints-Y (aor 3s 3s)
He was appointed secretary.

მასწავლებლად მუშაობს.
masts'avlebl-ad musha-ob-s.
 teacher (adv sg) X-works (pres 3s)
 He works as a teacher.

This case can often be translated using 'as' ('They appointed him as secretary', 'He works as a teacher.'). The adverbial case marker is -ად *-ad*.

Vocative

The vocative is used in addressing, as in ჩემო კარგო! *chem-o k'arg-o!* ('my dear', 'darling'). The vocative case marker is -ო *-o*.

Noun Declension

Georgian noun declension is by means of suffixes added to the noun stem, and is highly regular. Noun stems may end in a consonant or in a vowel. A final *-i* in the nominative (citation) form almost invariably indicates a consonant stem noun; the only exceptions are a few foreign borrowings, such as ჩაი *chai* 'tea' and გიორგი *giorgi* 'George'. The following table summarizes the nominal declension patterns.

CASE	SINGULAR				eb-PLURAL		<i>n</i> -PLURAL		
	stem:	consonant	-ა <i>-a</i>	-ე <i>-e</i>	-ი <i>-i</i>	-ო <i>-o</i> , -უ <i>-u</i>	-ა (l) <i>-a (l)</i>	other	all
nom.		-ი <i>-i</i>	-∅			[T]-ებ-ი [T]- <i>eb-i</i>	-ებ-ი <i>-eb-i</i>	-ნ-ი <i>-n-i</i>	
nar.		-მა <i>-ma</i>	-მ(ა) <i>-m(a)</i>			[T]-ებ-მა [T]- <i>eb-ma</i>	-ებ-მა <i>-eb-ma</i>		
dat.		-ს(ა) <i>-s(a)</i>	-ს(ა) <i>-s(a)</i>			[T]-ებ-ს(ა) [T]- <i>eb-s(a)</i>	-ებ-ს(ა) <i>-eb-s(a)</i>	-თ(ა) <i>-t(a)</i>	
gen.	I	-ის(ა) ¹ <i>-is(a)</i> ¹	[T]-ის(ა) ¹ [T]- <i>is(a)</i> ¹			-ს(ა) ⁴ <i>-s(a)</i> ⁴	[T]-ებ-ის(ა) [T]- <i>eb-is(a)</i>	-ებ-ის(ა) <i>-eb-is(a)</i>	
	II		-ს(ა) <i>-s(a)</i>						
inst.	I	-ით(ა) ¹ <i>-it(a)</i> ¹	[T]-ით(ა) ¹ [T]- <i>it(a)</i> ¹	-	-თი ⁴ <i>-ti</i> ⁴	[T]-ებ-ით(ა) [T]- <i>eb-it(a)</i>	-ებ-ით(ა) <i>-eb-it(a)</i>	—	
	II		-თი <i>-ti</i>	თ(ა) <i>-t(a)</i>					
adv.	I	-ად(ა) ¹ <i>-ad(a)</i> ¹	[T]-ად(ა) ¹ [T]- <i>ad(a)</i> ¹	-დ(ა) ¹ <i>-d(a)</i> ¹			[T]-ებ-ად(ა) [T]- <i>eb-ad(a)</i>	-ებ-ად(ა) <i>-eb-ad(a)</i>	—
	II		-დ(ა) <i>-d(a)</i>						
voc. ²		-ო <i>-o</i>	-∅, -ვ <i>-∅ -v</i> <i>-ო -o</i> ³	-ვ <i>-v</i>	-∅, -ვ <i>-∅ -v</i> <i>-ო -o</i> ³	[T]-ებ-ო [T]- <i>eb-o</i>	-ებ-ო <i>-eb-o</i>	-ნ-ო <i>-n-o</i>	

¹ syncope of penultimate *a*, *e* or *o* may occur

² -∅ for forenames

³ monosyllabic stems may take *-o* or *-v*

⁴ monosyllabic stems may alternatively take *-ის(ა)* *-is(a)* (gen.) and *-ით(ა)* *-it(a)* (inst.); note irregular ღვინის *ghvinis*(gen.), ღვინით *ghvinit* (inst.) < ღვინო *ghvino* 'wine'.

(ა) (a) extended case ending ('long form' or 'case extension')

[T] truncated stem (i.e., stem less *-a* or *-e*)

I, II nouns with stem in *-a* or *-e* which truncate (Type I) or which do not truncate (Type II)

Type II nouns include forenames and surnames with a stem ending in -ა -a or -ე -e, certain derivatives in -ა -a (such as შავთვალა *shavtvala* 'black eyed', ცისარტყელა *tsisart'q'ela* 'rainbow', გოგონა *gogona* 'young girl'), the names of certain relations in -ა -

ა (ბაბუა *babua* 'grandfather', ბებია *bebia* 'grandmother', ბიძა *bidza* 'uncle', დედა *deda* 'mother', მამა *mama* 'father', პაპა *p'ap'a* 'grandfather') when they refer to relatives of the speaker, some nouns in -ე -e (such as ბე *be* 'deposit' and recent borrowings such as ჯელე *zhele* 'jelly'). Surnames in -ძე -dze may be Type I or II. All other singular nouns with stems ending in -ა -a or -ე -e are Type I.

The examples below illustrate the various cases as determined by the syntactical relationships between the nouns and the other words in the sentences.

Nominative

ბავშვი თამაშობს.

bavshv-i tamash-ob-s.

child (nom sg) X-plays (pres 3s)

The child is playing.

ფანჯრები გავწმინდე.

panjr-eb-i ga-v-ts'mind-e.

window (nom pl) X-cleans-Y (aor 1s 3s)

I cleaned the windows.

Narrative

ქალმა უთხრა.

kal-ma u-tkhr-a.

woman (nar sg) X-tells-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The woman told him.

Dative

გოგოს ვხედავ.

gogo-s v-khed-av.

girl (dat sg) X-sees-Y (pres 1s 3s)

I see the girl.

ამ საღამოს მოვლენ.

am saghamo-s mo-vl-en.

this (dat sg) evening (dat sg) X-comes (fut 3p)

They will come this evening.

Genitive

ის სახლის პატრონი არის.

is sakhl-is p'at'ron-i ar-i-s.

he (nom sg) house (gen sg) owner (nom sg) X-is (pres 3s)

He is the owner of the house.

წისა და მიცის ფერები

ts-is-a da mits-is per-eb-i

sky (gen sg) and earth (gen sg) color (pl nom)

the colors of the sky and of the earth

მწერალთა კავშირი

m-ts'er-al-ta k'avshir-i

writer (gen pl) union (nom sg)

the Writers' Union

Instrumental

დანით მოჭრა.

dan-it mo-ch'r-a.

knife (adv sg) X-cuts-Y-off (pres 3s 3s)

He cut it off with a knife.

Adverbial

ექიმად მუშაობს.

ekim-ad musha-ob-s.

doctor (adv sg) X-works (pres 3s)

He works as a doctor.

Vocative

მოდით აქ, შვილებო!

mo-d-i-t ak, shvil-eb-o!

X-comes (imp 2p) here, child (voc pl)!

Come here, children!

The *eb*-plural is the usual; the *n*-plural is used in some fixed phrases (e.g. სხვათა შორის *skhva-ta shoris* 'among other things'), and for a limited number of stylistic purposes.

Inanimate plural nouns are usually accompanied by a singular verb.

The *-ა* *-a* case extension (or 'long form' of the case endings) is used in certain circumstances, such as for the first of two genitives linked by და *da* ('and'). Note the syncope and truncation in the example using ფანჯარა (*panjara*).

Two irregular genitives are ამბის *amb-is* (< ამბავი *ambavi* 'news') and ღვთის *ghvt-is* (< ღმერთი *ghmert-i* 'god').

ADJECTIVES

Adjectives

Adjectives usually precede the nouns which they qualify. Their stems have the same endings as those of nouns.

Nominalized Adjectives

In certain cases, adjectives are declined like nouns. This occurs in the following cases.

- when an adjective follows a noun; this occurs mostly in poetry
- when it stands alone
- when it is used as a noun.

Adjective may undergo syncope under these circumstances. Here are two examples of adjectives used as nouns.

რომელ პერანგს ჩაიცვამს? თეთრს.

romel p'erang-s cha-i-tsv-am? tetr-s.

which (dat sg) shirt (dat sg) X-wears-Y (fut 2s 3s)? white (dat sg)

Which shirt will you wear? The white one.

ეს ჩვენი პატარების ოთახია.

es chven-i p'at'ar-eb-is otakh-i-a.

this (nom sg) our (gen) small (gen pl) room (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)

This is our little ones' room.

Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative adjectives show a three-way contrast between close to the speaker ('this'), close to the person addressed ('that'), and distant from both ('that over there'). Here is a list of the more common demonstrative adjectives.

CATEGORY	LOCATION		
	close to speaker	close to addressee	distant from both
basic	ეს <i>es</i> 'this'	ეგ <i>eg</i> 'that'	ის, იგი <i>is, ig-i</i> 'that (over there)'
quantity	ამდენი <i>am+den-i</i> 'so much, many'	მაგდენი <i>mag+den-i</i> 'so much, many'	იმდენი <i>im+den-i</i> 'so much, many'
quality	ამისთანა <i>am+is+tan-a</i> 'such a one'	მაგისთანა <i>mag+is+tan-a</i> 'such a one'	იმისთანა <i>im+is+tan-a</i> 'such a one'
type	ამნაირი <i>am+nair-i</i> 'this kind of'	მაგნაირი <i>mag+nair-i</i> 'that kind of'	იმნაირი <i>im+nair-i</i> 'that kind of'
size	ამხელა <i>am+khel-a</i> 'so big a one'	მაგხელა <i>mag+khel-a</i> 'so big a one'	იმხელა <i>im+khel-a</i> 'so big a one'
quality	ასეთი <i>as+et-i</i> 'such a one'	ეგეთი <i>eg+et-i</i> 'such a one'	ისეთი <i>is+et-i</i> 'such a one'
origin	აკაური <i>ak+a+ur-i</i> 'one from here'	მანდაური <i>mand+a+ur-i</i> 'one from there'	იკაური <i>ik+a+ur-i</i> 'one from (over) there'

Demonstrative adjectives

The basic demonstrative adjectives are declined as in this table.

CASE	LOCATION					
	close to speaker		close to addressee		distant from both	
	sing	plur	sing	plur	sing	plur
nominative	ეს es		ეგ eg		ის, იგი is, igi	
narrative	ამ am		მაგ mag		იმ im	
dative						
genitive						
instrumental						
adverbial						
vocative	—					

Basic demonstrative adjectives

The other demonstrative pronouns are declined as adjectives.

The addition of the identity particle -ვე *-ve* to the demonstrative adjectives adds the nuance of ‘the same’, e.g., იგივე *igi-ve* ‘the same’, ისეთივე *iseti-ve* ‘just such a’, etc.

Here is an illustration of the use of the demonstrative adjective.

ასეთი მოვლენა დიდი იშვიათობაა.

as+et-i movlena did-i ishviat+oba-a.

such-a (nom) event (nom sg) big (nom) rarity (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)

Such an event is a very rare occurrence.

Interrogative Adjectives

The main interrogative adjectives are listed here.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE
inanimate ¹	რა? <i>ra?</i> ‘what?’
quantity	რამდენი? <i>ram+den-i?</i> ‘how much / many?’
size	რამხელა? <i>ram+khela?</i> ‘of what size?’
type	როგორი? <i>rogor-i?</i> ‘of what kind?’
type	რანაირი? <i>ra+nair-i?</i> ‘of what kind?’
specific	რომელი? <i>romel-i?</i> ‘which?’
time	როდინდელი? <i>rodindel-i?</i> ‘of what time?’
place	სადაური? <i>sad+a+ur-i?</i> ‘of what place?’

¹ (in)animate in exclamations

Interrogative adjectives

The interrogative adjectives are declined as basic adjectives, as in this illustration.

რომელ ქალაქში ცხოვრობ?
romel kalak-shi tskhovr-ob?
 which (dat) town (dat sg) - in X-lives (pres 2s)
 In which town do you live?

Indefinite Adjectives

A number of indefinite adjectives are formed by the addition of the suffixes *-მე -me* or *-ღაც -ghats* to the interrogative pronouns, as shown in this table. The forms in *-მე -me* are non-specific, and refer to the unknown. These contrast with the forms in *-ღაც -ghats*, which are more specific, although the references are nonetheless unspecified.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN	generic	non-specific	specific
indeterminate		ზოგი <i>zog-i</i> 'some'		
indeterminate		ერთი <i>ert-i</i> 'one'		
animate	ვინ? <i>vin?</i> 'who?'		ვინმე <i>vin-me</i> 'anyone, someone'	ვიღაც(ა) <i>vi-ghats(-a)</i> 'someone'
inanimate	რა? <i>ra?</i> 'what?'		რა(ი)მე, რამ <i>ra(+i)-me, ram</i> 'anything, something'	რაღაც(ა) <i>ra-ghats(-a)</i> 'something'
quantity	რამდენი? <i>ramden-i?</i> 'how much, many?'		რამდენიმე <i>ramden-i-me</i> 'some, a few, several'	რამდენიღაც(ა) <i>ramden-i-ghats(-a)</i> 'some, a few, several'
indeterminate	რომელი? <i>romel-i?</i> 'which?'		რომელიმე <i>romel-i-me</i> 'any'	რომელიღაც <i>romel-i-ghats(-a)</i> 'any'

Indefinite adjectives

The indefinite pronoun ერთი *erti* has the same form as the numeral 'one'.

Note that the indefinite adjectives derived from ვინ? *vin?* and რა? *ra?* are actually indefinite pronouns used as indefinite adjectives, as in the third example below.

The following examples illustrate the use of the indefinite pronouns.

რამდენიმე ქართული კინო ნანახი მაქვს.
ramden-i-me kartul-i k'ino na-nakh-i m-a-kv-s.
 several Georgian (nom) film (nom) X-sees-Y (perf part nom) X-has-Y (pres 1s 3s)
 I have seen several Georgian films.

ერთ მშვენიერ დღეს...
ert mshvenier dghe-s...
 one beautiful (dat) day (dat sg)
 One fine day...

რაიმე ცივი სამელი ხომ არ გიყიდო?
ra+i-me tsiv-i sa+sm+el-i khom ar g-i-q'id-o?
 something (nom) cold (nom) X-drinks-Y (fut part nom) [particle] [particle] X-buys-Y-for-Z (opt 1s 3s 2s)
 Shall I buy you something cold to drink?

Possessive Adjectives

The forms of the possessive adjectives ('my', 'your', 'his', etc.) are given in the table below. These are based on the genitive forms of the corresponding personal pronouns. Possessive adjectives are declined in the same manner as the

basic adjectives, except for the ending -ის -is in the first and second person dative forms and (frequently) in the adverbial. The non-normative ending -ის -is also occurs in the instrumental case (e.g. ჩემის აზრით *čem-is azr-it* 'in my opinion'. In the third person, a distinction is made between 'close to the speaker' (1), 'close to the person being addressed' (2), and 'distant from both' (3). There are also reflexive singular and plural possessive adjectives (refl).

CASE	PERSON											
	1s	2s	3s				1p	2p	3p			
			1	2	3	refl			1	2	3	refl
nominative	ჩემი <i>čem-i</i>	შენი <i>šen-i</i>	ამისი <i>am-is-i</i>	მაგისი <i>mag-is-i</i>	(ი)მისი <i>(i)m-is-i</i>	თავისი <i>tav-is-i</i>	ჩვენი <i>čven-i</i>	თქვენი <i>tkven-i</i>	ამათი <i>ama-t-i</i>	მაგათი <i>maga-t-i</i>	(ი)მათი <i>(i)ma-t-i</i>	თავიანთი <i>tav-ian-t-i</i>
narrative	ჩემმა <i>čem-ma</i>	შენმა <i>šen-ma</i>	ამისმა <i>am-is-ma</i>	მაგისმა <i>mag-is-ma</i>	(ი)მისმა <i>(i)m-is-ma</i>	თავისმა <i>tav-is-ma</i>	ჩვენმა <i>čven-ma</i>	თქვენმა <i>tkven-ma</i>	ამათმა <i>ama-t-ma</i>	მაგათმა <i>maga-t-ma</i>	(ი)მათმა <i>(i)ma-t-ma</i>	თავიანთმა <i>tav-ian-t-ma</i>
dative	ჩემს <i>čem-s</i>	შენს <i>šen-s</i>	ამის <i>am-is</i>	მაგის <i>mag-is</i>	(ი)მის <i>(i)m-is</i>	თავის <i>tav-is</i>	ჩვენს <i>čven-s</i>	თქვენს <i>tkven-s</i>	ამათ <i>ama-t</i>	მაგათ <i>maga-t</i>	(ი)მათ <i>(i)ma-t</i>	თავიანთ <i>tav-ian-t</i>
genitive	ჩემი <i>čem-i</i>	შენი <i>šen-i</i>	ამისი <i>am-is-i</i>	მაგისი <i>mag-is-i</i>	(ი)მისი <i>(i)m-is-i</i>	თავისი <i>tav-is-i</i>	ჩვენი <i>čven-i</i>	თქვენი <i>tkven-i</i>	ამათი <i>ama-t-i</i>	მაგათი <i>maga-t-i</i>	(ი)მათი <i>(i)ma-t-i</i>	თავიანთი <i>tav-ian-t-i</i>
instrumental	ჩემი <i>čem-i</i>	შენი <i>šen-i</i>	ამისი <i>am-is-i</i>	მაგისი <i>mag-is-i</i>	(ი)მისი <i>(i)m-is-i</i>	თავისი <i>tav-is-i</i>	ჩვენი <i>čven-i</i>	თქვენი <i>tkven-i</i>	ამათი <i>ama-t-i</i>	მაგათი <i>maga-t-i</i>	(ი)მათი <i>(i)ma-t-i</i>	თავიანთი <i>tav-ian-t-i</i>
adverbial	ჩემ(ს) <i>čem(-s)</i>	შენ(ს) <i>šen(-s)</i>	ამის <i>am-is</i>	მაგის <i>mag-is</i>	(ი)მის <i>(i)m-is</i>	თავის <i>tav-is</i>	ჩვენ(ს) <i>čven(-s)</i>	თქვენ(ს) <i>tkven(-s)</i>	ამათ <i>ama-t</i>	მაგათ <i>maga-t</i>	(ი)მათ <i>(i)ma-t</i>	თავიანთ <i>tav-ian-t</i>
vocative	ჩემო <i>čem-o</i>			—			ჩვენო <i>čven-o</i>			—		

Possessive adjectives

შენს წყალში ვეძებ ჩემს წარსულს [Ilia Č'avč'avaže, *Alazan*]
šen-s c'q'al-ši v-e-ž-eb čem-s c'arsul-s
 your (dat sg) water (dat sg) – in X-looks-for-Y (pres 1s 3s) my (dat sg) past (dat sg)
 in your waters [i.e., of the Alazani river] I seek my past

Interrogative Possessive Adjectives

The interrogative possessive adjectives are identical in their form to the corresponding interrogative possessive pronouns.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN	INTERROGATIVE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE
animate	ვისი? <i>v-is-i?</i> 'whose?'	ვისი? <i>v-is-i?</i> 'whose?'
inanimate	რისი? <i>r-is-i?</i> 'of what?'	რისი? <i>r-is-i?</i> 'of what?'

Interrogative possessive adjectives

They are declined in the same manner as the basic adjectives.

Here is an example of the use of the animate interrogative possessive adjective.

ას ვისი ქოლგაა?
es vis-i kolga-a?
 this (nom sg) whose (non sg) umbrella (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)
 Whose umbrella is this?

Negative Possessive Adjectives

The negative possessive adjectives are identical in their form to the corresponding negative possessive pronouns.

CATEGORY	TYPE	negation	potential	prohibition
	negative particle			
animate	-ვინ <i>-vin</i>	არ(ა) <i>ar(-a)</i> 'not'	ვერ(ა) <i>ver(-a)</i> 'cannot'	ნურ(ა) <i>nur(a)</i> 'do not'
animate	-ვინ <i>-vin</i>	არავისი <i>ar+a-vis-i</i> 'no-one's'	ვერავისი <i>ver+a-vis-i</i> 'no-one's'	ნურავისი <i>nur+a-vis-i</i> 'no-one's'
inanimate	-ფერი <i>-peri</i>	არაფრისი <i>ar+a-pris-i</i> 'nothing's'	ვერაფრისი <i>ver+a-pris-i</i> 'nothing's'	ნურაფრისი <i>nur+a-pris-i</i> 'nothing's'

Negative possessive adjectives

They are declined in the same manner as the basic adjectives.

Here is an example of the use of the animate negative possessive adjective used non-attributively.

ის უპატრონოდ მიტოებული სახლი არავისია.
is u-p'at'ron-o-d mi-t'o-eb-ul-i sakhl-i aravis-i-a.
 that ownerless (adv) abandon (past part nom) house (nom sg) no-one's (nom) - X-is (pres 3s)
 That abandoned house doesn't belong to anyone.

The Reflexive Possessive Adjective

There are two forms of the reflexive possessive adjective, the singular and the plural. The reflexive possessive adjective is identical in its form to the reflexive possessive pronoun. The singular is sometimes used to refer to a plural subject.

თავისი *tav+is-i* 'his / their own'
 თავიანთი *tav+ian+t-i* 'their own'

The following is an illustration of the use of the singular form. It is 'reflexive' in that it refers to the subject of the sentence ('girl'), while at the same time denoting possession.

გოგომ თავისი სათამაშო დაკარგა.
gogo-m tavis-i sa-tamash-o da-k'arg-a.
 girl (nar sg) his (nom sg) toy(nom sg) X-loses-Y (aor 3s 3s)
 The girl lost her toy.

Comparison of Adjectives

Comparative Degree

The comparative degree (forms such as 'greater', 'more interesting, etc.) is formed by placing the word უფრო *upro* ('more') before the base or 'positive' form. The English 'than' is rendered by ვიდრე *vidre* or by the postposition -ზე *-ze* ('on').

A უფრო დიდია ვიდრე B.	=	A B-ზე (უფრო) დიდია.
A <i>upro did-i-a</i> vidre B.	=	A B-ze (<i>upro</i>) <i>did-i-a</i> .
A more big (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s) than B	=	A B - on (more) big (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)
A is bigger than B.		A is bigger than B.

Superlative Degree

The superlative (forms such as 'greatest', 'most interesting, etc.) may be formed using უ- — -ეს *u-* — *-es* (with possible syncope and, on occasions, some alteration to the stem), or periphrastically using ყველაზე (უფრო) *q'velaze (upro)* ('on-all (more)') and the positive form.

A ყველაზე დიდია.	=	A უდიდესია.
A <i>q'vela-ze did-i-a</i> .	=	A <i>u-did-es-i-a</i> .
A all - on big (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)	=	A biggest - X-is (pres 3s)
A is the biggest.		A is the biggest.

Some adjectives in -ელი *-eli*, -ილი *-ili*, and -ე *-i* lose these endings in the superlative, while some in -ა *-a* add -ვ *-v*.

Diminished Degree

This form exists only in a limited number of cases, and expresses a reduction with respect to the positive degree. It is formed using the circumfix მო- — -ე *mo-* — *-e*, as in მოლურჯე *mo-lurj-e* 'bluish', from ლურჯი *lurj-i* 'blue', and მოტკბო *mo-t'k'b-o* 'slightly sweet', from ტკბილი *t'k'bili* 'sweet' (note the loss of the ending -ილი *-ili*).

Irregularities

Certain common adjectives show some irregularities in comparison.

POSITIVE		COMPARATIVE
ბევრი <i>bevri</i> 'much, many'	→	მეტი <i>met'i</i> 'more'
კარგი <i>k'argi</i> 'good'	→	უკეთესი <i>uk'etesi</i> 'better'
ცოტა <i>tsot'a</i> 'little', 'few'	→	ნაკლები <i>nak'lebi</i> 'less', 'fewer'
ცუდი <i>tsudi</i> 'bad'	→	უარესი <i>uaresi</i> 'worse'

PRONOUNS

Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns show a three-way contrast between close to the speaker (e.g., 'this'), close to the person addressed (e.g., 'that'), and distant from both (e.g., 'that over there, yonder'). The more common demonstrative pronouns are given here.

CATEGORY	LOCATION		
	close to speaker	close to addressee	distant from both
basic	ეს <i>es</i> 'this'	ეგ <i>eg</i> 'that'	ის, იგი <i>is, ig-i</i> 'that (over there)'
quantity	ამდენი <i>am+den-i</i> 'so much, many'	მაგდენი <i>mag+den-i</i> 'so much, many'	იმდენი <i>im+den-i</i> 'so much, many'
quality	ამისთანა <i>am+is+tan-a</i> 'such a one'	მაგისთანა <i>mag+is+tan-a</i> 'such a one'	იმისთანა <i>im+is+tan-a</i> 'such a one'
type	ამნაირი <i>am+nair-i</i> 'this kind of'	მაგნაირი <i>mag+nair-i</i> 'that kind of'	იმნაირი <i>im+nair-i</i> 'that kind of'
size	ამხელა <i>am+xel-a</i> 'so big a one'	მაგხელა <i>mag+xel-a</i> 'so big a one'	იმხელა <i>im+xel-a</i> 'so big a one'
quality	ასეთი <i>as+et-i</i> 'such a one'	ეგეთი <i>eg+et-i</i> 'such a one'	ისეთი <i>is+et-i</i> 'such a one'
origin	აკაური <i>ak+a+ur-i</i> 'one from here'	მანდაური <i>mand+a+ur-i</i> 'one from there'	იქაური <i>ik+a+ur-i</i> 'one from (over) there'

Demonstrative pronouns

The basic demonstrative pronouns are declined as in this table.

CASE	LOCATION					
	close to speaker		close to addressee		distant from both	
	sing	plur	sing	plur	sing	plur
nominative	ეს <i>es</i>	ესენი <i>ese-n-i</i>	ეგ <i>eg</i>	ეგენი <i>ege-n-i</i>	ის, იგი <i>is, ig-i</i>	ისინი, იგინი <i>isi-n-i, igi-n-i</i>
narrative	ამან <i>ama-n</i>		მაგან <i>maga-n</i>		(ი)მან <i>(i)ma-n</i>	
dative	ამას <i>ama-s</i>	ამათ <i>ama-t</i>	მაგას <i>maga-s</i>	მაგათ <i>maga-t</i>	(ი)მას <i>(i)ma-s</i>	(ი)მათ <i>(i)ma-t</i>
genitive	ამის <i>am-is</i>		მაგის <i>mag-is</i>		(ი)მის <i>(i)m-is</i>	
instrumental ¹	ამით <i>am-it</i>	ამათით <i>ama-t-it</i>	მაგით <i>mag-it</i>	მაგათით <i>maga-t-it</i>	(ი)მით <i>(i)m-it</i>	(ი)მათით <i>(i)ma-t-it</i>
adverbial ¹	ამად <i>ama-d</i>	ამათად <i>ama-t-ad</i>	მაგად <i>maga-d</i>	მაგათად <i>maga-t-ad</i>	იმად <i>ima-d</i>	(ი)მათად <i>(i)ma-t-ad</i>
vocative	—					

¹ plur = basic possessive pronoun

Note that the -ა -a case extension (or 'long form' of the case endings) can be suffixed to many of these pronouns.

The other demonstrative pronouns are declined as nouns.

The addition of the identity particle -ვე -ve to the demonstrative pronouns adds the nuance of 'the same', e.g., იგივე *igi-ve* 'the same', ისეთივე *iseti-ve* 'just such a', etc.

The use of the 'close-to-addressee' form in the following example suggests that the speaker may be responding to something the person being addressed has said.

მაგას გეუბნები!
maga-s g-e-ubn-eb-i!
 that (dat sg) X-tells-Y-to-Z (pres 1s 3s 2s)!
 That's what I'm telling you!

The following example illustrates the use of a demonstrative pronoun in an oblique case.

იქაურებს ეცოდინებათ, სად არის კარგი სასტუმრო.
ik+a+ur-eb-s e-cod-in-eb-a-t, sad ar-i-s k'arg-i sa+st'umr-o.
 those-from-there (dat pl) X-knows-Y (fut 3p 3s) where X-is (pres 3s) good (nom sg) hotel (nom sg)
 The locals will know where there is a good hotel.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns ('I', 'you', etc.) are declined as in the table below. The personal pronouns are used in Georgian in the nominative, narrative and dative cases mainly for emphasis or contrast, as the pronominal markers in the verb complex fulfil the same function. In the third person, a distinction is made between 'close to the speaker' (1), 'close to the person being addressed' (2), and 'distant from both' (3). As in some other languages, the second person plural is used to show respect to the person addressed.

CASE	PERSON									
	1s	2s	3s ³			1p	2p	3p ³		
			1	2	3 ⁵			1	2	3 ⁵
nominative			ეს <i>es</i>	ეგ <i>eg</i>	ის, იგი <i>is, igi</i>			ესენი <i>ese-n-i</i>	ეგენი <i>ege-n-i</i>	ისინი, იგინი <i>isi-n-i, igi-n-i</i>
narrative	მე <i>me</i>	შენ <i>šen</i>	ამან <i>ama-n</i>	მაგან <i>maga-n</i>	(ი)მან <i>(i)ma-n</i>	ჩვენ <i>čven</i>	თქვენ <i>tkven</i>			
dative	მე <i>me</i> ჩემ(-) ⁴ <i>čem(-)</i> ⁴	შენ(-) ⁴ <i>šen(-)</i> ⁴	ამას <i>ama-s</i>	მაგას <i>maga-s</i>	(ი)მას <i>(i)ma-s</i>	ჩვენ(-) ⁴ <i>čven(-)</i> ⁴	თქვენ(-) ⁴ <i>tkven(-)</i> ⁴	ამათ <i>ama-t</i>	მაგათ <i>maga-t</i>	(ი)მათ <i>(i)ma-t</i>
genitive ¹	ჩემ(-) ⁴ <i>čem(-)</i> ⁴	შენ(-) ⁴ <i>šen(-)</i> ⁴	ამ-ის <i>am-is</i>	მაგ-ის <i>mag-is</i>	(ი)მ-ის <i>(i)mi-s</i>	ჩვენ(-) ⁴ <i>čven(-)</i> ⁴	თქვენ(-) ⁴ <i>tkven(-)</i> ⁴			
instrumental ²	ჩემით <i>čem-it</i>	შენით <i>šen-it</i>	ამით <i>am-it</i>	მაგით <i>mag-it</i>	(ი)მით <i>(i)m-it</i>	ჩვენით <i>čven-it</i>	თქვენით <i>tkven-it</i>	ამათით <i>ama-t-it</i>	მაგათით <i>maga-t-it</i>	(ი)მათით <i>(i)ma-t-it</i>
adverbial ²	ჩემად <i>čem-ad</i>	შენად <i>šen-ad</i>	ამად <i>ama-d</i>	მაგად <i>maga-d</i>	იმად <i>ima-d</i>	ჩვენად <i>čven-ad</i>	თქვენად <i>tkven-ad</i>	ამათად <i>ama-t-ad</i>	მაგათად <i>maga-t-ad</i>	(ი)მათად <i>(i)ma-t-ad</i>
vocative	—	შენ(ა), შე <i>šen(a), še</i>			—		თქვენ(ა), თქვე <i>tkven(a), tkve</i>		—	

¹ 1s, 2s, 1p, 2p: = possessive adjective stem

² 1s, 2s, 1p, 2p: = possessive pronoun

³ = demonstrative pronoun

⁴ normative with postpositions, but -ს -s also found with non-conjoined postpositions

⁵ oblique forms in *o-* *i-* derived from *ის is* and *ისინი isini* occur colloquially

Note that the *-ა -a* case extension (or 'long form' of the case endings) can be suffixed to many of these pronouns.

Note also that the form of the first person singular pronoun in the dative case depends on whether it stands alone (*მე me* – *მე ვარ me v-ar* 'I am'), has a suffixed postposition (*ჩემ- čem-* – *ჩემზე ლაპარაკობს čem-ze lap'arak'-ob-s* 'he is speaking about me'), or is followed by a stand-alone postposition (*ჩემ čem* – *ჩემ გამო čem gamo* 'because of me').

The personal pronouns in the following example are optional.

(*მე შენ*) ვერ გხედავ.
(me šen) ver g-xed-av.
 (I (nom sg) you (dat sg)) cannot X-sees-Y (pres 1s 2s)
 I can't see you.

In some situations, the personal pronoun cannot be omitted, as in this illustration.

ძალიან კმაყოფილები არიან ჩვენით.
žalian k'maq'op+il-eb-i ar-i-an čven-it.
 very pleased (nom pl) X-is (pres 3p) we (inst)
 They are very pleased with us.

Interrogative Pronouns

The interrogative pronouns are listed in this table.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN
animate	ვინ? <i>vin?</i> 'who?'
inanimate	რა? <i>ra?</i> 'what?'
quantity	რამდენი? <i>ram+den-i?</i> 'how much / many?'
type	რანაირი? <i>ra+nair-i?</i> 'of what kind?'
specific	რომელი? <i>romel-i?</i> 'which?'
type	როგორი? <i>rogor-i?</i> 'of what kind?'
time	როდინდელი? <i>rodindel-i?</i> 'of what time?'
place	სადაური? <i>sad+a+ur-i?</i> 'of what place?'

Interrogative pronouns

The basic interrogative pronouns *ვინ? vin?* 'who?' and *რა? ra?* 'what?' are declined as follows.

CASE	ANIMATE	INANIMATE
nominative	ვინ(ა)? <i>vin(-a)?</i>	რა? <i>ra?</i>
narrative	ვინ? <i>vin?</i>	რამ? <i>ra-m?</i>
dative	ვის(ა)? <i>vi-s(-a)?</i>	რას(ა)? <i>ra-s(-a)?</i>
genitive	ვის? <i>v-is?</i>	რის? <i>r-is?</i>
instrumental	—	რით(ი)? <i>r-it(-i)?</i>
adverbial	—	რად(ა)? <i>r-ad(-a)?</i>
vocative	—	

Basic interrogative pronouns

The other interrogative pronouns are declined as nouns.

The emphatic particle *-ღა -gha* adds a nuance of astonishment, irritation, despair, and the like to the interrogative pronouns, e.g., ვინ(ღა)? *vi(n)-gha?* 'who then? who on earth?'

The following are two illustrations of the use of the interrogative pronouns.

ეს რითი უკეთესია?
es riti uk'etes-i-a?
this (nom) what (interrogative pronoun - adv) better X-is (pres 3s)
In what way is this better?

რამდენს დახარჯავ?
ramden-s da-kharj-av?
how-much (nom) X-spends-Y (fut 2s 3s)
How much will you spend?

Negative Pronouns

The negative pronouns are formed by combining the negative particles with a number of endings, as in this table. The suffix *-ვინ -vin* is the interrogative pronoun 'who?', *-ფერი -peri* is from the noun ფერი *peri* 'color', and the element *ერთი erti* in *-ც ერთი -ts erti* is the numeral 'one'.

CATEGORY	TYPE	negation	potential	prohibition
	negative particle	არ(ა) <i>ar(-a)</i> 'not'	ვერ(ა) <i>ver(-a)</i> 'cannot'	ნურ(ა) <i>nur(a)</i> 'do not'
animate	-ვინ <i>-vin</i>	არავინ <i>ar+a-vin</i> 'no-one'	ვერავინ <i>ver+a-vin</i> 'no-one'	ნურავინ <i>nur+a-vin</i> 'no-one'
inanimate	-ფერი <i>-peri</i>	არაფერი <i>ar+a-per-i</i> 'nothing'	ვერაფერი <i>ver+a-per-i</i> 'nothing'	ნურაფერი <i>nur+a-per-i</i> 'nothing'
quality	- ვირარი <i>-vitar-i</i>	არავირარი <i>ar+a+vitar-i</i> 'no kind of'	ვერავირარი <i>ver+a+vitar-i</i> 'no kind of'	ნურავირარი <i>nur+a-vitar-i</i> 'no kind of'
quantity	- ც ერთი <i>-ts erti</i>	არც ერთი <i>ar-ts ert-i</i> 'not one'	ვერც ერთი <i>ver-ts ert-i</i> 'not one'	ნურც ერთი <i>nur-ts ert-i</i> 'not one'

Negative pronouns

The forms derived from არ *ar* indicate simple negation, in contrast to those derived from ვერ *ver*, which convey the idea of inability. Those derived from ნუ *nu* denote prohibition.

Replacing არ(ა)- *ar(-a)-* with აღარ- *aghar-*, ვერ(ა)- *ver(a)-* with ვეღარ- *veggar-*, and ნურ(ა)- *nu+r(a)-* with ნულარ- *nughar-* adds the nuance ‘no longer’.

Definite Pronouns

The more common definite pronouns are listed here. The first four are also known as the emphatic pronouns. These are not declined, and may also accompany a noun that is being emphasized.

თავად	<i>tavad</i>	‘self’
თვით	<i>tvit</i>	‘self’
თვითონ	<i>tviton</i>	‘self’
თითოეული	<i>titoeuli</i>	‘each’
სხვა	<i>skhva</i>	‘other’
ყველა	<i>q'vela</i>	‘all’
ყოველი	<i>q'oveli</i>	‘all’

The following Georgian proverb contains two definite pronouns. (Note that the reported speech particle -ო *-o* is used to mark proverbs.)

ავი ძაღლი არც თვითონ ჭამს, არც სხვას აჭმევსო.

av-i dzaghl-i ar-ts tviton ch'am-s, ar-ts skhva-s a-ch'm-ev-s-o.

bad (nom) dog (nom sg) neither self X-eats-Y (pres 3s 3s) nor other (dat sg) X-feeds-Y (pres 3s 3s) – [particle]

‘A bad dog will not eat it himself, and will not let other dogs eat it.’

Indefinite Pronouns

A number of indefinite pronouns are formed by the addition of the suffixes -მე *-me* or -ღაც *-ghats* to the interrogative pronouns, as shown in this table. The forms in -მე *-me* are non-specific, and refer to the unknown. These contrast with the forms in -ღაც *-ghats*, which are more specific, although the references are nonetheless unspecified.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN	generic	non-specific	specific
indeterminate		ზოგი <i>zog-i</i> ‘some’		
indeterminate		ერთი <i>ert-i</i> ‘one’		
animate	ვინ? <i>vin?</i> ‘who?’		ვინმე <i>vin-me</i> ‘anyone, someone’	ვიღაც(ა) <i>vi-ghats(-a)</i> ‘someone’
indeterminate		კაცი <i>k'ats-i</i> ‘one’		
inanimate	რა? <i>ra?</i> ‘what?’		რა(ი)მე, რამ <i>ra(+i)-me, ram</i> ‘anything, something’	რაღაც(ა) <i>ra-ghats(-a)</i> ‘something’
indeterminate	რომელი? <i>romel-i?</i> ‘which?’		რომელიმე <i>romel-i-me</i> ‘any’	რომელიღაც <i>romel-i-ghats</i> ‘any’

Indefinite pronouns

The indefinite pronoun ერთი *erti* has the same form as the numeral ‘one’, while კაცი *k'atsi* has the same form as the noun ‘man’.

Note that the non-specific and specific indefinite pronouns also have plural forms (e.g., ვინმეები *vin-me-eb-i*, ვიღაცები *vigh-ats-eb-i*, რაღაცები *ra-ghats-eb-i*).

The following examples illustrate the use of the indefinite pronouns.

რაღაცა თქვა.
ra-ghats-a tkv-a.
 something X-says-Y (aor 3s 3s)
 He said something or other.

კაცმა არ იცის.
k'ats-ma ar i-ts-i-s.
 man (nar sg) [particle] X-knows-Y (pres 3s 3s)
 No-one knows.

This last example could also, of course, be analyzed as follows, where კაცმა *k'ats-ma* 'man' is treated as a noun.

კაცმა არ იცის.
k'ats-ma ar i-ts-i-s.
 man (nar sg) [particle] X-knows-Y (pres 3s 3s)
 The man does not know.

Reflexive Pronouns

The reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause, and have two forms in Georgian. One form, თავი *tavi*, is the same for all persons (and is has the same form as the Georgian word თავი *tavi* 'head'). The other combines თავი *tavi* with the corresponding form of the possessive adjective in the first and second persons, and with the reflexive possessive adjective in the third person, as in the following table.

PERSON	REFLEXIVE PRONOUN
1s	ჩემი თავი <i>chem-i tav-i</i> 'myself'
2s	შენი თავი <i>shen-i tav-i</i> 'yourself'
3s	თავისი თავი <i>tavis-i tav-i</i> 'himself'
1p	ჩვენი თავი <i>chven-i tav-i</i> 'ourselves'
2p	თქვენი თავი <i>tkven-i tav-i</i> 'yourself'
3p	თავიანთი თავი <i>taviant-i tav-i</i> 'themselves'

Reflexive pronouns

Here are two examples of the use of the reflexive pronouns.

თავს მოიკლავთ.
tav-s mo-i-k'l-av-t.
 self (dat sg) X-kills-Y (fut 2p 3s)
 You will kill yourselves.

თავის თავზე იშვიათად ლაპარაკობს.
tav-is tav-ze ishviat-ad lap'arak'-ob-s.

self (dat sg) - on seldom X-speaks (pres 3s)
 He seldom speaks about himself.

The Reciprocal Pronoun

The reciprocal pronoun is *ერთმანეთი ertmanet-i*, and corresponds to the English 'each other', as in the following illustration.

ერთმანეთს ქუჩაში შეხვდნენ.
ertmanet.-s kucha-shi she-khvd-nen.
 each-other (dat sg) street (dat sg) - in X-meets-Y (aor 3p 3p)
 They met each other in the street.

Possessive Pronouns

Possessive pronouns (such as 'my', 'their own', 'no-one's', and the like) may be formed in a number of ways from the genitive case forms of other parts of speech, as listed here.

- from personal pronouns (the first and second person 'basic possessive pronouns')
- from demonstrative pronouns (the third person 'basic possessive pronouns')
- from interrogative pronouns (the 'interrogative possessive pronouns')
- from negative pronouns (the 'negative possessive pronouns')
- from definite pronouns (the 'definite possessive pronouns')
- from indefinite pronouns (the 'indefinite possessive pronouns')
- from reflexive pronouns (the 'reflexive possessive pronouns')
- from reciprocal pronouns.

Basic Possessive Pronouns

The stems of the first and second person possessive pronouns ('mine', 'yours', 'ours') have the same form as the genitive of the corresponding personal pronouns. (Note the alternative dative forms.) The stems of the third person possessive pronouns ('his', 'theirs') have the same form as the genitive of the corresponding demonstrative pronouns. In the third person, a distinction is made between 'close to the speaker' (1), 'close to the person being addressed' (2), and 'distant from both' (3). There are also reflexive singular and plural basic possessive pronouns (refl).

CASE	PERSON											
	1s	2s	3s				1p	2p	3p			
			1	2	3	refl			1	2	3	refl
nominative	ჩემი <i>čem-i</i>	შენი <i>šen-i</i>	ამისი <i>am-is-i</i>	მაგისი <i>mag-is-i</i>	(ი)მისი <i>(i)m-is-i</i>	თავისი <i>tav-is-i</i>	ჩვენი <i>čven-i</i>	თქვენი <i>tkven-i</i>	ამათი <i>ama-t-i</i>	მაგათი <i>maga-t-i</i>	(ი)მათი <i>(i)ma-t-i</i>	თავიანთი <i>tav-ian-t-i</i>
narrative	ჩემმა <i>čem-ma</i>	შენმა <i>šen-ma</i>	ამისმა <i>am-is-ma</i>	მაგისმა <i>mag-is-ma</i>	(ი)მისმა <i>(i)m-is-ma</i>	თავისმა <i>tav-is-ma</i>	ჩვენმა <i>čven-ma</i>	თქვენმა <i>tkven-ma</i>	ამათმა <i>ama-t-ma</i>	მაგათმა <i>maga-t-ma</i>	(ი)მათმა <i>(i)ma-t-ma</i>	თავიანთმა <i>tav-ian-t-ma</i>
dative	ჩემს <i>čem-s</i>	შენს <i>šen-s</i>	ამისას <i>am-isa-s</i>	მაგისას <i>mag-isa-s</i>	(ი)მისას <i>(i)m-isa-s</i>	თავისას <i>tav-isa-s</i>	ჩვენს <i>čven-s</i>	თქვენს <i>tkven-s</i>	ამათს <i>ama-t-sa-s</i>	მაგათს <i>maga-t-sa-s</i>	(ი)მათს <i>(i)ma-t-sa-s</i>	თავიანთს <i>tav-ian-t-sa-s</i>
	ჩემსა <i>čem-sa-s</i>	შენსა <i>šen-sa-s</i>					ჩვენსა <i>čven-sa-s</i>	თქვენსა <i>tkven-sa-s</i>				
genitive	ჩემის <i>čem-is</i>	შენის <i>šen-is</i>	—				ჩვენის <i>čven-is</i>	თქვენის <i>tkven-is</i>	—			

instrumental	ჩემით <i>čem-it</i>	შენით <i>šen-it</i>	ამისით <i>am-is-it</i>	მაგისით <i>mag-is-it</i>	(ი)მისით <i>(i)m-is-it</i>	თავისით <i>tav-is-it</i>	ჩვენით <i>čven-it</i>	თქვენით <i>tkven-it</i>	ამათით <i>ama-t-it</i>	მაგათით <i>maga-t-it</i>	(ი)მათით <i>(i)ma-t-it</i>	თავიანთით <i>tav-ian-t-it</i>
adverbial	ჩემად <i>čem-ad</i>	შენად <i>šen-ad</i>	ამისად <i>am-is-ad</i>	მაგისად <i>mag-is-ad</i>	(ი)მისად <i>(i)m-is-ad</i>	თავისად <i>tav-is-ad</i>	ჩვენად <i>čven-ad</i>	თქვენად <i>tkven-ad</i>	ამათად <i>ama-t-ad</i>	მაგათად <i>maga-t-ad</i>	(ი)მათად <i>(i)ma-t-ad</i>	თავიანთად <i>tav-ian-t-ad</i>
vocative	ჩემო <i>čem-o</i>	—					ჩვენო <i>čven-o</i>	—				

Basic possessive pronouns

Note that the -ა -a case extension (or 'long form' of the case endings) can be suffixed to many of these pronouns.

Here is an example of the use of the second person singular basic possessive pronoun.

შენს / შენსას ხვალ მოგცემ.
šen-s / šen-sa-s xval mo-g-čem.
 your (acc sg) tomorrow X-gives-Y-to-Z (fut 1s 3s 2s)
 I'll give you yours tomorrow.

When used with words describing close relatives, the personal pronouns are usually suffixed, as in the following examples.

ჩემი დედა <i>čem-i deda</i> 'my mother'	→	დედაჩემი <i>deda-čem-i</i> 'my mother'
შენი ბიძა <i>šen-i biža</i> 'your uncle'	→	ბიძაშენი <i>biža-šen-i</i> 'your uncle'
მისი მამა <i>mis-i mama</i> 'his father'	→	მამამისი <i>mama-mis-i</i> 'his father'

Interrogative Possessive Pronouns

The three interrogative possessive pronouns are derived from the genitive case forms of the corresponding interrogative pronouns, as illustrated in this table.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN	INTERROGATIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN
animate	ვინ? <i>vin?</i> 'who?'	ვისი? <i>v-is-i?</i> 'whose?'
inanimate	რა? <i>ra?</i> 'what?'	რისი? <i>r-is-i?</i> 'of what?'
generic	რომელი? <i>romel-i?</i> 'which?'	რომლისი? <i>roml-is-i?</i> 'whose, of which?'

Interrogative possessive pronouns

Here is an example of the use of the inanimate interrogative possessive pronoun.

ეს გასაღები რისია?
es gasagheb-i r-is-i-a?
 this (nom) key (nom sg) of-what (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)
 What is this the key of?

Negative Possessive Pronouns

The negative possessive pronouns are formed from the genitive case of the corresponding negative pronoun.

CATEGORY	TYPE	negation	potential	prohibition
	negative particle			
		არ(ა) <i>ar(-a)</i> 'not'	ვერ(ა) <i>ver(-a)</i> 'cannot'	ნურ(ა) <i>nu+r(a)</i> 'do not'
animate	-ვინ <i>-vin</i>	არავისი <i>ar+a-vis-i</i> 'no-one's'	ვერავისი <i>ver+a-vis-i</i> 'no-one's'	ნურავისი <i>nur+a-vis-i</i> 'no-one's'
inanimate	-ფერი <i>-peri</i>	არაფრისი <i>ar+a-pris-i</i> 'nothing's'	ვერაფრისი <i>ver+a-pris-i</i> 'nothing's'	ნურაფრისი <i>nur+a-pris-i</i> 'nothing's'

Negative possessive pronouns

Definite Possessive Pronouns

This category of possessive pronoun is formed from the genitive case form of the corresponding definite pronoun, as in the following example.

რატომ გეჩვენება ხოლმე, რომ სხვისი უფრო დიდია?
rat'om g-e-chven-eb-a kholme, rom skhvis-i upro did-i-a?
 why X-appears-to-Y (pres 3s 2s) [particle] that other's (nom sg) more big (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)
 Why do you usually feel that the other person's one is bigger?

Indefinite Possessive Pronouns

The indefinite possessive pronouns are based on the genitive case forms of the corresponding indefinite pronouns, as in this table.

CATEGORY	INDEFINITE PRONOUN		non-specific	specific
animate	ვინმე <i>vin-me</i> 'anyone, someone'	ვიღაც(ა) <i>vi-ghats(-a)</i> 'someone'	ვინმესი <i>vin-me-s-i</i> 'anyone's, someone's'	ვიღაცასი, ვიღაცისი <i>vi-gha-tsa-s-i, vi-gha-ts-is-i</i> 'someone's'
inanimate	რა(ი)მე <i>ra(+i)-me</i> 'anything, something'	რაღაც(ა) <i>ra-ghats(-a)</i> 'something'	რა(ი)მესი <i>ra(+i)-me-s-i</i> 'anything's, something's'	რაღაცასი, რაღაცისი <i>ra-gha-tsa-s-i, ra-gha-ts-is-i</i> 'something's'
quantity	რამდენიმე <i>ramden-i-me</i> 'some, a few, several'		რამდენიმესი <i>ramden-i-me-s-i</i> 'some's, a few's, several's'	
indeterminate	რომელიმე <i>romel-i-me</i> 'any'		რომელიმესი <i>romel-i-me-s-i</i> 'any's'	

Indefinite possessive pronouns

The Reflexive Possessive Pronoun

There are two forms of the reflexive possessive pronoun, the singular and the plural. The singular is sometimes used to refer to a plural subject.

თავისი	<i>tav+is-i</i>	'his / their own'
თავიანთი	<i>tav+ian+t-i</i>	'their own'

The following is an illustration of the use of the singular form.

მე მაქვს ჩემი გასაღები, მაგრამ ჩემმა მეგობარმა თავისი ვერ იპოვა.

me m-a-kv-s chem-i gasagheb-i, magram chem-ma megobar-ma tavis-i ver i-p'ov-a.

I (dat) X-has-Y (pres 1s 3s) my (nom) key (nom sg) but my (nar) friend (nat) his-own (nom) [particle] X-finds-Y (aor 3s 3s)

I have my key, but my friend could not find his.

Relative Pronouns

The basic relative pronouns are formed from the interrogative pronoun by adding *-(ა)ც* *-(a)ts*, as in the following table.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN	RELATIVE PRONOUN
animate	ვინ? <i>vin?</i> 'who?'	ვინც <i>vin-ts</i> 'who'
inanimate	რა? <i>ra?</i> 'what?'	რაც <i>ra-ts</i> 'which'
quantity	რამდენი? <i>ramden-i?</i> 'how much / many?'	რამდენიც <i>ramden-i-ts</i> 'as much / many as'
specific	რომელი? <i>romel-i?</i> 'which?'	რომელიც <i>romel-i-ts</i> 'which, who'
type	როგორი? <i>rogor-i?</i> 'of what kind?'	როგორიც <i>rogor-i-ts</i> 'of the kind that'

Basic relative pronouns

The following example contrasts the uses of the interrogative and relative pronouns.

რამდენი მივცე? რამდენიც საჭიროა.

ramden-i mi-v-ts-e? ramden-i-ts sachiro-a.

how-much (nom) X-gives-Y-to-Z (opt 1s 3s 3s) as-much necessary - X-is (pres 3s)

How much shall I give him? As much as is necessary.

Note the location of the affix *-ც* *-ts* in the presence of a postposition, as in the following example.

ეს წიგნი, რომელზეც ვლაპარაკობ, აღარ იყიდება.

es ts'igni, romel-ze-ts v-lap'arak'-ob, aghar i-q'id-eb-a.

this (nom) book (nom sg) which (dat) - on X-speaks (pres 1s) no-more X-is-sold (pres 3s)

This book that I am talking about is no longer on sale.

Relative pronouns can also be formed from the interrogative possessive pronouns, as detailed in this table.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN	RELATIVE PRONOUN
animate	ვისი? <i>v-is-i?</i> 'whose?'	ვისიც <i>v-is-i-ts</i> 'whose'
inanimate	რისი? <i>r-is-i?</i> 'whose?'	რისიც <i>r-is-i-ts</i> 'whose'
generic	რომლისი? <i>roml-is-i?</i> 'whose?'	რომლ(ებ)ის <i>roml(-eb)-is</i> 'whose'

Relative pronouns

პროფესორ მიხეილ ასათიანს, რომლის ნაამბობმა დამაწერინა ეს მოთხრობა.

p'ropesor mikheil asatian-s, roml-is na-amb-ob-ma da-m-a-ts'er-in-a es mo+tkhr+oba.

professor (dat) mikheil (dat) asatiani (dat) whose X-says-Y-to-Z (past part – nar sg) X-causes-Y-to-write-Z (caus – 3s 1s 3s) this (nom) story (nom sg)

To Professor Mikheil Asatiani, whose words led me to write this short story.

ADVERBS

Derived adverbs are usually formed from the adverbial case of the corresponding adjective, as in these examples.

ADJECTIVE		ADVERB
კარგი <i>k'arg-i</i> 'good'	→	კარგად <i>k'arg-ad</i> 'well'
ლამაზი <i>lamaz-i</i> 'beautiful'	→	ლამაზად <i>lamaz-ad</i> 'beautifully'

Sometimes the -დ *-d* is omitted, as in the following examples.

ADJECTIVE		ADVERB
ჩქარი <i>chkar-i</i> 'fast'	→	ჩქარა <i>chkar-a</i> 'fast'
ნელი <i>nel-i</i> 'slow'	→	ნელ-ა <i>nel-a</i> 'slowly'

Adverbs may also be derived from the adverbial case of the future and privative participles.

Demonstrative Adverbs

Demonstrative adverbs show a three-way contrast between close to the speaker (e.g., 'here'), close to the person addressed (e.g., 'there'), and distant from both (e.g., 'over there').

Here is a list of the more common demonstrative adverbs.

CATEGORY	LOCATION		
	close to speaker	close to addressee	distant from both
basic	აქ <i>ak</i> 'here'	მანდ <i>mand</i> 'there'	იქ <i>ik</i> '(over) there'
quantity	ამდენად <i>am+den-ad</i> 'so, to such an extent'	მაგდენად <i>mag+den-ad</i> 'so, to such an extent'	იმდენად <i>im+den-ad</i> 'so, to such an extent'
reason	ამისთვის <i>am+is-tvis</i> 'for this (reason)'	მაგისთვის <i>mag+is-tvis</i> 'for that (reason)'	იმისთვის <i>im+is-tvis</i> 'for that (reason)'
reason	ამიტომ <i>am+i+t'om</i> 'for this reason'	მაგიტომ <i>mag+i+t'om</i> 'for that reason'	იმიტომ <i>im+i+t'om</i> 'for that reason'
manner	ამნაირად <i>am+nair-ad</i> 'in this manner, thus'	მაგნაირად <i>mag+nair-ad</i> 'in that manner, so'	იმნაირად <i>im+nair-ad</i> 'in that manner, so'
manner	ასე, აგრე <i>a+se, a-gre</i> 'in this manner, thus'	ეგრე <i>e-gre</i> 'in that manner, so'	ისე <i>i+se</i> 'in that manner, thus'
('up to')	აქამდე <i>ak+a-mde</i> 'up to here', 'until now'	მანამდე <i>mand+a-mde</i> 'up to there', 'until then'	იქამდე <i>ik+a-mde</i> 'up to there', 'until then'
(adverbial)	აქეთ <i>ak+et</i> '(to) here', 'on this side'		იქით <i>ik+it</i> '(to) there', 'on that side'

(‘from’)	აკედან <i>ak+e-dan</i> ‘from here (on)’	მანდედან <i>mand+e-dan</i> ‘from there (on)’	იქიდან <i>ik+i-dan</i> ‘from there (on)’
----------	---	--	--

Demonstrative adverbs

The addition of the identity particle -ვე *-ve* to the demonstrative adverbs adds the nuance of ‘right, just’, e.g., იქვე *ik-ve* ‘right there’, ასევე *ase-ve* ‘just so’, etc.

Interrogative Adverbs

Here is a list of the more common interrogative adverbs.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE
quantity	რამდენად? <i>ramden-ad?</i> ‘how much?’
frequency	რამდენჯერ? <i>ramden+jer?</i> ‘how many times?’
reason	რატომ? <i>rat’om?</i> ‘why?’
reason	რისთვის? <i>r+is-tvis?</i> ‘for what? why?’
method	როგორ? <i>rogor?</i> ‘how?’
time	როდემდე? <i>rod-emde?</i> ‘until when?’
time	როდის? <i>rodis?</i> ‘when?’
location	სად? <i>sad?</i> ‘where?’
location	სადამდე? <i>sad-amde?</i> ‘to where?’
location	საიდან? <i>sa-idan?</i> ‘from where?’
location	საით? <i>sa-it?</i> ‘to where?’
location	საითკენ? <i>sa+it-k’en?</i> ‘towards where?’

Interrogative adverbs

The emphatic particle -ღა *-gha* adds a note of astonishment, irritation, despair, and the like to the interrogative adverbs, e.g. სადღა? *sad-gha?* ‘where then? where on earth?’

The following are two illustrations of the interrogative adverbs.

(შენ) თვითონ რატომ არ აკეთებ?
 (shen) tviton rat'om ar a-k'et-eb?
 (you (nom sg)) self why not X-does-Y (pres 2s 3s)?
 Why don't you do it yourself?

როდის მოხვალ?
 rodis mo-kh-val?
 when X-comes (fut 2s)?
 When will you come?

Negative Adverbs

The negative adverbs are formed by combining the negative particles with a number of endings, as shown in this table. The suffix -სად -sad is the interrogative adverb 'where?', -ოდეს -odes is the archaic relative adverb ოდეს? odes?'when?', -დროს -dros is the dative case of the noun დრო dro 'time', while the ending -გზით -gzit is the instrumental case of the noun გზა gza 'way'.

CATEGORY	NEGATIVE PARTICLE	+	+	+	+	
			-სად -sad	-ოდეს -odes	-დროს -dros	-გზით -gzit
negation	არ(ა) ar(-a) 'not'	-∅ -ს -s	არსად ar-sad 'nowhere'	არასოდეს ar+a+s+odes 'never'	არასდროს ar+a+s+dros 'never'	არასგზით ar+a+s+gzit 'by no means'
potential	ვერ(ა) ver(-a) 'cannot'		ვერსად ver-sad 'nowhere'	ვერასოდეს ver+a+s+odes 'never'	ვერასდროს ver+a+s+dros 'never'	ვერასგზით ver+a+s+gzit 'by no means'
prohibition	ნურ(ა) nur(-a) 'do not'		ნურსად nur-sad 'nowhere'	ნურასოდეს nur+a+s+odes 'never'	ნურასდროს nur+a+s+dros 'never'	ნურასგზით nur+a+s+gzit 'by no means'

The forms derived from არ ar indicate simple negation, in contrast to those derived from ვერ ver, which convey the idea of inability. Those derived from ნურ nu denote prohibition.

Replacing არ(ა)- ar(-a)- with აღარ- aghar-, ვერ(ა)- ver(a)- with ვეღარ- veghar-, and ნურ(ა)- nur(a)- with ნულარ- nughar- adds the nuance 'no longer'.

Adverbs of Place

Here is a list of the more common adverbs of place.

ამ ადგილას	am adgil+a-s	'at this place'
ახლოს	akhlo-s	'nearby'
ბევრგან	bevr+gan	'in many places'
გარეთ	gare-t	'outside'
ზევით	zev-it	'up, above, upstairs'
ზემოთ	zemo-t	'above'
მარცხენივ	martskhvn+iv	'on / to the left'
მარჯვნივ	marjvn+iv	'on / to the right'
სხვაგან	skhva+gan	'elsewhere'
უკან	uk'an	'behind; back, backward(s)'
ქვევით	kvev-it	'down, below, downstairs'
ქვემოთ	kvemo-t	'below'
ქვეშ	kvesh	'under'
ყველგან	q'vel+gan	'everywhere'
შიგ	shig	'inside'
შინ	shin	'at home'

შორს	<i>shor-s</i>	'far away'
წინ	<i>ts'in</i>	'before, in front of; forward(s)'

Many of these adverbs are derived using the adverbial, dative, and instrumental cases. Note that some postpositions can also act as adverbs, for example, წინ *ts'in* 'before, in front of; forward(s)', and უკან *uk'an* 'behind; back, backward(s)'.
 The negative adverbs and many of the demonstrative adverbs may also be viewed as adverbs of place.

The negative adverbs and many of the demonstrative adverbs may also be viewed as adverbs of place.

Adverbs of Time

Here is a list of the more common adverbs of time.

ადრე	<i>adre</i>	early
ამალამ	<i>am+a+gham</i>	tonight
ამჟამად	<i>am+zham-ad</i>	at the moment
ამ წუთას	<i>am ts'uta-s</i>	this minute
არასოდეს	<i>ara+s+odes</i>	never
აქამდე	<i>ak+a+mde</i>	until now
ახლა	<i>akhla</i>	now
გაისად	<i>gais-ad</i>	next year
გვიან	<i>gvian</i>	late
გუშინ	<i>gushin</i>	yesterday
დღე და ღამე	<i>dghe da ghame</i>	day and night
დღეს	<i>dghe-s</i>	today
დღ(ის)ით	<i>dg(+is)-it</i>	by day
ზეგ	<i>zeg</i>	day after tomorrow
ისევ	<i>isev</i>	again
კიდევ	<i>k'idev</i>	again
მაზეგ	<i>ma+zeg</i>	in three days' time
მალე	<i>male</i>	soon
მანამდე	<i>man+amde</i>	until then
მაშინ	<i>mashin</i>	then
მუდამ	<i>mudam</i>	always
სალამოს	<i>saghamo-s</i>	in the evening
უკვე	<i>uk've</i>	already
ღამით	<i>gham-it</i>	at night
ყოველთვის	<i>q'ovel+tvīs</i>	always
შარშან	<i>sharshan</i>	last year
შარშანწინ	<i>sharshan+ts'in</i>	two years ago
წელს	<i>ts'el-s</i>	this year
წუხელ	<i>ts'ukhel</i>	last night
ხვალ	<i>khval</i>	tomorrow
ჯერ	<i>jer</i>	yet
ჯერ კიდევ	<i>jer k'idev</i>	still

Many of these adverbs are derived using the adverbial, dative, and instrumental cases.

Relative Adverbs

Relative adverbs are formed by the addition of the suffix *-(ა)ც* *-(a)ts* to the interrogative adverbs, as shown in this table. Note the irregular derivation of როდესაც *rodesats* and როცა *rotsa*, both meaning 'when'.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE ADVERB	RELATIVE ADVERB
quantity	რამდენად? <i>ramdenad?</i> 'how much?'	რამდენადაც <i>ramden+ad-ats</i> 'to the extent that', 'as far as'
frequency	რამდენჯერ? <i>ramdenjer?</i> 'how many times?'	რამდენჯერაც <i>ramden+jer-ats</i> 'as many times as'
reason	რატომ? <i>rat'om?</i> 'why?'	რატომაც <i>rat'om-ats</i> 'for which reason'
reason	რისთვის? <i>ristvis?</i> 'for what?' 'why?'	რისთვისაც <i>r+is+tviz-ats</i> 'for which reason'
method	როგორ? <i>rogor?</i> 'how?'	როგორც <i>rogor-ts</i> 'as'
time	როდემდე? <i>rodemde?</i> until when?	როდემდეც <i>rod+emde-ts</i> 'until when'
time	როდის? <i>rodis?</i> 'when?'	როდესაც, როცა <i>rodes-ats, ro-tsa</i> 'when'
location	სად? <i>sad?</i> 'where?'	სადაც <i>sad-ats</i> 'where'
location	სადამდე? <i>sadamde?</i> 'to where?'	სადამდეც <i>sad+made-ts</i> 'to where'
location	საიდან? <i>saidan?</i> 'from where?'	საიდანაც <i>saidan-ats</i> 'from where'
location	საით? <i>sait?</i> 'to where?'	საითაც <i>sait-ats</i> 'to where'
location	საითკენ? <i>saitk'en?</i> 'towards where?'	საითკენაც <i>sait+k'en-ats</i> 'towards where'

Relative adverbs

The distinction between the interrogative and relative adverbs is clear from the following example.

როდის მოხვალ? მოვალ, როცა მზად ვიქნები.
rodis mo-kh-val? mo-val, rotsa mza-d v-i-kn-eb-i.

when (interrogative adverb) X-comes (fut 2s) X-comes (fut 1s) when (relative adverb) ready X-is (fut 1s)
When will you come? I'll come when I'm ready.

Indefinite Adverbs

Indefinite adverbs are formed by the addition of the suffixes -მე *-me* or -ღაც *-ghats* to the interrogative adverbs, as shown in this table. (Note that ოდესღაც *odesghac* 'once' is irregular.) The forms in -მე *-me* are non-specific, and refer to the unknown. They contrast with the forms in -ღაც *-ghats*, which are more specific, although the references are nonetheless unspecified.

CATEGORY	INTERROGATIVE ADVERB	INDEFINITE ADVERB (NON-SPECIFIC)	INDEFINITE ADVERB (SPECIFIC)
quantity	რამდენჯერ? <i>ramdenjer?</i> 'how many times?'	რამდენიმეჯერ <i>ramden+i-me-jer</i> 'several times'	—
frequency	რატომ? <i>rat'om?</i> 'why?'	—	რატომღაც <i>rat'om-ghats</i> 'for some reason'
reason	როგორ? <i>rogor?</i> 'how?'	როგორმე <i>rogor-me</i> 'anyhow', 'somehow'	როგორღაც <i>rogor-ghats</i> 'somehow'
reason	როდის? <i>rodis?</i> 'when?'	როდისმე <i>rodis-me</i> 'anytime', 'sometime'	ოდესღაც <i>odes-ghac</i> 'at one time', 'once'
method	სად? <i>sad?</i> 'where?'	სადმე <i>sad-me</i> 'anywhere', 'somewhere'	სადღაც <i>sad-ghats</i> 'somewhere'
time	საიდან? <i>saidan?</i> 'from where?'	საიდანმე <i>sa+idan-me</i> 'from anywhere', 'from somewhere'	საიდანღაც <i>sa+idan-ghats</i> 'from somewhere'
time	საით? <i>sait?</i> 'to where?'	საითმე <i>sa+it-me</i> 'anywhere', 'somewhere'	საითღაც <i>sa+it-ghats</i> 'somewhere'
location	საითკენ? <i>saitk'en?</i> 'towards where?'	საითკენმე <i>sa+it+k'en-me</i> 'anywhere', 'somewhere'	საითკენღაც <i>sa+it+k'en-ghats</i> 'somewhere'

Indefinite adverbs

Contrast the following two examples. In the first, the time is unknown and unspecified; in the second, the time reference is also unknown, but is specific in that the event did actually take place.

როდისმე მოვა.
rodis-me mo-v-a.
sometime X-comes (fut 3s)
He will come sometime.

ოდესღაც გერმანიაში ცხოვრობდა.
odes-ghats germania-shi tskhovr-ob-d-a.
once Germany (dat) - in X-lives (imp 3s)
He once lived in Germany.

Miscellaneous Adverbs

Adverbs of Manner

The vast majority of the adjectives of manner are formed from the adverbial case of the corresponding adjective. Here are some that are formed differently.

ალბათ	<i>albat</i>	'probably'
თავდაყირა	<i>tav+da+q'ira</i>	'upside down'
მაშ	<i>mash</i>	'in that case'
მთლად	<i>mtl-ad</i>	'entirely'
პირდაპირ	<i>p'ir+da+p'ir</i>	'directly, straight ahead'
პირიქით	<i>p'ir+ik-it</i>	'on the contrary'
სულ	<i>sul</i>	'entirely'
სწორედ	<i>sts'or-ed</i>	'precisely'

უკუღმა	<i>uk'u+ghma</i>	'back to front'
ძალიან	<i>dzal+ian</i>	'very'
ძლივს	<i>dzlivs</i>	'with difficulty'

Note the three-way contrast in the following adverbs between close to the speaker, close to the person addressed, and distant from both.

LOCATION	ADVERB OF MANNER
close to speaker	ასე <i>ase</i> 'in this manner', 'thus', 'so'
close to person addressed	ეგრე <i>egre</i> in that manner', 'thus', 'so'
distant from both	ისე <i>ise</i> 'in that manner', 'thus', 'so'

Adverbs of Cause

This small group of adverbs shows a three-way contrast, as in the following table.

LOCATION	ADVERB OF CAUSE
close to speaker	ამიტომ <i>am+it'om</i> 'for this reason'
close to person addressed	მაგიტომ <i>mag+it'om</i> 'for that [more immediate] reason'
distant from both	იმიტომ <i>im+it'om</i> 'for that [more distant] reason'

Adverbs of Extent

These adverbs also show a three-way contrast.

LOCATION	ADVERB OF EXTENT
close to speaker	ამდენად <i>am+den-ad</i> 'to this extent'
close to person addressed	მაგდენად <i>mag+den-ad</i> 'to that [more immediate] extent'
distant from both	იმდენად <i>im+den-ad</i> 'to that [more distant] extent'

Comparison of Adverbs

Adverbs are compared in the same manner as adjectives, as in the following examples.

Comparative Degree

A უფრო ჩქარა მოძრაობს ვიდრე B.	=	A B-ზე (უფრო) ჩქარა მოძრაობს.
A <i>upro chkara mo-dzra-ob-s</i> vidre B.	=	A B-ze (<i>upro</i>) <i>chkara mo-dzra-ob-s</i> .
A more fast X-moves (pres 3s) than B	=	A B - on (more) fast X-moves (pres 3s)
A moves faster than B.		A moves faster than B.

Superlative Degree

A ყველაზე ჩქარა მოძრაობს.	=	A უჩქარესად მოძრაობს.
A <i>q'vela-ze chkara mo-dzra-ob-s.</i>	=	A <i>u-chkar-es-ad mo-dzra-ob-s.</i>
A all - on fast X-moves (pres 3s)	=	A fastest (adv) X-moves (pres 3s)
A moves the fastest.		A moves the fastest.

Note the use of the adverbial case in the latter example: უჩქარესად *u-chkar-es-ad* 'fastest'. Note also the comparatives მეტად *met'ad* 'more', უკეთესად *uk'etesad* 'better', ნაკლებად *nak'lebad* 'less', and უარესად *uaresad* 'worse'.

The superlative degree is also sometimes formed using მეტად *met'ad* 'extremely', მეტისმეტად *met'ismet'ad* 'exceedingly', უაღრესად *uaghresad* 'highly', and ფრიად *priad* 'extremely'.

POSTPOSITIONS

Georgian uses postpositions in place of the English prepositions ('on', 'for', etc.). These may be in the form of either a postfix attached to the noun, or a separate word which follows it. The case of the nouns is determined by the choice of postposition.

Note that some postpositions can also act as adverbs, for example, წინ *ts'in* 'forward(s)', and უკან *uk'an* 'back, backward(s)'.

Postpositions Taking the Dative

The -ს -s of the dative is omitted with some postpositions (marked †).

-ვით -vit ('like, as') (may also govern nominative case)	ბავშვსავით <i>bavsh-sa-vit</i> ('like a child') ხესავით <i>khe-sa-vit</i> ('like a tree')
-ზე† -ze† ('on, onto')	სკამზე <i>sk'am-ze</i> ('on the chair') კედელზე <i>k'edel-ze</i> ('on the wall'). Note: შემოდგომაზე <i>shemodgoma-ze</i> ('in the fall') კრებაზე <i>k'reba-ze</i> ('at a meeting')
-თან -tan ('at, near') († for consonantal stems)	მაგიდასთან <i>magida-s-tan</i> ('at the table') კარებთან <i>k'areb-tan</i> ('near the door'). Note: მეგობართან <i>megobar-tan</i> ('at a friend's house') მანანასთან <i>manana-s-tan</i> ('at Manana's')
-თან ერთად -tan ertad ('together with') († for consonantal stems)	ნაცნობთან ერთად <i>natsnob-tan ertad</i> ('together with an acquaintance') თქვენთან ერთად <i>tkven-tan ertad</i> ('together with you')
-ვით -vit ('like, as') (with the extended case ending, or with a nominative consonantal stem)	მუშასავით <i>musha-s-a-vit</i> ('like a worker') გმიროვით <i>gmir-i-vit</i> ('like a hero')
-ში† -shi† ('in, into')	ოთახში <i>otakh-shi</i> ('in(to) the room') ივნისში <i>ivnis-shi</i> ('in June')
შორის shoris ('between, among') (also with genitive)	ქალაქსა და სოფელს შორის <i>kalak-s-a da sopel-s shoris</i> ('between town and country') მეზობლებს შორის <i>mezobleb-s shoris</i> ('among the neighbors')
შუა shua ('between, among')	= შორის shoris

Postpositions Taking the Genitive

Some postpositions (marked †) may also be used with the extended case ending.

აქეთ aket ('on that side of')	მდინარის აქეთ <i>mdinar-is aket</i> ('on this side of the river')
გამო gamo ('because of, on account of')	ამინდის გამო <i>amind-is gamo</i> ('on account of the weather') შენს გამო <i>shen-s gamo</i> ('because of you')
-გან† -gan† ('from, of')	თანამშრომლისგან <i>tanamshroml-is-gan</i> ('from a work colleague')

ხისგან *kh-is-gan* ('made from wood')

-ებრ *-ebr* ('like')
(archaic)

= -ვით *-vit*

გარდა *garda* ('except for')
(may precede or follow;
can govern dative with pronouns)

სტუდენტების გარდა *st'udent'-eb-is garda* ('except for the students')
პარასკევის გარდა *p'arask'ev-is garda* ('except for Friday')

გარეშე *gareshe* ('without')

ჭამის გარეშე *ch'am-is gareshe* ('without eating')

გარშემო *garshemo* ('around')

სახლის გარშემო *sakhl-is garshemo* ('around the house')

გასწვრივ *gasts'vriv* ('along')

ნაკადულის გასწვრივ *nak'adul-is gasts'vriv* ('along the stream')

ზემოთ *zemat* ('above')

სახურავის ზემოთ *sakhurav-is zemat* ('above the roof')

-თვის† *-tvis†* ('for')

მომავლისთვის *momavl-is-tvis* ('for the future')
თქვენთვის *tkven-tvis* ('for you')

ორგვლივ *irgvliv* ('around')

= გარშემო *garshemo*

იქით *ikit* ('on that side of')

მდინარის იქით *mdinar-is ikit* ('on that side of the river')

-კენ† *-k'en†* ('in the direction of,
towards')

ქალაქისკენ *kalak-is-k'en* ('towards the city')
სახლისკენ *sakhl-is-k'en* ('homeward')

მაგივრად *magivrad* ('instead of')

ძილის მაგივრად *dzil-is magivrad* ('instead of sleeping')
ჩაის მაგივრად *chai-s magivrad* ('instead of tea')

მეტი *met'i* ('except for')

= გარდა *garda*

მიერ *mier* ('by')

მწერლის მიერ *mts'erl-is mier* ('by the writer')
მშობლების მიერ *mshobl-eb-is mier* ('by the parents')

მიხედვით *mikhedvit* ('according to')

წიგნის მიხედვით *ts'ign-is mikhedvit* ('according to the book')
წყაროს მიხედვით *ts'q'aro-s mikhedvit* ('according to a source')

მიუხედავად *miukhedavad* ('in spite
of')
(may precede or follow)

მიუხედავად ყველაფრისა *miukhedavad q'velapr-is-a* ('in spite of
everything')
ამინდის მიუხედავად *amind-is miukhedavad* ('in spite of the weather')

ნაცვლად *natsvrad* ('instead of')
(may precede or follow)

= მაგივრად *magivrad*

პირდაპირ *p'irdap'ir* ('opposite')

ეკლესიის პირდაპირ *ek'lesi-is p'irdap'ir* ('opposite the church')

უკან *uk'an* ('behind')
(also with dative)

იმის უკან *im-is uk'an* ('behind him')
სახლის უკან *sakhl-is uk'an* ('behind the house')

ქვემოთ *kvemot* ('down, below')

= ქვეშ *kvesh*

ქვეშ *kvesh* ('under, beneath')
(also with dative)

ცის ქვეშ *ts-is kvesh* ('under the sky')
მიცის ქვეშ *mits-is kvesh* ('underground')

შემდეგ *shemdeg* ('after')

ძილის შემდეგ *dzil-is shemdeg* ('after sleep')

ერთი კვირის შემდეგ *ert-i k'vir-is shemdeg* ('a week later')

შესახებ *shesakheb* ('about, concerning')

საქმის შესახებ *sakm-is shesakheb* ('concerning the matter')

იმის შესახებ *im-is shesakheb* ('about him')

წინ *ts'in* ('before, in front of')

შენობის წინ *shenob-is ts'in* ('in front of the building')

ქორწილის წინ *korts'il-is ts'in* ('before the wedding')

Postpositions Taking the Instrumental

-დან *-dan* ('from, out of, since')

ციხიდან *tsikh-i-dan* ('from the fortress / prison')

(the -თ *-t* of the instrumental is omitted)

დაბადებიდან *dabadeb-i-dan* ('since birth')

-ურთ *-urt* ('together with')
(archaic)

ცოლითურთ *tsol-it-urt* ('together with his wife')

Postpositions Taking the Adverbial

-მდე *-mde* ('up to, as far as')

ნავსადგურამდე *navsadgur-a-mde* ('as far as the harbor')

(the -დ *-d* of the adverbial is omitted)

სიკვდილამდე *sik'vdil-a-mde* ('until death')

NUMBERS

Cardinal Numbers

The Georgian counting system is fundamentally vigesimal (that is, based on 20), with some decimal features. Here are the basic cardinal numbers.

1	ერთი	<i>ert-i</i>
2	ორი	<i>or-i</i>
3	სამი	<i>sam-i</i>
4	ოთხი	<i>otkh-i</i>
5	ხუთი	<i>khut-i</i>
6	ექვსი	<i>ekvs-i</i>
7	შვიდი	<i>shvid-i</i>
8	რვა	<i>rva</i>
9	ცხრა	<i>tskhra</i>
10	ათი	<i>at-i</i>
20	ოცი	<i>ots-i</i>
100	ასი	<i>as-i</i>

To these may be added ნული *nul-i* ('zero') and მილიონი *million-i* ('million').

The form of numbers between 11 and 19 may be represented as *[ა]თხმეტი **[a]t-X-met'-i*, that is, '10-X-more'. These numbers are given here.

11	თერთმეტი	<i>t-ert-met'-i</i>	10 + 1
12	თორმეტი	<i>t-or-met'-i</i>	10 + 2
13	ცამეტი	<i>tsa-net'-i</i>	10 + 3
14	თოთხმეტი	<i>t-otkh-met'-i</i>	10 + 4
15	თხუთმეტი	<i>t-khut-met'-i</i>	10 + 5
16	თექვსმეტი	<i>t-ekvs-met'-i</i>	10 + 6
17	ჩვიდმეტი	<i>chvid-met'-i</i>	10 + 7
18	თვრამეტი	<i>t-vra-met'-i</i>	10 + 8
19	ცხრამეტი	<i>tskhra-met'-i</i>	10 + 9

Cardinal numbers between 21 and 99 have the form *[X-მ]ოცდა-Y **[X-m]ots-da-Y*, that is, '[X *] 20 + Y', e.g.

22	ოცდაორი	<i>ots-da-or-i</i>	20 + 2
43	ორმოცდასამი	<i>or-m-ots-da-sam-i</i>	(2 x 20) + 3
56	ორმოცდათექვსმეტი	<i>or-m-ots-da-t-ekvs-met'-i</i>	(2 x 20) + (10 + 6)

Other numerals are formed using combinations of the above, as in this example.

2675

ორი ათას ექვსას სამოცდათხუთმეტი
or-i at-as ekvs-as sam-ots-da-t-khut-met'-i
(2 x (10 x 100)) + (6 x 100) + (3 x 20) + (10 + 5).

The cardinal numerals are declined in the same manner as nouns, with only the last number in compound numbers being declined. Nouns accompanied by numerals are in the singular number (e.g., ექვსი სახლი *ekvs-i sakhl-i* 'six houses').

Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers are formed by adding მე- — ე *me-* — *-e* to the last element of the numeral, as in this example.

54th
ორმოცდამეთოთხმეტე
or+mots-da-me-totkhmet'-e.

This is abbreviated as 54-ე *54-e* (the hyphen is written).

The forms of the following ordinals should be noted.

1st	პირველი	<i>p'irvel-i</i>
8th	მერვე	<i>me-rv-e</i>
9th	მეცხრე	<i>me-tskhr-e</i>

The ordinals '21st', '31st' follow the general rule (e.g., ოცდამეერთე *ots-da-me-ert-e*, abbreviated 21-ე *21-e*).

Fractions and Decimals

Fractions

Fractions are formed using the circumfix მე- — ედი *me-* — *-ed-i*, e.g., მეასედი *me-as-ed-i* 'one hundredth' from ასი *as-i* ('one hundred'), სამი მეოთხედი *sam-i me-otkh-ed-i* '3/4'. An exception to this rule is ნახევარი *nakhevar-i* 'half'.

Note that '5½' is ხუთ-ნახევარი *khut-nakhevar-i* 'five and a half'.

Decimals

Numbers following the decimal point are not read as a sequence of numerals, as in English. Instead, the decimal part of the number is read as a fraction. Here is an example.

7.43 = შვიდი მთელი [და] ორმოცდასამი მეასედი
7.43 = shvid-i mtel-i [da] or+m+mots+da+sam-i me-as-ed-i
7.43 = seven whole [and] forty-three hundredths
7.43 = seven point four three

Multiplicatives

These forms of the numerals express a specific number of times. They are formed by adding the suffix -ჯერ *-jer*, as in შვიდჯერ *shvid-jer* 'seven times', and თექვსმეტჯერ *tekvsmet'-jer* '15 times'. However, 'once' is more usually translated as ერთხელ *ert+khel*.

Telling the Time

In the usual Georgian format, the time is told with reference to the *next* hour. This is illustrated here using the hour beginning at 6 o'clock and ending at 7 o'clock. (Note that 15 and 45 minutes past the hour are not treated differently.)

minutes past 6 o'clock	formula	Georgian
approximately 1 – 4	'seven has begun'	შვიდი დაწყებულია. <i>shvid-i da-ts'q'-eb-ul-i-a.</i> seven (nom) X-begins (past part nom) - X-is (pres 3s) 'It is just after 6 o'clock.'
1 – 29	'it is 7's 15 minutes'	შვიდის თხუთმეტი წუთია. <i>shvid-is tkhutmet'-i ts'ut-i-a.</i> seven (gen) fifteen (nom) minute (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s) 'It is 6.15.'
30	'it is half 7'	შვიდის ნახევარია. <i>shvid-is naxevar-i-a.</i> seven (gen) half (nom) - X-is (pres 3s) It is 6.30.
31 – 59	'7 lacks 8 minutes'	შვიდს უკლია (აკლია) რვა წუთი. <i>shvid-s u-k'l-i-a (a-k'l-i-a) rva ts'ut-i.</i> seven (dat) X-is-lacking-to-Y (pres 3s 3s) eight minute (nom sg) 'It is 6.52.'
approximately 56 – 59	'it becomes 7'	შვიდი ხდება. <i>shvid-i kh-d-eb-a.</i> seven (nom) X-becomes (pres 3s) 'It is nearly 7 o'clock.'
60	'it is 7 hours'	შვიდი საათია. <i>shvid-i saat-i-a.</i> seven (nom) hour (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s) 'It is 7.00.'

Here is the standard formula to ask the time in Georgian.

რომელი საათია?
romel-i saat-i-a?
which (nom sg) hour (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)
What time is it?

An alternative, more formal, way of telling the time is to give the number of minutes past the *last* hour, as in this example.

ექვსი საათი და ორმოცდათორმეტი წუთია.
ekvs-i saat-i da or+m+ots-da-t+or+met'-i ts'uti-a.
six (nom) hour (nom sg) and fifty-two (nom) minute (nom sg) - X-is (pres 3s)
It is 6.52.

CONJUNCTIONS

Coordinating Conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions link linguistic units of the same status. The main Georgian coordinating conjunctions are listed here.

ან	<i>an</i>	'or'
ან ... ან	<i>an ... an</i>	'either ... or'
არადა	<i>arada</i>	'or'
ანუ	<i>anu</i>	'or', 'in other words'
არამედ	<i>aramed</i>	'but'
გინდ(ა) ... გინდ(ა)	<i>gind(a) ... gind(a)</i>	'it is all the same whether ... or'
და	<i>da</i>	'and'
ესე იგი	<i>ese igi</i>	'that is'
თორემ	<i>torem</i>	'or else'
თუ	<i>tu</i>	'and', 'or'
კი	<i>k'i</i>	'but', 'and', 'however'
მაგრამ	<i>magram</i>	'but'
ხან ... ხან	<i>khan ... khan</i>	'sometimes ... sometimes'
ხოლო	<i>kholo</i>	'but'

Subordinating Conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions introduce dependent clauses. The main Georgian subordinating conjunctions are listed here.

ვიდრე	<i>vidre</i>	'until', 'while', 'before'
ვინაიდან	<i>vinaidan</i>	'because, as'
თითქოს	<i>titkos</i>	'even if', 'as though'
თუ	<i>tu</i>	'if', 'that'
თუ არა	<i>tu ara</i>	'as soon as'
თუმცა	<i>tumtsa</i>	'(al)though'
თუნდაც	<i>tundats</i>	'even if', 'and even'
რადგან(აც)	<i>radgan(ats)</i>	'because'
რათა	<i>rata</i>	'(in order) that'
რახან	<i>rakhan</i>	'because'
როგორც კი	<i>rogorts k'i</i>	'as soon as'
როდესაც	<i>rodesats</i>	'when'
რომ	<i>rom</i>	'when', '(in order) that', 'if'
რომც	<i>romts</i>	'even if'
როცა	<i>rotsa</i>	'when'
სანამ	<i>sanam</i>	'until', 'while', 'before'

PARTICLES

Georgian particles may affixed or may be written as separate words. Several are derived from other parts of speech, sometimes unchanged in form. The particles alter the meaning of the phrase or sentence in which they occur, often by adding a nuance. The more common Georgian particles are listed here.

ა a	(1) → აი <i>ai</i> . (2) This is an Old Georgian interrogative particle that survives in some modern dialects. (→ აჰ <i>ah</i> , → ჰა <i>ha</i>)
აჰ <i>ah</i>	This particle turns a question into a statement, or intensifies a question. (→ ჰა <i>ha</i>)
აბა <i>aba</i>	This emphatic particle intensifies the expression of a desire or order. აბა მოთხარი! <i>aba m-i-txar-i!</i> [particle] X-tells-Y-to-Z (aor 2s 3s 1s) Just tell me!
აგერ <i>ager</i>	This particle is used to point out something close to the speaker. (→ ეგერ <i>eger</i>)
აი <i>ai</i>	This particle is used to draw attention to, or to point out, an object or event.
აკი <i>ak'i</i>	(1) This particle expresses surprise or astonishment similar to → თითქო(ს) <i>titko(s)</i> . (2) This particle is similar in meaning to → ხომ <i>khom</i> .
არ <i>ar</i>	(1) This particle expresses negation, and corresponds to the English 'not'. It also often accompanies the verb -შინ- <i>-shin-</i> 'to fear, to be afraid' and the conjunction სანამ <i>sanam</i> . The particle არ <i>ar</i> indicates simple negation, in contrast to ვერ <i>ver</i> , which conveys the idea of inability. ვერ გაგიკეთებ; დრო სულ არა მაქვს. <i>ver ga-g-i-k'et-eb; dro sul ara m-a-kv-s.</i> [particle] X-does-Y-for-Z (fut 1s 3s 2s); time (nom sg) at-all [particle] X-has-Y (pres 1s 3s) I can't do it for you; I simply don't have the time. (2) This particle expresses surprise or astonishment.
არა <i>ara</i>	This negative response particle corresponds to the English 'no'.
არც(ა) <i>arts(a)</i>	This negative particle is a combination of → არ <i>ar</i> and → -ც(ა) <i>-ts(a)</i> . It may sometimes be translated as 'and ... not, neither'. The sequence არც ... არც <i>arts ... arts</i> corresponds to 'neither ... nor'.
აღარ <i>aghar</i>	This negative particle is derived from a combination of → არ <i>ar</i> and → -ღა <i>-gha</i> , and is equivalent to the English 'no longer'.
-აც(ა) <i>-ats(a)</i>	This is a form of → -ც(ა) <i>-ts(a)</i> following a consonant.
აჰა <i>aha</i>	→ აი <i>ai</i> .
ბარე(მ) <i>bare(m)</i>	(1) This emphatic particle intensifies the expression of a desire or order by adding a nuance of resignation. (2) This particle is similar to → დაე <i>dae</i> .
განა <i>gana</i>	(1) This interrogative particle adds a nuance of surprise to questions, and is used when the response is expected to be negative (that is, the speaker expects the proposition in the question to be denied). The behavior of this particle contrasts with that of → ხომ <i>khom</i> . განა მართლა ეგრე იყო? <i>gana martla egre i-q'o?</i> [particle] really thus X-is (aor 3s)? Surely it wasn't really like that? (2) This particle can negate a sentence, while adding a nuance of surprise.
დაე <i>dae</i>	This emphatic particle intensifies the expression of a desire or order by adding a nuance of threat or warning.
დე(ე) <i>de(e)</i>	→ დაე <i>dae</i> .

დახ <i>diakh</i>	This polite response particle corresponds to the English 'yes'. It is more formal than both → კი <i>k'i</i> and → ჰო <i>ho</i> .
დაღ <i>diagh</i>	→ დახ <i>diakh</i> .
ეგ <i>eg</i>	This particle has the same form as the demonstrative pronoun. It is used in a manner similar to the particle → აი <i>ai</i> .
ეგებ(ის) <i>egeb(is)</i>	This modal particle expresses possibility or supposition, and may usually be translated as 'perhaps' or 'maybe'. It is often accompanied by the subjunctive mood. (→ იქნებ(ა) <i>ikneb(a)</i> , → შეიძლება <i>sheidzleba</i>) ეგებ იმან იცის. <i>egeb im-an i-ts-i-s.</i> [particle] he (nar) X-knows-Y (pres 3s 3s) Perhaps he knows it.
ეგერ <i>eger</i>	This particle is used to point out something close to the person being addressed. (→ აგერ <i>ager</i>)
ერთი <i>erti</i>	This particle has the same form as the numeral and indefinite pronoun 'one'. It is found in expressions of demands, requests, and threats, and often accompanies the particle → აბა <i>aba</i> .
ეს <i>es</i>	This particle has the same form as the demonstrative pronoun. It is used in a manner similar to the particle → აი <i>ai</i> .
ვაითუ <i>vaitu</i>	This particle is a combination of the interjection → ვაი <i>vai</i> and the conjunction → თუ <i>tu</i> , and expresses apprehension, fear, anxiety, and the like.
-ვე <i>-ve</i>	(1) When added to a noun or pronoun, this identity particle may be translated by 'the same, self, just'. It may also be added to demonstrative adjectives and adverbs, e.g., იგივე <i>igi-ve</i> 'the same', ისეთივე <i>iseti-ve</i> 'just such a', იქვე <i>ik-ve</i> 'right there, in that very place', ასევე <i>ase-ve</i> 'just so', etc. დილას მივდივარ, მაგრამ დღესვე დავბრუნდები. <i>dila-s mi-v-di-v-ar, magram dghe-s-ve da-v-brun-d-eb-i.</i> morning (dat sg) X-goes (fut 1s), but day (dat sg) - [particle] X-returns (fut 1s) I'm leaving this morning, but I'm returning this very day. (2) This particle may be translated by 'all' when it accompanies numbers, e.g., ოთხივე <i>otkh-i-ve</i> 'all four'. (Note ორივე <i>ori-ve</i> 'both'.)
ვერ <i>ver</i>	This particle expresses negation, and corresponds to the English 'not', but with a nuance of inability.
ვერა <i>vera</i>	This negative response particle corresponds to the English 'no', but with a nuance of inability. (→ არ <i>ar</i>)
ვერც(ა) <i>verts(a)</i>	This negative particle is a combination of → ვერ <i>ver</i> and → -ც(ა) <i>-ts(a)</i> . It may sometimes be translated as 'and ... can not, neither'. The sequence ვერც ... ვერც <i>verts ... verts</i> corresponds to 'can neither ... nor'. ვერც სახლში ვერც ბაღში ვერ იპოვა. <i>ver-ts sakhl-shi verts bagh-shi ver i-p'ov-a.</i> [particle] house (dat sg) - in [particle] garden (dat sg) - in [particle] X-finds-Y (aor 3s 3s) He couldn't find it either in the house or in the garden.
ვეღარ <i>veghar</i>	This negative particle is derived from a combination of → ვერ <i>ver</i> and → -ღა <i>-gha</i> , and is equivalent to the English 'can ... no longer'.
ვითომ(ც) <i>vitom(ts)</i>	This particle signals that something is not what it appears, and may be translated as 'as if, allegedly, ostensibly'. (→ თითქო(ს) <i>titko(s)</i>)
ვინძლო <i>vindzlo</i>	This emphatic particle intensifies the expression of a desire or order by adding a motivating or encouraging nuance. It is accompanied by the optative screeve.
თითქმის <i>titkmis</i>	This particle corresponds to the English 'almost' (→ კინაღამ <i>k'inagham</i> , → ლამის <i>lamis</i>).
თითქო(ს) <i>titko(s)</i>	This particle signals that something is not what it appears, and may be translated as 'as if, allegedly, ostensibly'. In real comparisons, it is accompanied by the indicative mood, and by the subjunctive if the comparison is hypothetical. (→ ვითომ(ც) <i>vitom(ts)</i>)

თუ <i>tu</i>	(1) This interrogative particle can be equivalent to → ეგებ(ის) <i>egeb(is)</i> , → იქნებ(ა) <i>ikneb(a)</i> , → ხომ (არ) <i>khom (ar)</i> . (2) This approximated particle may be translated as ‘about, approximately, at most’.
თურმე <i>turme</i>	This modal particle is used to indicate that what something is inferred rather than based on direct knowledge. It often accompanies the perfect screeve, and is sometimes approximated by the English by ‘apparently, it appears, it seems’. It is important to note that this particle does not introduce any doubt as to the veracity of what is being reported; rather, it adds the nuance that the speaker was not present at the event and is not an eyewitness.
-თქო <i>-tko</i>	This particle (written with a hyphen) marks a phrase or sentence as the words of a first-person speaker that are to be related by a second person to a third. (→ -მეთქი <i>-metki</i> , → -ო <i>-o</i>) უთხარი, შენც მოდი-თქო. <i>u-tkhar-i, shen-ts mo-di-tko.</i> X-tells-Y-to-Z (aor 2s 3s 3s), you (nom sg) - [particle] X-comes (imp 2s) - [particle] Tell him he should come too.
იქნებ(ა) <i>ikneb(a)</i>	This modal particle expresses possibility or supposition, and may usually be translated as ‘it is possible, it may be, perhaps, maybe’. It is accompanied by the optative screeve. (→ ეგებ(ის) <i>egeb(is)</i> , → შეიძლება <i>sheidzleba</i>)
კი <i>k'i</i>	(1) This response particle corresponds to the English ‘yes’. It is less formal than → დიახ <i>dakh</i> , and more formal than → ჰო <i>ho</i> . (2) This emphatic particle may follow conjunctions or the intensifying particle → -ც(ა) <i>-ts(a)</i> to add emphasis. (3) This contrastive particle can have a meaning similar to that of → ხოლო <i>kholo</i> , drawing some attention to the item it follows, and contrasting this with another item mentioned earlier. ჩემი მეგობრები ქუჩაში თამაშობდნენ, მე კი სახლში ვსწავლობდი. <i>chmem-i megobr-eb-i kucha-shi tamash-ob-d-nen, me k'i sakhl-shi v-sts'avl-ob-d-i</i> my (nom) friend (nom pl) street (dat sg) - in X-plays (impf 3p), I (nom) [particle] house (dat sg) - in X-studies-Y (impf 1s 3s) My friends played in the street, but I used to study at home.
კიდევ(ვა)ც <i>k'ide(va)ts</i>	This particle is derived from the adverb ‘again, still’, and serves to intensify the action of the verb.
კინაღამ <i>k'inagham</i>	This particle is a near equivalent to the English ‘almost’. (→ თითქმის <i>titkmis</i> , → ლამის <i>lamis</i>)
ლამის <i>lamis</i>	This particle may often be translated by an English phrase like ‘almost, all but, as good as, just about, come very close to’. It is accompanied by the optative screeve. (→ თითქმის <i>titkmis</i> , → კინაღამ <i>k'inagham</i>)
მაინც <i>maints</i>	(1) This particle can be translated by such English expressions as ‘still, nevertheless, in any case, anyway, nonetheless, at least’. (2) This particle is similar to → ნეტავი <i>net'a(vi)</i> .
მარტო <i>mart'o</i>	This particle has the same form as the adjective meaning ‘alone’. It is identical in meaning to → მხოლოდ <i>mkholod</i> .
მერე <i>mere</i>	This particle has the same form as the adverb of time meaning ‘afterwards, subsequently, then’. It adds a (sometimes urgent or impatient) note of further enquiry to questions.
-მე <i>-me</i>	This particle marks non-specific indefiniteness. It is added to interrogative pronouns and adverbs to form indefinite pronouns and adverbs.
-მეთქი <i>-metki</i>	This speech particle (written with a hyphen) marks a phrase or sentence as the words of a first-person speaker. (→ -ო <i>-o</i> , → -თქო <i>-tko</i>) უკვე გითხარი, არ ვიცი-მეთქი. <i>uk've g-i-tkhar-i, ar v-i-ts-i-metki.</i> [particle] X-tells-Y-to-Z (aor 1s 3s 2s), [particle] X-knows-Y (pres 1s 3s) - [particle] I've told you already: I don't know.
მოდი <i>modi</i>	This emphatic particle has the same form as the second person singular imperative მოდი <i>mo-d-i</i> ‘come’. It intensifies the expression of a desire or order by adding a nuance of pleading, and is equivalent to the English ‘let's’.
მხოლოდ <i>mkholod</i>	This particle corresponds to the English ‘only’. (→ მარტო <i>mart'o</i>)
ნეტავი <i>net'a(vi)</i>	(1) This modal particle expresses wishes and desires, and may be translated as ‘if only...! how good it would be if...! how I wish that...!’ It is usually accompanied by the

	<p>subjunctive mood.</p> <p>ნეტა ჩამოვიდოდნენ დაღამებამდე! <i>net'a cha-mo-vid-od-nen da-gham-eb-a-mde!</i> [particle] X-arrives (pres subj 3p) nightfall - until! Wouldn't it be good if they arrived before nightfall!</p> <p>(2) This emphatic particle adds to questions a nuance of astonishment, disbelief or wonder. It may sometimes be translated using such phrases as 'how good it would be to know...! if I only knew...!how I wish to know...! I wonder'. (→ ნუთუ <i>nutu</i>)</p> <p>ნეტა რას აკეთებს ხოლმე საღამოებით? <i>net'a ra-s a-k'et-eb-s kholme saghamo-ob-it?</i> [particle] what (dat sg) X-does-Y (pres 3s 3s) usually evening (adv sg)? What, I wonder, does he usually do in the evenings?</p>
ნეტამც <i>net'amts</i>	→ ნეტა(ვი) <i>net'a(vi)</i> .
ნუ <i>nu</i>	<p>This particle expresses negation combined with prohibition, and corresponds to the English 'do not'.</p> <p>ნუ გეშინია ნურაფრის. <i>nu g-e-shin-i-a nur-a-pr-i-s.</i> [particle] X-fears-Y (pres 2s 3s) anything (gen sg) Don't be afraid of anything.</p>
ნუთუ <i>nutu</i>	<p>This interrogative particle adds a nuance of doubt and surprise or astonishment to questions that deal with somewhat improbable circumstances. It can often be translated by the English 'really'. (→ნეტავ(ი) <i>net'av(i)</i>)</p>
ნურც(ა) <i>nurts(a)</i>	<p>This negative particle is a combination of → ნუ <i>nu</i> and → -ც(ა) <i>-ts(a)</i>. It may sometimes be translated as 'and ... do not, neither'. The sequence ნურც ... ნურც <i>nurts ... nurts</i> corresponds to 'do neither ... nor'.</p>
ნულარ <i>nughar</i>	<p>This negative particle is derived from a combination of → ნუ <i>nu</i> and → -ლა <i>-gha</i>, and is equivalent to the English 'do not ... any longer'.</p>
-ო -o	<p>This particle (written without a hyphen) marks a phrase or sentence as the words of a third person. It also often marks sayings and proverbs, and can occur with the particles → თითქო(ს) <i>titko(s)</i>, → ვითომ(ც) <i>vitom(ts)</i>. (→ -თქო <i>-tko</i>, → -მეტქი <i>-metki</i>)</p> <p>ბიჭმა თქვა, მე იქ ვიყავი და არაფერი არ მინახავსო. <i>bich'-ma tkv-a, me ik v-i-q'-av-i da araper-i ar m-i-nakh-av-s-o.</i> boy (nar sg) X-says-Y (aor 3s 3s), I (nom) there X-is (aor 1s) and nothing (nom) not X-sees-Y (perf 1s 3s) - [particle] "I was there", the boy said, "and I didn't see anything."</p>
-ოდე <i>-ode</i>	<p>This particle draws attention to approximative quantities, e.g., ხუთიოდე <i>khut-i-ode</i> 'around five'.</p>
რა <i>ra</i>	<p>(1) This particle expresses surprise or astonishment. (2) This particle adds a nuance of entreaty, and may be translated using the English 'please'.</p>
როდი <i>rodi</i>	<p>This is an emphatic negative particle.</p>
უკვე <i>uk've</i>	<p>This particle highlights the commencement or completion of an action. It may usually be translated by the English 'already'.</p>
უნდა <i>unda</i>	<p>This modal particle has the same form as the verb უნდა <i>u-nd-a</i> 'he wants it'. It corresponds to the English 'it is necessary that, must, ought', and is accompanied by the subjunctive mood.</p> <p>უნდა ვნახო, რა ხდება. <i>unda v-nakh-o, ra kh-d-eb-a.</i> [particle] X-sees-Y (opt 1s 3s) what (nom) X-happens (pres 3s) I must see what is happening.</p>
-ღა <i>-gha</i>	<p>This emphatic particle adds a nuance of astonishment, irritation, despair, and the like to the interrogative pronouns and adverbs, e.g., ვინ(ნ)ღა? <i>vi(n)-gha?</i> 'who then? who on earth?' სადღა? <i>sad-gha?</i> 'where then? where on earth?'</p>

-ღაც(ა) <i>-ghats(a)</i>	This particle marks specific indefiniteness. It is added to interrogative pronouns and adverbs to form indefinite pronouns and adverbs.
შეიძლება <i>sheidzleba</i>	This modal particle corresponds to the English 'it is possible, it may be that'. It is accompanied by the optative screeve. (→ ეგებ(ის) <i>egeb(is)</i> , → იქნებ(ა) <i>ikneb(a)</i>)
-ც(ა) <i>-ts(a)</i>	(1) This is an intensifying particle, which draws some attention to the word to which it is attached. It is not used in contrastive contexts, as are → კი <i>k'i</i> and → ხოლო <i>kholo</i> . It can sometimes be translated as 'too, also'. The sequence -ც(ა) ... -ც(ა) <i>-ts(a)</i> ... <i>-ts(a)</i> may be translated as 'both ... and'. მეც ვნახე. <i>me-ts v-nakh-e.</i> I (nom sg) - [particle] X-sees-Y (aor 1s 3s) I, too, saw him. (2) This particle is used to derive relative pronouns and adverbs from the corresponding interrogative pronouns and adverbs. (→ აც(ა) <i>-ats(a)</i>)
ხო <i>kho</i>	→ ჰო <i>ho</i> .
ხოლმე <i>kholme</i>	This particle marks repetitive or habitual action. In past references, it is often accompanied by the conditional screeve, and corresponds to the English 'used to, was wont to'.
ხოლო <i>kholo</i>	This particle contrasts the item it precedes with another item mentioned earlier. (→ კი <i>k'i</i>)
ხომ (არ) <i>khom (ar)</i>	This interrogative particle is used when the response is expected to be confirmative (that is, a 'yes' answer is expected if ხომ <i>khom</i> is used, and a 'no' answer in the case of ხომ არ <i>khom ar</i>). It is not used with the interrogative pronouns, adjectives or adverbs. The behavior of this particle contrasts with that of → განა <i>gana</i> . ხომ არ იცით სად არის? <i>khom ar i-ts-i-t sad ar-i-s?</i> [particle] not X-knows-Y (pres 2p 3s) where X-is (pres 3s) You don't happen to know where he is, do you?
ჰა <i>ha</i>	(1) → აი <i>ai</i> . (2) This particle turns a question into a statement, or intensifies a question. (→ აჰ <i>ah</i>)
ჰო <i>ho</i>	This response particle corresponds to the English 'yes'. It is less formal than both → დიახ <i>diakh</i> and → კი <i>k'i</i> .

Negative particles

The negative particles may be classified as in this table.

CATEGORY	BASIC	FUTURE EXTENSION	ALTERNATIVES
negation	არ(ა) <i>ar(a)</i> 'not'	აღარ <i>a+ghar</i> 'no longer'	არც ... არც <i>ar+ts ... ar+ts</i> 'neither ... nor'
potential	ვერ(ა) <i>ver(a)</i> 'cannot'	ვეღარ <i>ve+ghar</i> 'can ... no longer'	ვერც .. ვერც <i>ver+ts ... ver+ts</i> 'can neither ... nor'
prohibition	ნუ <i>nu</i> 'do not'	ნუღარ <i>nu+ghar</i> 'do not ... any longer'	ნურც ... ნურც <i>nu+r+ts ... nu+r+ts</i> 'do not either ... or'

Negative particles

INTERJECTIONS AND ENDEARMENTS

Interjections

Several interjections may be used in more than one situation or to express more than a single emotion.

admiration	აჲ! <i>au!</i> ე(ხ)! <i>e(kh)!</i> ვაშა! <i>vasha!</i> ოჰ! <i>oh!</i> ოი! <i>oi!</i> ო(ჰ)! <i>o(h)!</i> უი(მე)! <i>ui(me)!</i> უჰ! <i>uh!</i> ჰეე(ე)! <i>hee(e)!</i> ჰოი! <i>hoi!</i>
anger	ოიმე! <i>oime!</i> ოხ! <i>okh!</i> ოჰ! <i>oh!</i> ოჰმე! <i>ohme!</i> ჰა(ი)ტ! <i>ha(i)t!</i> ჰოი! <i>hoi!</i>
anxiety, concern	ახ! <i>akh!</i> ეხ! <i>ekh!</i> ეჰ! <i>eh!</i> ოხ! <i>okh!</i> ოჰ! <i>oh!</i> ოჰმე! <i>ohme!</i>
astonishment, surprise	აბა! <i>aba!</i> აჲ! <i>au!</i> ბიჭო(ს)! <i>bich'o(s)!</i> ერიჰა(ა)! <i>erih(a)!</i> ვაი(მე)! <i>vai(me)!</i> ვაჰმე! <i>vahme!</i> ოხ! <i>okh!</i> ოჰ! <i>oh!</i> ოჰო! <i>oho!</i> უი(მე)! <i>ui(me)!</i> უჰ! <i>uh!</i> ჰეიდა! <i>heida!</i>
amazement	ბიჭო(ს)! <i>bich'o(s)!</i> ოი! <i>oi!</i> ოხ! <i>okh!</i> ოჰ! <i>oh!</i> ოჰოჰო! <i>ohoho!</i> ჰოჰოი! <i>hohoi!</i>
calling	ჰა(ი)! <i>ha(i)!</i> ჰაჲ! <i>hau!</i>
desire	ახ, ნეტავი! <i>akh, net'av!</i> ოი! <i>oi!</i> ოჰმე! <i>oime!</i>
disgust	ფუ(ი)! <i>pu(i)!</i>
dissatisfaction	ფუ(ი)! <i>pu(i)!</i>
encouragement	აბა (ჰე)! <i>aba (he)!</i> ყოჩაღ! <i>q'ochagh!</i> ჰა(ი)! <i>ha(i)!</i>
fear	ვაი(მე)! <i>vai(me)!</i> ვაჰმე! <i>vah(me)!</i> უი(მე)! <i>ui(me)!</i>
liking, approval	ვაშა! <i>vasha!</i> ყოჩაღ! <i>q'ochagh!</i> ჰაი-ჰა! <i>hai-ha!</i> ჰე(ი)! <i>he(i)!</i> ჰო! <i>ho!</i>
offense	ოიმე! <i>oime!</i> ჰეიდა! <i>heida!</i>
pain	ვაი(მე)! <i>vai(me)!</i> ვახ! <i>vakh!</i> ვაჰმე! <i>vahme!</i> ვაჰ! <i>vah!</i> უი(მე)! <i>ui(me)!</i>
pity	ახ! <i>akh!</i> ეხ! <i>ekh!</i> ეჰ! <i>eh!</i> ვაი(მე)! <i>vai(me)!</i> ვაჰმე! <i>vahme!</i> ოჰ! <i>oh!</i> უი(მე)! <i>ui(me)!</i> ჰაი! <i>hai!</i> ჰეიჰა! <i>heiha!</i>
pleasure	ოი! <i>oi!</i> ოხ! <i>okh!</i> ოჰ! <i>oh!</i>
regret	ოჰ! <i>oh!</i> იჰ! <i>ih!</i> ოხ! <i>okh!</i> ოჰ! <i>oh!</i>
reproach	ოჲ! <i>ou!</i>
reprimand	ჰა(ი)ტ! <i>ha(i)t!</i>
satisfaction	ვაშა! <i>vasha!</i>
sorrow, grief	ვაი(მე)! <i>vai(me)!</i> ვაჰმე! <i>vahme!</i> უი(მე)! <i>ui(me)!</i> უჰ! <i>uh!</i>
threat	აბა (ერთი)! <i>aba (erti)!</i> ჰოი! <i>hoi!</i>
warning	ჰა! <i>ha!</i>
wish	ოჰმე! <i>ohme!</i>

Interjections

Some interjections can express commands or warnings such as არიკა! *arik'a!* 'careful!'; სდექ! *sdek!* 'stop!'; სჲ! *su!* and ჩჲ! *chu!* 'hush!'.

The following are some common greetings and similar interjections.

ალო! <i>alo!</i>	Hello! (on telephone)
არაფერს! <i>arapers!</i>	You're welcome! (= 'nothing')
ბოდიში! <i>bodishi!</i>	Excuse me!
გამარჯობა(თ)! <i>gamarjoba(t)!</i>	Hello!
გაგიმარჯოს! <i>gagimarjos!</i> (sg) გაგიმარჯოთ! <i>gagimarjot!</i> (pl)	response to გამარჯობა(თ)! <i>gamarjoba(t)!</i>
გასაგებია! <i>gasagebia!</i>	OK! (= 'understood')
გაუმარჯოს! <i>gaumarjos!</i>	Cheers! (also Hello!)
გთხოვ(თ)! <i>gtkhov(t)!</i>	Please! (= 'I ask you')
გმადლობ(თ)! <i>gmadlob(t)!</i>	Thanks! Thank you! (= 'I thank you')
დიდი მადლობა! <i>didi madloba!</i>	Many thanks! (= 'big thanks')
თი შეიძლება! <i>tu sheidzleba!</i>	Please! (= 'If it is possible')
კარგი(თ)! <i>k'argi(t)!</i>	OK! (= Good! So be it! Agreed!)
კეთილი! <i>k'etili!</i>	
მაპატიე(თ)!	Pardon me!
მშვიდობით! <i>mshvidobit!</i>	Farewell!
ნახვამდის! <i>nakhvamdīs!</i>	Good bye! (= Au revoir!)
სალამი! <i>salami!</i>	Hi!
უკაცრავად! <i>uk'atsravad!</i>	Excuse me!

Greetings, etc.

Endearments

Some terms of endearment are very common in Georgian, but should not be used by learners unfamiliar with their social contexts.

გეთაყვა!
g-e-taq'va!
[I worshipped you]
'Please!'

გენაცვალე!
g-e-na-tsva-l-e!
[I substituted for you]
'My dear! Darling!'

შემოგველე!
she+mo-g-e-vl-e!
[I encircled you]
'My dear!'

შენი ჭირიმე!
shen-i chir-i-me!
[Your misfortune upon me]
'My dear! Darling!'

Verbs

The Georgian verb is relatively complex. If we compare it to that of many of the more familiar languages – such as English, Spanish, French, and the like – we notice a number of significant differences. These including the following:

- the average number of morphemes (that is, basic grammatical units) per word is higher due to the process of agglutination (that is, word formation through combining sequences of elements, each with a distinctive role)
- verbs fall into a number of contrasting classes, based on their grammatical behavior and roles
- the familiar tenses (past, present, future, etc.) are replaced by what are known as 'screeves', which are characterized by more than just differences in the time reference
- the verb can include references to the subject and the direct and indirect objects, a characteristic known as polypersonalism as, for example, in the translation of 'I sent it to him', which is a single word in Georgian
- indirect objects can be marked as benefactors, possessors, and the like; this is known as 'version'
- subjects and objects are indicated in a more complex way through case marking
- there is a more precise distinction of direction with verbs of motion than in many of the more familiar languages, using verb prefixes known as directional preverbs.

As there are many exceptions to the general rules, one may sometimes encounter Georgian verbs which, in their detailed analysis, do not conform fully to models described here.

The highest-level classification of the Georgian verb is into 'finite' and 'non-finite' forms. Finite verbs stand alone in main clauses and express time, person, number, and so on (as in the English 'he held it'). Non-finite forms occur in dependent clauses and fail to make these distinctions (as in the English gerund 'holding').

The Screeve System

In English grammar, we distinguish the tense of a verb, for example, whether it refers to past time ('he held it') or to future time ('he will hold it'). Each tense comprises a set of verb forms, such as the past tense of the English verb 'to hold': 'I held', 'you held', 'he held', 'we held', 'you (all) held', and 'they held'. This is also generally true for Georgian, but linguists avoid using the term 'tense', as the Georgian situation is not exactly comparable in detail. Instead, the Georgian term მწკრივი *mts'k'rivi* ('row') has been adopted into English in the form 'screeve'. Each Georgian screeve comprises a set of six verb forms, three singular and three plural, as in English. However, as well as being associated with a particular time reference, these screeves are also share other characteristics, some of which are listed in the second table below.

There are eleven screeves in all in Georgian, and these are grouped into three 'series':

- Series 1 (abbreviated S1, and known as the 'present series') has two subseries (the 'present' and 'future'), each with three screeves.
- Series 2 (abbreviated S2, and known as the 'aorist series') has two screeves.
- Series 3 (abbreviated S3, and known as the 'perfect series') has three screeves, although one (the perfect subjunctive) is now little used.

The Georgian screeve system is summarized in this table.

SERIES	SCREEVES	
S1 'present'	present subseries	future subseries
	present imperfect present subjunctive	future conditional future subjunctive
	(S2.1) aorist (S2.2) optative	
S3 'perfect'	(S3.1) perfect (S3.2) pluperfect (S3.3) perfect subjunctive	

Screeve system

This table gives the main characteristics of the various screeves.

SERIES	SCREEVE	TIME	MOOD	ASPECT
(present)	present	present (future, general)	indicative	imperfective
	imperfect	past	indicative	
	present subjunctive	present (future)	subjunctive	
(future)	future	future	indicative	perfective
	conditional	past	indicative	
	future subjunctive	future	subjunctive	
aorist	aorist	past	indicative	perfective (imperfective) ¹
	optative	present / future	subjunctive	
perfect	perfect	past	indicative	
	pluperfect	past	indicative	
	perfect subjunctive	past / future	subjunctive	

¹ imperfective aspect less common

Screeve characteristics

Verb Classes

Class 1 Verbs

Abbreviated C1, and sometimes known as the ‘transitive verbs’ class, this group comprises for the most part transitive verbs. Examples are წერს *ts'er-s* ('he writes it') and ზრდის *zrd-i-s* ('he rears him', 'he grows it' – pres).

A small number of verbs are intransitive, e.g., ახველებს *a-khvel-eb-s* ('he coughs'), while others can include both indirect and direct objects, e.g., აჩუქებს *a-chuk-eb-s* ('he gives it to him as a gift').

This class also includes causatives, such as აწერინებს *a-ts'er-in-eb-s* ('he causes him to write it' ← წერს *ts'er-s* 'he writes it').

The future/aorist stem of Class 1 verbs is formed by adding a preverb, e.g., გაზრდის *ga-zrd-i-s* ('he will raise him', 'he will grow it' – fut) and დააწერინა *da-a-ts'er-in-a* ('he caused him to write it' – aor).

Class 2 Verbs

Abbreviated C2, and sometimes known as the ‘intransitive verbs’ class, this group may be further subdivided as follows:

Type (a)

Abbreviated C2(a), and known as the ‘radical (or markerless) intransitives’, these verb stems end in -ებ *-eb* in the present series, but have no distinctive Class 2 marker in the aorist series. In many cases, there is a corresponding Class 1 verb using the same root. This type includes such verbs as თბება *tb-eb-a* ('he warms himself') and რჩება *rch-eb-a* ('he remains'); the corresponding aorists are გათბა *ga-tb-a* ('he warmed himself') and დარჩა *da-rch-a* ('he remained').

Type (b)

Abbreviated C2(b), and known as the ‘prefixal intransitives’, verbs in this sub-class have the prefix ი- *i-*. The verb stems have the suffix -ებ *-eb* in the present series, e.g., გაიზრდება *ga-i-zrd-eb-a* ('he will grow (up)'). These verbs also usually have corresponding Class 1 forms. Where a verb in this sub-class is derived from a Class 1 counterpart, it is almost invariably passive in meaning with respect to the Class 1 verb, e.g., დაწერა *da-ts'er-a* ('he wrote it' – C1) → დაიწერა *da-i-ts'er-a* ('it was written' – C2).

Type (c)

Abbreviated C2(c), and known as the ‘suffixal intransitives’, verbs in this sub-class use the suffix -დ *-d* to derive verbs from nouns or adjectives (such verbs are known as ‘denominatives’). Many of these denote changes of state, e.g., გაძვირდება *ga-dzvir-d-eb-a* ('it will become expensive') from the adjective ძვირი *dzviri* ('expensive'). There are some exceptional transitive verbs in Class 2, e.g., უყვება *u-q'v-eb-a* ('he tells it to him').

The following illustrations contrast Class 1 and Class 2 verbs derived from the same roots.

TRANSITIVE		INTRANSITIVE	
Class 1	მეზობელი აშრობს სარეცხს. <i>mezobel-i a-shr-ob-s sa+retskh-s.</i> neighbour (nom sg) X-dries-Y (pres 3s 3s) washing (dat sg) The neighbour is drying the washing.	Class 2(a)	სარეცხი შრება. <i>sa+retskh-i shr-eb-a.</i> washing X-is-drying (pres 3s) The washing is drying.
	დედა ზრდის ბავშვს. <i>deda zrd-i-s bavshv-s.</i> mother (nom sg) X-rears-Y (pres 3s 3s) child (dat sg) The mother is raising the child.	Class 2(b)	ბავშვი იზრდება. <i>bavshv-i i-zrd-eb-a.</i> child (nom sg) X-grows (pres 3s) The child is growing up.
	მუშა აკეთებს ბევრს. <i>musha a-k'et-eb-s bevr-s.</i> worker (nom sg) X-does-Y (pres 3s 3s) much (dat sg) The worker is doing a lot.	Class 2(c)	ბევრი კეთდება. <i>bevr-i k'et-d-eb-a.</i> much (nom sg) X-is-done (pres 3s) Much is being done.

Class 3 Verbs

Abbreviated C3, and known as the ‘medial verbs’, this is a class of largely intransitive verbs that use the prefix ი- *i-* to form the future screeve (usually in combination with the suffix -ებ *-eb*), e.g. ტირის *t'ir-i-s* ('he cries') / იტირებს *i-t'ir-eb-*

s ('he will cry'), სტვენს **st'ven-s** ('he whistles') / ისტვენს **i-st'ven-s** ('he will whistle'). These verbs generally describe dynamic situations that are viewed as lasting for a certain period of time. In some instances, a direct object is optional, e.g., ბავშვი (ბურთს) თამაშობს **bavšv-i (burt-s) tamaš-ob-s** ('the child plays (ball)'). There are a number of verbs (whose stems mostly end in -ულობ **-ulob** in the present subseries) that are transitive in meaning while having the formal characteristics of C3 verbs, to which category they are assigned, e.g. ყიდულობს **q'īd-ulob-s** ('he buys it') / იყიდის **i-q'īd-i-s** ('he will buy it').

There are three main verb types in this class:

Basic Verbs

An example of such a verb is ყვირის **q'vir-i-s** ('he yells') / იყვირებს **i-q'vir-eb-s** ('he will yell').

Denominatives

These are derived from nouns or adjectives, such as ბატონობს **bat'on-ob-s** ('he rules') / იბატონებს **i-bat'on-eb-s** ('he will rule'), from ბატონი **bat'on-i** ('lord, master'),

Expressives

These verbs depict noise, light or certain types of motion. Examples of this type include კრიალებს **k'rial-eb-s** ('it gleams, shines') / იკრიალებს **i-k'rial-eb-s** ('it will gleam, shine) and კანკალებს **k'ank'al-eb-s** ('he trembles') / იკანკალებს **i-k'ank'al-eb-s** ('he will tremble').

Most C3 verbs in the future subseries and in the aorist series behave as C1 transitives, and have the same case marking scheme, as in the following rewriting in the aorist of an earlier illustration:

ბავშვმა ბურთი ითამაშა.
bavšv-ma burt-i i-tamaš-a
child (nar sg) ball (nom sg) X-plays-Y (aor 3s 3s)
The child played ball.

Some C3 verbs, however, behave as C2 passives (including case marking). The intransitive C3 verb მღერის **mġer-i-s** ('he sings') can have both types of future/aorist. There is an imperfective future იმღერებს **i-mġer-eb-s** ('he will sing') that behaves like a C1 transitive verb, as in the following illustration:

ქალმა იმღერა
kal-ma i-mġer-a
woman (nar sg) X-sings (aor 3s)
The woman sang.

This intransitive C3 verb also has a perfective (inceptive) future ამღერდება **a-mġer-d-eb-a** ('he will begin to sing') that behaves like a C2(c) intransitive verb, as in the following illustration:

ქალი ამღერდა
kal-i a-mġer-d-a
woman (nom sg) X-begins-to-sing (aor 3s)
The woman began to sing.

Class 4 Verbs

Abbreviated C4, and known as the 'inversion verbs', these mark the subject with the dative case and the direct object with the nominative, a pattern known as 'inversion', as in this example.

გოგოს ძალი ჰყავს
gogo-s dzagl-i h-q'av-s
girl (dat sg) dog (nom sg) X-has-Y (pres 3s 3s)
The girl has a dog.

Most Class 4 verbs denote feelings, emotions, sensations, and states of being that endure for periods of time.

The Class 4 verbs include desideratives (that is, verbs expressing a desire to do something), which are formed using the circumfix *ე- — -ებ* *e- — -eb*, e.g., *ეცეკვება e-tsek'v-eb-a* ('he feels like dancing' ← *ცეკვავს tsek'v-av-s* 'he dances').

A few Class 4 verbs mark the direct object with the genitive, as in this example.

გოგოს ძალის ეშინია.
gogo-s dzaghl-is e-shin-i-a.
girl (dat sg) dog (gen sg) X-fears-Y (pres 3s 3s)
The girl is afraid of the dog.

Stative verbs

The Class 1 transitive verb *ანთებს a-nt-eb-s* ('he lights it') can be converted into a Class 2(b) intransitive *ინთება i-nt-eb-a*, marked by the pre-radical vowel *ი-* *i-*. This dynamic intransitive may be translated as 'it is being lit', and describes a process that occupies some time. It is also possible to derive another intransitive verb, *ანთია a-nt-i-a*, which describes a state at a particular point in time, rather than a process. In this example, the time reference is the present, and the verb may be translated as 'it is lit'. These static intransitives are called 'stative verbs' or, sometimes, 'passives of state', and are usually marked by the suffix *-ი* *-i* (occasionally *-ავ* *-av*; cf. C1/3 perfect screeve formation). Their imperfective aspect means that they are almost invariably not accompanied by a preverb. Stative verbs can often also make an indirect reference, signalled by the *უ-/u-* series marker in *უნთია u-nt-i-a* 'he has it lit', as in the following example.

მეზობელს ცეცხლი უნთია სახლში.
mezobel-s tsetskhl-i u-nt-i-a sakhl-shi.
neighbour (dat sg) fire (nom sg) Y-has-X-lit (stat pres 3s 3s) house (dat sg) – in
Our neighbour has a fire burning at home.

A key parameter in determining the conjugation pattern of a stative verb is its valency: whether it is monovalent (or 'absolute', that is, incorporating only a subject) or whether it is bivalent (or 'relative', that is, also making an indirect reference). Some monovalent statives, however, include a redundant *ჰ-/h-* (*ს-/s-*) or *ა-/a-* series marker (as in *ანთია a-nt-i-a* above) that does not, in fact, point to any indirect object. Note that, in general, the use of the third person *ჰ-/h-* series marker with stative verbs is declining in the current language.

In a manner similar to the dative construction, a bivalent stative verb can be viewed as having a 'logical' subject marked by the indirect object marker (and the dative case if there is a separate pronoun or noun phrase) that differs from the 'grammatical' subject (marked by the nominative). Taking the illustration above, the translation 'our neighbour has a fire burning at home' is preferable to 'a fire is burning in our neighbour's home'.

Conjugation paradigms

The following table details the conjugation paradigms for three sample screeves based on the verbal root *-კიდ-* *-k'id-* ('hang') with explicit third person *ჰ-/h-* series markers.

sub / IO	monovalent (absolute)		bivalent (relative) ¹	
	present (S1)			
1s	ვედივარ	<i>v-k'id-i-v+ar</i>	მკიდა ²	<i>m-k'id-i-a²</i>
2s	ჰკიდხარ	<i>h-k'id-i-kh+ar</i>	გკიდა	<i>g-k'id-i-a</i>
3s	ჰკიდა	<i>h-k'id-i-a</i>	ჰკიდა	<i>h-k'id-i-a</i>
1p	ვედივართ	<i>v-k'id-i-v+ar-t</i>	გვეკიდა	<i>gv-k'id-i-a</i>
2p	ჰკიდხართ	<i>h-k'id-i-kh+ar-t</i>	გკიდათ	<i>g-k'id-i-a-t</i>
3p	ჰკიდან	<i>h-k'id-i-an</i>	ჰკიდათ	<i>h-k'id-i-a-t</i>
aorist (S2)				
1s	ვეკიდე	<i>v-e-k'id-e</i>	მეკიდა	<i>m-e-k'id-a</i>
2s	ეკიდე	<i>e-k'id-e</i>	გეკიდა	<i>g-e-k'id-a</i>
3s ³	ეკიდა	<i>e-k'id-a</i>	ეკიდა	<i>e-k'id-a</i>
1p	ვეკიდეთ	<i>v-e-k'id-e-t</i>	გვეკიდა	<i>gv-e-k'id-a</i>
2p	ეკიდეთ	<i>e-k'id-e-t</i>	გეკიდათ	<i>g-e-k'id-a-t</i>
3p	ეკიდან	<i>e-k'id-i-an</i>	ეკიდათ	<i>e-k'id-a-t</i>
perfect (S3)				
1s	ვეკიდებულვარ	<i>v-k'id-eb-ul-v+ar</i>	ვეკიდებივარ	<i>v-k'id-eb-i-v+ar</i>
2s	ეკიდებულხარ	<i>k'id-eb-ul-kh+ar</i>	ჰეკიდებიხარ	<i>h-k'id-eb-i-kh+ar</i>
3s	ეკიდებულა	<i>k'id-eb-ul-a</i>	ჰეკიდებია	<i>h-k'id-eb-i-a</i>
1p	ვეკიდებულვართ	<i>v-k'id-eb-ul-v+ar-t</i>	ვეკიდებივართ	<i>v-k'id-eb-i-v+ar-t</i>
2p	ეკიდებულხართ	<i>k'id-eb-ul-kh+ar-t</i>	ჰეკიდებიხართ	<i>h-k'id-eb-i-kh+ar-t</i>
3p	ეკიდებულან	<i>k'id-eb-ul-an</i>	ჰეკიდებიან	<i>h-k'id-eb-i-an</i>

1. All illustrations are with a 3s grammatical subject, but others are possible, as in these 2s examples: (pres) მკიდხარ *m-k'id-i-kh+ar*, (aor) მეკიდე *m-e-k'id-e*, (perf) მკიდებხარ *m-k'id-eb-i-kh+ar*.
2. Bivalent verbs in the present screeve may distinguish between ჰ-/h-, უ-/u- or ა-/a- series indirect objects (cf. [ს]წერია *[s]-ts'er-i-a*, უწერია *u-ts'er-i-a* and აწერია *a-ts'er-i-a*, based on the verbal root -წერ- *-ts'er-* 'write'), a distinction that is not marked in the other screeves.
3. These stative 3s aorist forms are identical to the relative C2 3s preverbless aorist ეკიდა *e-k'id-a*.

Only the present screeve exists in the present subseries. Forms of the verb ყოფნა *q'opn-a* ('be') are used to mark the subjects of monovalent statives in the present and Series 3 screeves (the latter are based on the past participle), and the grammatical subjects of bivalent statives in the present and perfect screeves. The pre-radical vowel ე- *e-* is used in the formation of the future and aorist screeves (cf. the formation of relative C2 verbs).

The tendency for the subjects of monovalent statives and the grammatical subjects of bivalents to be third person inanimates serves to simplify the conjugation patterns of most stative verbs.

Examples

The following examples using the present screeve illustrate the distinction between three stative verbs based on the root -კიდ- *-k'id-* ('hang'): one is monovalent, and there are two bivalents (with differing indirect object markers).

Monovalent (redundant ჰ-/h-series indirect object markers):

ჰაერზე ვკიდვარ.
haer-ze v-k'id-i-v+ar
 air (dat sg) – on X-is-hanging (stat pres 1s)
 I am hanging in mid-air.

Bivalent (ჰ-/h-series indirect object markers):

ფოტოაპარატი კისერზე მკიდია.

pot'o+ap'arat'-i k'iser-ze m-k'id-i-a.

camera (nom sg) neck (dat sg) – on X-is-hanging-on-Y's-person (stat pres 3s 1s)

I have a camera hanging around my neck.

Bivalent (ჲ-/u-series indirect object markers):

მისი სურათი კედელზე მიკიდია სახლში.

mis-i surat-i k'edel-ze m-i-k'id-i-a sakl-shi.

his picture (nom sg) wall (dat sg) – on Y-has-X-hanging-somewhere (stat pres 1s 3s) house (dat sg) – in

I have his picture hanging on my wall at home.

The distinction between the two bivalent verbs is lost in screeves other than the present, as is illustrated by rewriting the last two examples in the aorist.

ფოტოაპარატი კისერზე მეკიდა.

pot'o+ap'arat'-i k'iser-ze m-e-k'id-a.

camera (nom sg) neck (dat sg) – on X-is-hanging-on-Y's-person (stat aor 3s 1s)

I had a camera hanging around my neck.

მისი სურათი კედელზე მეკიდა სახლში.

mis-i surat-i k'edel-ze m-e-k'id-a sakl-shi.

his picture (nom sg) wall (dat sg) – on Y-has-X-hanging-somewhere (stat aor 1s 3s) house (dat sg) – in

I had his picture hanging on my wall at home.

In some cases, the forms of the monovalent and bivalent statives are congruent, as in the following examples:

ეზოში ვირი აბია.

ezo-shi vir-i a-b-i-a.

yard (dat sg) – in donkey (nom sg) X-is-tied-up (stat pres 3s)

The donkey is tethered in the yard.

ხეს ბოლო კომში აბია.

khe-s bolo k'omsh-i a-b-i-a.

tree (dat sg) last quince (nom sg) X-is-attached-to-Y (stat pres 3s 3s)

The tree has its last quince growing.

The *s-/a-* marker in the first of these examples is redundant while, in the latter, it points to the indirect object ხე *khe* ('tree').

Some stative verbs

The total number of stative verbs is relatively limited in Georgian. The following table lists some of these, classifying them by root, by valency, and by indirect object marker series. Not all forms exist for all verbs, nor do all forms listed occur with comparable frequencies.

root	present			future ¹ 3s sub (+ 3s IO)	
	monovalent statives	bivalent statives ²			
		ჰ-/h-series	ჲ-/u-series		s-/a-series
-ბ- -b-	აბია <i>a-b-i-a</i> X-is-tied-up		უბია <i>u-b-i-a</i> Y's-X-is-tied-up	აბია <i>a-b-i-a</i> X-is-attached- to-Y	ებმება <i>e-bm-eb-a</i>
-გდ- -gd-	[*ჰ-]გდია <i>[*h-]gd-i-a</i> X-lies-thrown- down		უგდია <i>u-gd-i-a</i> Y-has-X-lying- thrown-down	აგდია <i>a-gd-i-a</i> X-lies-thrown- down-on-Y	ეგდება <i>e-gd-eb-a</i>

root	present				future ¹ 3s sub (+ 3s IO)
	monovalent statives	bivalent statives ²			
		ჰ-/h-series	უ-/u-series	ა-/a-series	
-გონ- -gon-		ჰგონია <i>h-gon-i-a</i> X-seems-to- Y			ეგონება <i>e-gon-eb-a</i>
-დევ- -dev-	დევს <i>dev-s</i> X-lies	[*ს]დევს <i>[*s-]dev-s</i> X-lies-on-Y	უდევს <i>u-dev-s</i> Y-has-X-lying	ადევს <i>a-dev-s</i> X-lies-on-Y	ედება ³ <i>e-d-eb-a</i>
-თეს- -tes-	[*ს]თესია <i>[*s-]tes-i-a</i> X-is-sown		უთესია <i>u-tes-i-a</i> Y-has-X-sown		ეთესება <i>e-tes-eb-a</i>
-კავ- -k'av-			უკავია <i>u-k'av-i-a</i> Y-holds-X		ეკავება <i>e-k'av-eb-a</i>
-კეთ- -k'et-			უკეთია <i>u-k'et-i-a</i> Y-has-X(eg, glasses)-on		ეკეთება <i>e-k'et-eb-a</i>
-კერ- -k'er-			უკერია <i>u-k'er-i-a</i> Y-has-X-sewn	აკერია <i>a-k'er-i-a</i> X-is-sewn-on- Y	ეკერება <i>e-k'er-eb-a</i>
-კიდ- -k'id-	[ჰ]კიდია <i>[h-]k'id-i-a</i> X-is-hanging	[ჰ]კიდია <i>[h-]k'id-i-a</i> X-hangs- from-Y	უკიდია <i>u-k'id-i-a</i> Y-has-X-hanging		ეკიდება <i>e-k'id-eb-a</i>
-კრ- -k'r-				აკრავს <i>a-k'r-av-s</i> X-is-attached- to-Y	ეკრება <i>e-kv'r-eb-a</i>
-ლაგ- -lag-	ალაგია <i>a-lag-i-a</i> X-are-arranged		ულაგია <i>u-lag-i-a</i> Y-has-X- arranged		ელაგება <i>e-lag-eb-a</i>
-მარხ- -markh-	[*ჰ]მარხია <i>[*h-]markh-i-a</i> X-is-buried		უმარხია <i>u-markh-i-a</i> Y-has-X-buried		ემარხება <i>e-markh-eb- a</i>
-ნთ- -nt-	ანთია <i>a-nt-i-a</i> X-is-lit		უნთია <i>u-nt-i-a</i> Y-has-X-lighting		ენტება <i>e-nt-eb-a</i>
-რჩ- -rch-			ურჩევნია ⁴ <i>u-rchevn-i-a</i> Y-prefers-X(-to- Z _{DAT})		ერჩივნება ⁴ <i>e-rchivn-eb- a</i>
-სხ- -skh-	ასხია <i>a-skh-i-a</i> X-lies-poured		უსხია <i>u-skh-i-a</i> Y-has-X-lying- poured		ესხმება <i>e-skhm-eb-a</i>
-ფარ- -par-				აფარია <i>a-par-i-a</i> Y-is-covered- by-X	ეფარება <i>e-par-eb-a</i>
-ფენ- -pen-	ფენია <i>pen-i-a</i> X-is-spread- over	[ჰ]ფენია <i>[h-]pen-i-a</i> X-is-spread- over-Y	უფენია <i>u-pen-i-a</i> Y-has-X-spread- over	აფენია <i>a-pen-i-a</i> X-is-spread- over-Y	ეფინება <i>e-pin-eb-a</i>
-ქვ- -kv-		ჰქვია <i>h-kv-i-a</i> Y-is-called-X			ერქმევა <i>e-rkmev-a</i>
-ყრ- -q'r-	[*ჰ]ყრია <i>[*h-]q'r-i-a</i>		უყრია <i>u-q'r-i-a</i>	აყრია <i>a-q'r-i-a</i>	ეყრება <i>e-q'r-eb-a</i>

root	present				future ¹ 3s sub (+ 3s IO)
	monovalent statives	bivalent statives ²			
		ჰ-/h-series	ჟ-/u-series	ა-/a-series	
	X-lie-thrown-down		Y-has-X-lying-thrown-down	X-lie-thrown-down-on-Y	
-ცვ- -tsv-			უცვია ⁵ <i>u-tsv-i-a</i> Y's-X _{DAT} -is-wearing-Z	აცვია <i>a-tsv-i-a</i> Y-is-wearing-X	ეცმევა <i>e-tsmev-a</i>
-წერ- -ts'er-	[ს]წერია <i>[s]-ts'er-i-a</i> X-is-written		უწერია <i>u-ts'er-i-a</i> Y-has-X-written	აწერია <i>a-ts'er-i-a</i> X-is-written-on-Y	ეწერება <i>e-ts'er-eb-a</i>
-ჭირ- -ch'ir-			უჭირავს <i>u-ch'ir-av-s</i> Y-holds-X		ეჭირება <i>e-ch'ir-eb-a</i>
-ხატ- -khat'-	ხატია <i>khat'-i-a</i> X-is-painted		უხატია <i>u-khat'-i-a</i> Y-has-X-painted	ახატია <i>a-khat'-i-a</i> X-is-painted-on-Y	ეხატება <i>e-khat'-eb-a</i>
-ხურ- -khur-		ხურავს <i>khur-av-s</i> Y-is-covered-by-X		ახურავს <i>a-khur-av-s</i> Y-is-covered-by-X	ეხურება <i>e-khur-eb-a</i>

1. Where both exist, the monovalent 3s future form is almost invariably identical to that of its bivalent equivalent with 3s grammatical subject and 3s indirect object.
2. 'Y' is referenced by the indirect object markers.
3. The monovalent 3s future is იდება *i-d-eb-a*; cf. მინდორში თოვლი იდო *mindor-shi tovl-i i-d-o* ('snow lay in the field') <დევს *dev-s*, ხეებს თოვლი ედო *khe-eb-s tovl-i e-d-o* ('snow lay on the trees') <ადევს *a-dev-s*.
4. This verb can also be trivalent, referencing two indirect objects.
5. This is a trivalent stative.

Verb Structure

Georgian verbs consist of an obligatory root, and a number of affixes (or, indeed, no affix at all as in the imperative წერ *ts'er* 'write it'). The overall structure can be visualized as linear sequence of positions, or 'slots', before and after the root position, which is referred to as slot 0. According to one analysis, there are a total of 24 slots in addition to the root. In practice, however, no verb will have all possible slots occupied. The simplified model used here has a total of eleven slots (three before the root, and seven following it), and is illustrated here.

-3	-2	-1	0	+1	
preverb(s)	pronominal marker(s)	pre-radical vowel	ROOT	passive infix	
		participle prefix			
+2	+3	+4	+5	+6	+7
present/future stem formant	causative marker(s)	stem augment	screeve marker	pronominal marker	plural marker
	participle suffix	(ო)ნ- <i>in</i> -infix		auxiliary verb	

Verb structure

Verb roots can range from the single consonant -ქ- *-k-* ('praise') to the compound -წინასწარმეტყველ- -*ts'inasts'armet'q'vel-* ('foretell'), but the most common form is Consonant(s)-Vowel-Consonant(s), e.g., -კეთ- *-k'et-* ('do'), -მსხვერფლ- *-mskhverpl-* ('sacrifice').

Pronominal Markers

Subject markers

In addition to marking the subject, the Georgian verb can also include markers for direct and indirect objects. These are known as pronominal markers (abbreviated PM). These pronominal markers can occupy two slots: one before the root and the other after it. The descriptions of the various screeves include some details of how the pronominal markers are used to mark the subject, direct and indirect objects. Here, some general principles of the system are examined, with particular emphasis on the rules governing the combination of these affixes.

The subjects of C1 and C3 verbs in the present (S1) and aorist (S2) series, and those of C2 verbs in all series, are marked in the verb complex by a set of affixes known as the subject markers; these are given in the following table.

SUBJECT	PVB	PM	PV	ROOT	PI	PSF	SM	PM	Plur.
1s		3- v-							
2s		∅- (ბ-) ∅- (kh-)							
3s								-S	
1p	PVB	3- v-	PV	ROOT	PI	PSF	SM		-თ -t
2p		∅- (ბ-) ∅- (kh-)							-თ -t
3p								-P	

Subject markers

'S' denotes the third person singular pronominal marker, which varies with the screeve and verb type, while the corresponding third person plural marker is denoted by 'P'. (See the descriptions of the various screeves for details of the corresponding third person subject markers.)

The second person subject marker is usually ∅- (that is, there is no written affix). A few verbs, however, retain an older form, ბ- *kh-*, e.g., ხარ *kh-ar* ('you are'), მიხვალთ *mi-kh-val-t* ('you will go').

Direct object markers

In the verbs under consideration, direct objects are marked as in the following table.

DIRECT OBJECT	PVB	PM	PV	ROOT	PI	PSF	SM	PM	Plur.
1s		ð- m-							
2s		ð- g-							
3s	PVB	Ø-	PV	ROOT	PI	PSF	SM	PM	
1p		ðð- gv-							
2p		ð- g-							-o -t
3p		Ø-							

Direct object markers

Indirect object markers

The set of indirect object markers for these verbs is the same as for direct objects, except for the third person.

INDIRECT OBJECT	PVB	PM	PV	ROOT	PI	PSF	SM	PM	Plur.
1s		ð- m-							
2s		ð- g-							
3s	PVB	3- (b-, Ø-) h- (s-, Ø-)	PV	ROOT	PI	PSF	SM	PM	
1p		ðð- gv-							
2p		ð- g-							-o -t
3p		3- (b-, Ø-) h- (s-, Ø-)							

Indirect object markers

The form of the third person marker depends on the following letter. The norm is that 3- *h-* occurs before *ð g, ʒ k', ʒ p', ʒ k,* and *y q'*; *b- s-* before *o d, o t, o t', ʒ ch, ʒ ts, ʒ dz, ʒ ts', ʒ ch'* and *ʒ j*; and *Ø-* in other contexts. The use of *b- s-* and *3- h-* is sometimes inconsistent, and is declining in the modern language.

Note that, although the norm is that there is no difference between the singular and plural forms of the indirect object markers in the third person, the plural marker *-o -t* is occasionally encountered. (More generally, the plurality of third person plural indirect objects is marked in the perfect series of Class 1 and 3 verbs, and in Class 4 and stative verbs.)

Pronominal marker combinations

The following table illustrates the basic rules for the combination of subject and object markers for the verbs in question.

SUBJECT	OBJECT							
	1s	2s	3s		1p	2p	3p	
			d.o.	id.o.			d.o.	id.o.
1s	X	δ - ¹ g - ¹	\exists - v -	\exists - ² v - ²	X	δ - ¹ g - ¹	\exists - v -	\exists - ² v - ²
2s	δ - m -	X	\emptyset - (b-) \emptyset - (kh-)	\exists - (s-, \emptyset -) h - (s-, \emptyset -)	$\delta\exists$ - gv -	X	\emptyset - (b-) \emptyset - (kh-)	\exists - (s-, \emptyset -) h - (s-, \emptyset -)
3s	δ - -S m - - S	δ - -S g - -S	- -S	\exists - (s-, \emptyset -) - S h - (s-, \emptyset -) - S	$\delta\exists$ - - S gv - - S	δ - - S σ^3 g - - S t^3	- -S	\exists - (s-, \emptyset -) - S h - (s-, \emptyset -) - S
1p	X	δ - - σ^1 g - - t^1	\exists - - σ v - - t	\exists - - σ^2 v - - t^2	X	δ - - $\sigma^{1,4}$ g - - $t^{1,4}$	\exists - - σ v - - t	\exists - - σ^2 v - - t^2
2p	δ - - σ m - - t	X	\emptyset - (b-) - σ \emptyset - (kh-) - t	\exists - (s-, \emptyset -) - σ h - (s-, \emptyset -) - t	$\delta\exists$ - - σ gv - - t	X	\emptyset - (b-) - σ \emptyset - (kh-) - t	\exists - (s-, \emptyset -) - σ h - (s-, \emptyset -) - t
3p	δ - -P m - -P	δ - -P g - -P	- -P	\exists - (s-, \emptyset -) - P h - (s-, \emptyset -) - P	$\delta\exists$ - - P gv - - P	δ - - P σ^5 g - -P t^5	- -P	\exists - (s-, \emptyset -) - P h - (s-, \emptyset -) - P

Pronominal marker combinations

Notes

1. The combination * $\exists\delta$ - * vg - is replaced by δ - g -.
2. The use of the indirect object markers here (* \exists - \exists - (- σ) * v - h - (- t), * \exists - s - (- σ) * v - s - (- t)) is now dated.
3. The combination *- $s\sigma$ *- st is replaced by - σ - t , e.g., $g\text{-mal-av-t}$ 'he hides you (Pl.)'.
4. The combination *- $\sigma\sigma$ *- tt is replaced by - σ - t , e.g., $g\text{-mal-av-t}$ 'we hide you (Pl.)'.
5. The plural marker σ - t is dropped after a consonant, e.g., $g\text{-mal-av-en}$ 'they hide you (Pl.)'.

There can be a certain level of ambiguity in the pronominal marker system, and this can only be resolved with reference to the rest of the sentence or from the general context. For example, $g\text{-mal-av-t}$ may be translated as 'I hide you (Pl.)', 'he hides you (Pl.)', 'we hide you', or 'we hide you (Pl.)'.

In the case of bipersonal transitive verbs, both objects can be incorporated into the verb complex only if one (usually an animate indirect object) is in the third person.

The entries marked 'X' in the table above are expressed in Georgian using a combination of the possessive adjective and the noun $tavi$ 'self' (literally 'head'), e.g.,

$v\text{-khed-av chven tav(-eb)-s sark'e-shi}$
 X-sees-Y (1s 3s) our (acc) head(s) (acc) mirror-in
 I see our head(s) in the mirror.
 'I see us in the mirror.'

The following are examples of the use of the pronominal markers, which are underlined in the gloss.

$v\text{-khed-av}$
 X-sees-Y (pres 1s 3s)
 I see him.

ხდევს.

khed-av-s.

X-sees-Y (pres 3s 3s)

He sees him.

გვხედავენ.

gv-khed-av-en.

X-sees-Y (pres 3p 1p)

They see us.

A detailed general treatment of when third person indirect objects and Class 4 subjects are explicitly marked in the plural may be found under 'Indirect Object Marking'.

Preverbs

Class 1-3 present and aorist series verbs are based on one of two stems: the 'present' and the 'future / aorist'.

SERIES	STEM
present	ROOT + PSF
future	PVB + ROOT
aorist	

Class 1-3 stems

The primary function of the preverb (abbreviated PVB) is to indicate direction when used with verbs of motion. It has the secondary functions of indicating that the action is viewed as completed (the 'perfective aspect'), and of changing the basic meaning of a verb stem. The preverb has also some acquired additional functions which are not considered here.

The more common preverbs with their directional meanings are listed in this table. (The variants in parentheses are older forms.)

'there' (away from speaker)			'here' (towards speaker)		
ა(ღ)-	<i>a(gh)-</i>	'up, upwards'	ა(ღ)მო-	<i>a(gh)+mo-</i>	'up, upwards'
გა(ნ)-	<i>ga(n)-</i>	'out'	გამო-	<i>ga+mo-</i>	'out'
გა(რ)და-	<i>ga(r)da-</i>	'over, across'	გა(რ)დმო-	<i>ga(r)d+mo-</i>	'over, across'
და-	<i>da-</i>	'to and fro, about, around'			
მი-	<i>mi-</i>	'there'	მო-	<i>mo-</i>	'here'
ში-	<i>she-</i>	'in'	შიმო-	<i>she+mo-</i>	'in'
ჩა-	<i>cha-</i>	'down, downwards'	ჩამო-	<i>cha+mo-</i>	'down, downwards'
წა(რ)-	<i>ts'a(r)-</i>	'away, off'	წა(რ)მო-	<i>ts'a(r)+mo-</i>	'away, off'

Directional preverbs

The following verbs illustrate the use of directional preverbs.

მიდის.

mi-di-s.

He goes.

გადმოწურა.

gad-mo-ts'ur-a.

He swam across to here.

There is an aspectual difference between the corresponding screeves of the present and future subseries, that is, a contrast between uncompleted action ('imperfective') and completed action ('perfective'). This is marked by a preverb in the case of Class 1 and Class 2 verbs. This aspectual distinction is clearer if there are no additional time or mood contrasts, as in the aorist screeve. There is an imperfective aorist, which is seldom used, in addition to the usual perfective aorist. The following Georgian sentence illustrates this contrast.

გუშინ ორი საათი ვწერე ეს სტატია, მაგრამ ვერ დავწერე ბოლომდე.
gushin ori saati v-ts'er-e es st'at'ia, magram ver da-v-ts'er-e bolo-mde.

yesterday two hour (nom sg) X-writes-Y (aor 1s 3s) this (nom sg) article (nom sg), but cannot X-writes-Y (aor 1s 3s) end (adv sg) - until

For two hours yesterday I wrote this article, but I could not complete it.

Here, the perfective verb ვწერე *v-ts'er-e* 'I wrote it (but did not complete writing it)' contrasts with დავწერე *da-v-ts'er-e* 'I wrote it (and completed writing it)'.

Preverbs can also qualify the basic meaning of a verb root. On occasions, the resulting verbs may have apparently totally unrelated meanings, as in the following examples using the verb root -რთ- *-rt-*.

ჩართავს	<i>cha-rt-av-s</i>	'He will switch it on.'
გამორთავს	<i>ga+mo-rt-av-s</i>	'He will switch it off.'
მორთავს	<i>mo-rt-av-s</i>	'He will decorate it.'
შერთავს	<i>she-rt-av-s</i>	'He will marry him to her.' or 'He will mix it with it.'

In such cases, the verb form in the present subseries is not in itself sufficient to distinguish between the various meanings, and contextual information must be used instead.

Pre-Radical Vowels

The pre-radical vowels, abbreviated PV and also known as version vowels, are ა- *a-*, ე- *e-*, ი- *i-*, and უ- *u-*, and occur immediately before the verb root or stem. They have a number of functions, the more common of which are summarized below. In some cases, however, no apparent function can be assigned to the pre-radical vowel. Note that the pre-radical vowel ა- *a-* should not be confused with the preverb of the same form.

ა- *a-*

- forms Class 1 denominatives, e.g., აფარობს *a-parto-eb-s* ('he widens it' ← ფართო *parto* 'wide')
- forms causatives, e.g., აწერინებს *a-ts'er-in-eb-s* ('he causes him to write it' ← წერს *ts'er-s* 'he writes it')
- indicates that the action takes place on something (the 'superessive version'), e.g., ახატავს *a-khat'-av-s* ('he paints it on it' ← ხატავს *khat'-av-s* 'he paints it')

ე- *e-*

- refers to indirect objects, mostly with Class 2 verbs, e.g., ემალება *e-mal-eb-a* ('he hides himself from him' ← იმალება *i-mal-eb-a* 'he hides himself')
- refers to pluperfect screeve subjects, e.g., გაგცელო *ga-gv-e-gh-o* ('we opened it')

ი- *i-*

- indicates first and second person indirect objects when the action takes place for someone's benefit (the 'benefactive version'), e.g., გიშენებთ *g-i-shen-eb-t* ('we build it for you' ← ვაშენებთ *v-a-shen-eb-t* 'we build it'),
- marks inverted subjects in the first and second persons, e.g., გაგიგია *ga-g-i-g-i-a* ('you have heard it')
- indicates reflexivity, e.g., იბანს *i-ban-s* ('he washes himself' ← ბანს *ban-s* 'he washes him')
- forms the future / aorist stem of Class 3 verbs, e.g., ითამაშებს *i-tamash-eb-s* ('he will play' ← თამაშობს *tamash-ob-s* 'he plays'), იტირებს *i-t'ir-eb-s* 'he will cry' ← ტირის *t'ir-i-s* 'he cries')

უ- *u-*

- indicates an indirect object in the third person, e.g., გავუგზავნეთ *ga-v-u-gzavn-e-t* ('we sent it to him' ← გავგზავნეთ *ga-v-gzavn-e-t* 'we sent it')
- marks an inverted subject in the third person, e.g., დაულევია *da-u-lev-i-a* ('he drank it')

Screeve Markers

The screeve marker (SM), which is either a vowel (except *-უ -u*) or *-∅*, comes before the second pronominal marker slot. It is seldom sufficient in itself to identify the screeve unambiguously. The screeve marker is usually omitted before the third person pronominal marker.

Stem Augments

The verb stem is sometimes extended by the addition of the suffix *-(ო)დ -(o)d*, known as the stem augment (abbreviated SA). This stem augment is characteristic of the imperfect, conditional, present subjunctive and future subjunctive screeves, as in the following illustrations.

		წერდი ts'er-d-i 'you used to write it'
		დაწერდი da-ts'er-d-i 'you would write it'
წერ ts'er 'you write it'	→	წერდე ts'er-d-e '(if) you were writing it'
		დაწერდე da-ts'er-d-e '(if) you were to write it'

Passive Infixes

The passive infixes (abbreviated PI) *-დ- -d-* and *-ებ- -eb-* are used in the formation of Class 2 screeves, as in the following examples.

CLASS 1		CLASS 2
აშრობს a-shr-ob-s 'he dries it'	→	შრება shr-eb-a 'it dries'
ზრდის zrd-i-s 'he rears him'	→	იზრდება i-zrd-eb-a 'he is growing up'
აკეთებს a-k'et-eb-s 'he does it'	→	კეთდება k'et-d-eb-a 'it is done'

Present/Future Stem Formants

Class 1-3 present and aorist series verbs are based on one of two stems: the 'present' and the 'future / aorist'.

SERIES	STEM
present	ROOT + PSF
future	PVB + ROOT
aorist	

Class 1-3 stems

The present stem consists of the verb root followed by a suffix called the present/future stem formant (abbreviated PSF, and also known as the thematic suffix). This forms the stem used in the screeves of the present subseries, e.g. *-ხატავ- -khat'-av-* ('paint'), where *-khat'* is the root and *-av-* is the present/future stem formant.

The following present/future stem formants are found in Georgian.

-ავ <i>-av</i>	ხატავ	<i>khat'-av</i>	'you paint it'
-ამ <i>-am</i>	ჭამ	<i>ch'-am</i>	'you eat it'
-ან <i>-an</i>	დგანან	<i>dg-an-an</i>	'they are standing'
-ევ <i>-ev</i>	ანგრევ	<i>a-ngr-ev</i>	'you destroy it'
-ებ <i>-eb</i>	დებ	<i>d-eb</i>	'you put it'
-ემ <i>-em</i>	მისცემ	<i>mi-s-ts-em</i>	'you will give him it'
-ი <i>-i</i>	ჭრი	<i>ch'-i</i>	'you cut it'
-ობ <i>-ob</i>	ცხოვრობ	<i>tskhovr-ob</i>	'you live'
-ოვ <i>-op</i>	ყოვ	<i>q'-op</i>	'you split it'
-∅	წერ	<i>ts'er</i>	'you write it'

Present/future stem formants

The present/future stem formant -ებ *-eb* is usual with Class 1 denominatives, Class 2(c) verbs, and in the Class 3 future subseries, while -ობ *-ob* often occurs with Class 3 verbs.

Of the above present/future stem formants, the following are quite rare: -ამ *-am*, -ან *-an*, -ემ *-em*, and -ოვ *-op*.

Case Marking

A characteristic feature of Georgian is that apparent subjects and objects are not always marked consistently. Indeed, the subject of a clause may be marked with the nominative, narrative, or dative case. There are three patterns of case marking for the subject and direct object, the actual pattern for any verb being determined by the verb class and series, as summarized in this table.

VERB CLASS	SERIES	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
1,3	Present	Nominative	Dative	Dative
	Aorist	Narrative	Nominative	Dative
	Perfect	Dative	Nominative	-თვის - <i>tvis</i>
2	all	Nominative	(Dative)	Dative
4	all	Dative	Nominative	—

Case marking

Class 1 and Class 3 verbs share the same pattern of marking. Note that the use of the narrative case is limited to marking the subjects of Class 1 and Class 3 verbs in the aorist series.

Note that most Class 2 and 3 verbs are intransitive, meaning that they do not have direct objects.

In the case of Class 4 verbs, where the subject is marked with the dative and the direct object with the nominative, the postposition -თვის -*tvis* ('for') is used to mark any indirect object. The use of the dative case to mark the subject, while the direct object is marked by the nominative, is known as 'inversion'.

The following examples illustrate the case marking pattern of Class 1 verbs (the root -ჩუქ- **-chuk-** means 'to give someone something as a gift'):

დათო თავის მეგობარს წიგნს აჩუქებს.

dato tavis megobar-s ts'ign-s a-chuk-eb-s.

dato (nom) his (dat) friend (dat sg) book (dat sg) X-gives-Y-to-Z-as a gift (pres 3s 3s 3s)

Dato gives his friend a book as a gift.

დათომ თავის მეგობარს წიგნი აჩუქა.

dato-m tavis megobar-s ts'ign-i a-chuk-a.

dato (nar) his (dat) friend (dat sg) book (nom sg) X-gives-Y-to-Z-as a gift (aor 3s 3s 3s)

Dato gave his friend a book as a gift.

დათოს თავისი მეგობრისთვის წიგნი უჩუქებია.

dato-s tavis-i megobr-is-tvis ts'ign-i u-chuk-eb-i-a.

dato (dat) his (gen) friend (gen sg) - for book (nom sg) X-gives-Y-to-Z-as a gift (perf 3s 3s 3s)

Dato [apparently] gave his friend a book as a gift.

The single exception to the case marking patterns summarized above is the verb -ც- **-ts-** ('to know something'), which in the present series screeves has its subject in the narrative and its direct object in the nominative, as in this illustration.

გონიერმა კაცმა ყველაფერი არ იცის.

gonier-ma k'ats-ma q'velaper-i ar i-ts-i-s.

clever (nar sg) man (nar sg) everything (nom) not X-knows-Y (pres 3s 3s)

A clever man does not know everything.

Screeves

The Present Screeve

Usage

The Georgian present screeve corresponds to the English present tense (for example, 'he holds it, 'he is holding it', 'he does hold it'). It is used to describe an action or condition in present time, or to state something that is generally valid.

Formation

The present stem comprises the verb root in combination with a present/future stem formant (although the latter may be -∅). The present screeve of the verb -სწორ- **-sts'or-** 'to correct' is based on the stem -სწორებ- **-sts'or-eb-**, where -ებ **-eb** is the present/future stem formant.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the present screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted, and some regularly derived verb forms, such as Class 1 causatives and relative C2(b) verbs, for example, are omitted). Where four affixes are noted in slots 5 and 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third persons singular, and the third person plural, respectively.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PI	PSF	SM	PM	Plur
C1	∅-	PM	PV	ROOT	-∅	PSF	-∅	-∅ -∅ -ბ -s -ებ <i>-en</i> ¹	(-თ -t)
C2(a)			∅-		-ებ <i>-eb</i>	-∅	-ო -i	-∅	
C2(b)			ო -i		-ებ <i>-eb</i>	-∅	-ო -i -∅	-∅ -ა -a	
C2(c)			∅-		-დ <i>-d</i>	-ებ <i>-eb</i>	-ო -i	-აბ <i>-an</i>	
C3	PVB ³	PM	∅-	ROOT	-∅	PSF	-∅	-∅ -∅ -ბ -s -ებ <i>-en</i> ¹	(-თ -t)
C4 ²			∅- ო -i, უ- u- ა- a- ე- e-			-∅	-ო -i -ავ <i>-av</i> ³	-ა -a -ბ -s	
stat ⁴			∅-			∅-	-∅	-ო -i	
		ჰ- (ბ-, ∅-) ჰ- (ს-, ∅-)	∅-						
		∅-	ა- a- უ- u-						

¹ -აბ *-an* for PSF -ო -i

² third person direct object assumed

³ rare

⁴ third person subject assumed; there are some exceptions to the general pattern given here

Present screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Nominative	Dative	Dative
Class 2	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Nominative	(Dative)	Dative
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Present screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal and plural markers in the present screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct, and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1-3		CLASS 1, 3	CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	ვ- — v- —	მ- — m- —	მ- — m- —		ვ- — -ვარ v- — -v+ar
2s	∅- (ბ- —) ∅- (kh- —)	გ- — g- —	გ- — g- —		— -ბარ — -kh+ar
3s	— -ს, -ს, -მ — -s, -a, -o	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —		-ს, -ს -s, -a
1p	ვ- — -თ v- — -t	მვ- — gv- —	მვ- — gv- —		ვ- — -ვართ v- — -v+ar-t
2p	— -თ (ბ- — -თ) — -t (kh- — -t)	გ- — -თ g- — -t	გ- — -თ g- — -t		— -ბართ — -kh+ar-t
3p	— -ებ, -ან, -ნენ, -ნ, -ეს — -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — -თ h- (s-, ∅-) — -t	-ს, -ს -s, -a

Present screeve pronominal markers

Class 4 verbs in the present screeve exhibit inversion, where the 'logical' subject of the equivalent English sentence is marked as a 'grammatical' indirect object in Georgian using a pronominal marker (often in combination with a pre-radical vowel) in the verb, and the dative of the noun or pronoun. The equivalent of the English 'logical' direct object is marked with the nominative case and, within the verb, with a suffixed auxiliary verb, which is a variant of the present tense of the verb **ყოფნა q'op+n-a** ('be'), as in the following examples.

COPULA		DIRECT OBJECT
ვარ(თ) v- ar (-t) 'I am / we are'	→	ვ- — -ვარ(თ) v- — -v+ar(-t)
ბარ(თ) kh- ar (-t) 'you are'	→	— -ბარ(თ) — -kh+ar(-t)
არის ar-i-s 'he is'	→	— -ს / -ს — -s / -a
არიან ar-i-an 'they are'	→	— -თ / -ათ — -t / -a-t

Illustrations

In its simplest form, where the present/future stem formant is -Ø, the verb consists of a root combined with the appropriate pronominal markers, as in the case of the Class 1 verb წერს *ts'er-s* 'he writes it'.

PERSON	PRESENT SCREEVE		
1s	ვწერ	<i>v-ts'er</i>	'I write it'
2s	წერ	<i>ts'er</i>	'you write it'
3s	წერს	<i>ts'er-s</i>	'he writes it'
1p	ვწერთ	<i>v-ts'er-t</i>	'we write it'
2p	წერთ	<i>ts'er-t</i>	'you write it'
3p	წერენ	<i>ts'er-en</i>	'they write it'

Present screeve paradigm

The following are some examples of the present screeve of Class 4 verbs.

თავი მტკივა.

tav-i m-t'k'iv-a.

head (nom sg) X's-Y-pains-him (pres 1s 3s)

I have a headache.

გინდა რამე?

g-i-nd-a rame?

X-wants-Y (pres 2s 3s) something (nom sg)?

Do you want something?

მცენარეებს წყალი სჭირდება.

mtsenare-eb-s ts'q'al-i s-ch'ir-d-eb-a.

plant (dat pl) water (nom sg) X-needs-Y (pres 3s 3s)

Plants need water.

ბავშვებს ძალიან ვუყვარვართ.

bavshv-eb-s dzalian v-u-q'var-v+ar+t.

child (dat pl) very X-loves-Y (pres 3p 1p)

The children love us very much.

მამას ფული აქვს.

mama-s pul-i a-kv-s.

father (dat sg) money (nom sg) X-has-Y (pres 3s 3s)

Father has money.

The following examples illustrate how present screeve verb forms are constructed.

C1	ბეჭდავენ	<i>bech'd-av-en</i>	'they print it'
C1	ვაკეთებთ	<i>v-a-k'et-eb-t</i>	'we do it'
C2(a)	რჩებიან	<i>rch-eb-i-an</i>	'they remain'
C2(b)	იშლება	<i>i-shl-eb-a</i>	'it comes apart'
C2(c)	ბერდებით	<i>ber-d-eb-i-t</i>	'you are getting old'
C3	ვლაპარაკობ	<i>v-lap'arak'-ob</i>	'I am speaking'
C4	გსურს	<i>g-sur-s</i>	'you wish'
C4	ვუყვარვართ	<i>v-u-q'var-v+ar-t</i>	'he loves us'
C4	სძინავთ	<i>s-dzin-av-t</i>	'they are sleeping'
C4	აქვთ	<i>a-kv-t</i>	'they have it'
stat	სწერია	<i>s-ts'er-i-a</i>	'it is written'

The Imperfect Screeve

Usage

The Georgian imperfect screeve expresses ongoing or repeated action in the past, as in 'he was holding it' or 'he used to hold it'.

Formation

The imperfect screeve is based on the present stem (that is, the verb root in combination with a present/future stem formant, although the latter may be $-\emptyset$), with a suffixed stem augment ($-(\text{ო})\text{დ}$ $-(o)d$). The imperfect screeve of the verb -სწორ- **-sts'or-** 'to correct' is based on the form $\text{-სწორებდ-$ **-sts'or-eb-d-**, where -ებ **-eb** is the present/future stem formant, and -დ **-d** is the stem augment.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the present screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted, and some regularly derived verb forms, such as Class 1 causatives and relative C2(b) verbs, for example, are omitted). Where four affixes are noted in slots 5 and 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third persons singular, and the third person plural, respectively.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+4	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PI	PSF	SA	SM	PM	Plur
C1			PV		$-\emptyset$	PSF	$-\text{დ}$ -d			
C2(a)			\emptyset -		$-\text{ებ}$ -eb	$-\emptyset$		$-\text{ო}$ -i	$-\emptyset$	
C2(b)	\emptyset -		ო- i-		$-\text{ებ}$ -eb	$-\emptyset$	$-\text{ოდ}$ -od	$-\text{ო}$ -i	$-\emptyset$	
C2(c)					$-\text{დ}$ -d	$-\text{ებ}$ -eb		$-\emptyset$	$-\text{ა}$ -a	
C3		PM	\emptyset -	ROOT		PSF	$-\text{დ}$ -d $-\text{ოდ}$ -od ¹	$-\emptyset$	$-\text{ენ}$ -nen	$-\text{თ}$ -t
C4 ²	PVB ³		\emptyset - ო- i- , უ- u- ე- e- ა- a-		$-\emptyset$	$-\emptyset$ ⁴	$-\text{დ}$ -d $-\text{ოდ}$ -od	$-\emptyset$	$-\text{ა}$ -a	

¹ PSF $-\text{ო}$ **-i** \rightarrow $-\emptyset$, SA = $-\text{ოდ}$ **-od**

² third person direct object assumed

³ rare

⁴ with rare exceptions

Imperfect screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Nominative	Dative	Dative
Class 2	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Nominative	(Dative)	Dative
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Imperfect screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal and plural markers in the imperfect screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1-3		CLASS 1, 3	CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	3- — v- —	ḡ- — m- —	ḡ- — m- —		3- — -o v- — -i
2s	∅- (b- —) ∅- (kh- —)	ḡ- — g- —	ḡ- — g- —		— -o — -i
3s	— -s, -a, -o — -s, -a, -o	∅-	3- (s-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —		— -s — -a
1p	3- — -o v- — -t	ḡ3- — gv- —	ḡ3- — gv- —		3- — -oo v- — -it
2p	— -o (b- — -o) — -t (kh- — -t)	ḡ- — -o g- — -t	ḡ- — -o g- — -t		— -oo — -it
3p	— -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es — -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es	∅-	3- (s-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	3- (s-, ∅-) — -o h- (s-, ∅-) — -t	— -s — -a

Imperfect screeve pronominal markers

Illustrations

In its simplest form, where the present/future stem formant is -∅, the pattern is illustrated by the Class 1 verb წერდა *ts'er-d-a* 'he used to write it'.

PERSON	IMPERFECT SCREEVE		
1s	ვწერდი	<i>v-ts'er-d-i</i>	'I used to write it'
2s	წერდი	<i>ts'er-d-i</i>	'you used to write it'
3s	წერდა	<i>ts'er-d-a</i>	'he used to write it'
1p	ვწერდით	<i>v-ts'er-d-i-t</i>	'we used to write it'
2p	წერდით	<i>ts'er-d-i-t</i>	'you used to write it'
3p	წერდნენ	<i>ts'er-d-nen</i>	'they used to write it'

Imperfect screeve paradigm

The following examples illustrate how imperfect screeve verb forms are constructed.

C1	ბეჭდავდნენ	<i>bech'd-av-d-nen</i>	'they used to print it'
C1	ვაკეთებდით	<i>v-a-k'et-eb-d-i-t</i>	'we used to do it'
C2(a)	რჩებოდნენ	<i>rch-eb-od-nen</i>	'they used to remain'
C2(b)	იშლებოდა	<i>i-shl-eb-od-a</i>	'it used to come apart'
C2(c)	ბერდებოდით	<i>ber-d-eb-od-i-t</i>	'you used to get old'
C3	ვლაპარაკობდი	<i>v-lap'arak'-ob-d-i</i>	'I used to speak'
C4	გსურდა	<i>g-sur-d-a</i>	'you used to wish'
C4	ვუყვარდით	<i>v-u-q'var-d-i-t</i>	'he used to love us'
C4	ეშინოდათ	<i>e-shin-od-a-t</i>	'they used to fear'
C4	ჰქონდათ	<i>h-kon-d-a-t</i>	'they used to have it'

The Present Subjunctive Screeve

Usage

The Georgian present subjunctive screeve (also known as the present conjunctive) is used to express possible actions that might occur. It is found in hypothetical conditions (usually introduced in Georgian by the conjunction *რომ* 'if'), as in 'if he were holding it...', which highlights the fact that he is not actually holding it at the moment.

The present subjunctive screeve is also used in expressions of wishes and desires.

Formation

The present subjunctive screeve is based on the present stem (that is, the verb root in combination with a present/future stem formant, although the latter may be $-\emptyset$), with a suffixed stem augment ($-(\text{ო})\text{დ}$ $-(o)d$). This is identical to the formation of the imperfect screeve. The present subjunctive screeve of the verb *სწორ-* **-sts'or-** 'to correct' is based on the form *სწორებდ-* **-sts'or-eb-d-**, where *-ებ* $-eb$ is the present/future stem formant, and *-დ* $-d$ is the stem augment.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the present subjunctive screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted, and some regularly derived verb forms, such as Class 1 causatives and relative C2(b) verbs, for example, are omitted). Where four affixes are noted in slots 5 and 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third person singular, and the third person plural forms, respectively.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+4	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PI	PSF	SA	SM	PM	Plur
C1			PV		$-\emptyset$	PSF	$-\text{დ}$ $-d$			
C2(a)			\emptyset -		$-\text{ებ}$ $-eb$	$-\emptyset$				
C2(b)	\emptyset -		ო- $i-$		$-\text{ებ}$ $-eb$	$-\emptyset$	$-\text{ოდ}$ $-od$	$-\text{ე}$ $-e$ $-\text{ე}$ $-e$ $-\text{ე}$ $-e$ $-\emptyset$	$-\emptyset$ $-\emptyset$ $-\text{ს}$ $-s$ $-\text{ენ}$ $-nen$	
C2(c)		PM	\emptyset -	ROOT	$-\text{დ}$ $-d$	$-\text{ებ}$ $-eb$				
C3			\emptyset -			PSF	$-\text{დ}$ $-d$ $-\text{ოდ}$ $-od$ ¹			
C4 ²	PVB ³		\emptyset - ო- $i-$, უ- $u-$ ე- $e-$ ა- $a-$		$-\emptyset$	$-\emptyset$ ⁴	$-\text{დ}$ $-d$ $-\text{ოდ}$ $-od$	$-\text{ე}$ $-e$	$-\text{ს}$ $-s$	$(-\text{თ})$ $-t$

¹ PSF $-\text{ო-}$ i \rightarrow $-\emptyset$, SA = $-\text{ოდ}$ $-od$

² third person direct object assumed

³ rare

⁴ with rare exceptions.

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Nominative	Dative	Dative
Class 2	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Nominative	(Dative)	Dative
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Present subjunctive screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal and plural markers in the present subjunctive screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1-3		CLASS 1, 3	CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	ვ- — v- —	მ- — m- —	მ- — m- —		ვ- — -ე v- — -e
2s	∅- (ბ- —) ∅- (kh- —)	გ- — g- —	გ- — g- —		— -ე — -e
3s	— -ს, -ა, -ო — -s, -a, -o	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —		— -ეს — -e-s
1p	ვ- — -თ v- — -t	გვ- — gv- —	გვ- — gv- —		ვ- — -ეთ v- — -e-t
2p	— -თ (ბ- — -თ) — -t (kh- — -t)	გ- — -თ g- — -t	გ- — -თ g- — -t		— -ეთ — -e-t
3p	— -ენ, -ან, -ნენ, -ნ, -ეს — -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — -თ h- (s-, ∅-) — -t	— -ეს — -e-s

Present subjunctive screeve pronominal markers

Illustrations

In its simplest form, where the present/future stem formant is ∅, the pattern is illustrated by the Class 1 verb წერდე *ts'er-d-e* '(if) he were writing it':

PERSON	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE SCREEVE		
1s	ვწერდე	<i>v-ts'er-d-e</i>	'(if) I were writing it'
2s	წერდე	<i>ts'er-d-e</i>	'(if) you were writing it'
3s	წერდეს	<i>ts'er-d-e-s</i>	'(if) he were writing it'
1p	ვწერდეთ	<i>v-ts'er-d-e-t</i>	'(if) we were writing it'
2p	წერდეთ	<i>ts'er-d-e-t</i>	'(if) you were writing it'
3p	წერდნენ	<i>ts'er-d-nen</i>	'(if) they were writing it'

Present subjunctive screeve paradigm

Note that the third person plural form წერდნენ *ts'er-d-nen* is identical to the corresponding form of the imperfect screeve.

The following examples illustrate how present subjunctive screeve verb forms are constructed.

C1	ბეჭდავდნენ	<i>bech'd-av-d-nen</i>	'(if) they were printing it'
C1	ვაკეთებდეთ	<i>v-a-k'et-eb-d-e-t</i>	'(if) we were doing it'
C2(a)	რჩებოდნენ	<i>rch-eb-od-nen</i>	'(if) they were remaining'
C2(b)	იშლებოდეს	<i>i-shl-eb-od-e-s</i>	'(if) it were coming apart'
C2(c)	ბერდებოდეთ	<i>ber-d-eb-od-e-t</i>	'(if) you were getting old'
C3	ვლაპარაკობდე	<i>v-lap'arak'-ob-d-e</i>	'(if) I were speaking'
C4	გსურდე	<i>g-sur-d-e</i>	'(if) you were wishing'
C4	ვუყვარდეთ	<i>v-u-q'var-d-e-t</i>	'(if) he were loving us'
C4	ემინოდეთ	<i>e-shin-od-e-t</i>	'(if) they were fearing it'
C4	ჰქონდეთ	<i>h-kon-d-e-t</i>	'(if) they were having it'

The Future Screeve

Usage

The Georgian future screeve corresponds to the English future tense (for example, 'he will hold it').

Formation

The future screeve of Class 1 and 2 verbs is derived by the addition of a preverb to the present screeve form, e.g., ასწორებს *a-sts'or-eb-s* 'he corrects it' (pres) → გაასწორებს *ga-a-sts'or-eb-s* 'he will correct it' (fut).

Class 3 verbs, on the other hand, form their future screeves by adding the preverb ი- *i-* and including the present/future stem formant -ებ *-eb*, e.g., თამაშობს *tamash-ob-s* 'he plays' (pres) → ითამაშებს *i-tamash-eb-s* 'he will play' (fut), დუღს *dugh-s* 'it boils' (pres) → იდუღებს *i-dugh-eb-s* 'it will boil' (fut). Note that there are some exceptions to this rule, such as სტვენს *st'ven-s* 'he whistles' (pres) → ისტვენს *i-st'ven-s* 'he will whistle' (fut). One common Class 3 verb has have the present/future verb formant -ობ *-ob*: გრძნობს *grdzn-ob-s* 'he feels it' (pres) → იგრძნობს *i-grdzn-ob-s* 'he will feel it' (fut).

Class 4 verbs often form their future screeve in a manner similar to relative Class 2(b) verbs, which have the pre-radical vowel ე- *e-*. Examples of such Class 4 verbs are სძულს *s-dzul-s* 'he hates it' (pres) → ეძულება *e-dzul-eb-a* 'he will hate it' (fut), სწყურია *s-ts'q'ur-i-a* 'he is thirsty' (pres) → ეწყურება *e-ts'q'ur-eb-a* 'he will be thirsty' (fut).

The future of several stative verbs is formed in a similar manner, e.g., ფენია *pen-i-a* 'it is spread out' (pres) → ეფინება *e-pin-eb-a* 'it will be spread out' (fut), ანთია *a-nt-i-a* 'it is lit' (pres) → ენთება *e-nt-eb-a* 'it will be lit' (fut).

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the future screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted, and some regularly derived verb forms, such as Class 1 causatives and relative C2(b) verbs, for example, are omitted). Where four affixes are noted in slots 5 and 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third persons singular, and the third person plural, respectively.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PI	PSF	SM	PM	Plur
C1			PV		-∅	PSF	-∅	-∅ -∅ -ს -s -ენ -en ¹	
C2(a)	PVB		∅-		-ებ -eb				
C2(b)			ი- <i>i-</i>		-ებ -eb	-∅	ი- <i>i-</i> ი- <i>i-</i> -∅	-∅ -∅ -ა -a	
C2(c)			∅-		-დ -d	-ებ -eb	ი- <i>i-</i>	-ან -an	
C3	∅-	PM	ი- <i>i-</i>	ROOT	-∅			-∅ -∅ -ს -s -ენ -en*	(-თ -t)
C4 ²	PVB		ე- <i>e-</i> ∅-			-ებ -eb	-∅		
			∅- ი- <i>i-</i> , უ- <i>u-</i> ე- <i>e-</i> ა- <i>a-</i>		-დ -d ³			-ა -a	
stat ⁴	∅-		ე- <i>e-</i>		-∅				

- ¹ -ან -an for PSF -o -i
- ² third person direct object assumed
- ³ with occasional root alteration
- ⁴ third person subject assumed

Future screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Nominative	Dative	Dative
Class 2	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Nominative	(Dative)	Dative
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Future screeve case marking

Subject / object marking

The pronominal and plural markers in the future screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1-3		CLASS 1, 3	CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	ვ- — v- —	მ- — m- —	მ- — m- —		ვ- — -o v- — -i
2s	∅- (ბ- —) ∅- (kh- —)	გ- — g- —	გ- — g- —		— -o — -i
3s	— ბ-, -s, -o — -s, -a, -o	∅-	ჰ- (ბ-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —		— -s — -a
1p	ვ- — -თ v- — -t	გვ- — gv- —	გვ- — gv- —		ვ- — -ოთ v- — -i-t
2p	— -თ (ბ- — -თ) — -t (kh- — -t)	გ- — -თ g- — -t	გ- — -თ g- — -t		— -ოთ — -i-t
3p	— -ენ, -ან, -ნენ, -ნ, -ეს — -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es	∅-	ჰ- (ბ-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	ჰ- (ბ-, ∅-) — -თ h- (s-, ∅-) — -t	— -s — -a

Future screeve pronominal markers

Illustrations

In its simplest form, the future screeve comprises a verb root combined with a preverb and the appropriate pronominal markers, as in the case of the Class 1 verb დაწერს *da-ts'er-s* 'he will write it'.

PERSON	FUTURE SCREEVE		
1s	დაწერ	<i>da-v-ts'er</i>	'I will write it'
2s	დაწერ	<i>da-ts'er</i>	'you will write it'
3s	დაწერს	<i>da-ts'er-s</i>	'he will write it'
1p	დაწერთ	<i>da-v-ts'er-t</i>	'we will write it'
2p	დაწერთ	<i>da-ts'er-t</i>	'you will write it'
3p	დაწერენ	<i>da-ts'er-en</i>	'they will write it'

Future screeve formation

The following examples illustrate how future screeve verb forms are constructed.

C1	დაბეჭდავენ	<i>da-bech'd-av-en</i>	'they will print it'
C1	გავაკეთებთ	<i>ga-v-a-k'et-eb-t</i>	'we will do it'
C2(a)	დარჩებიან	<i>da-rch-eb-i-an</i>	'they will remain'
C2(b)	დაიშლება	<i>da-i-shl-eb-a</i>	'it will come apart'
C2(c)	დაბერდებით	<i>da-ber-d-eb-i-t</i>	'you will get old'
C3	ვილაპარაკებ	<i>v-i-lap'arak'-eb</i>	'I will speak'
C4	მოგესურვება	<i>mo-g-e-surv-eb-a</i>	'you will wish'
C4	ვეყვარებით	<i>v-e-q'var-eb-i-t</i>	'he will love us'
C4	ეშიებათ	<i>e-shi-eb-a-t</i>	'they will be hungry'
C4	ექნებათ	<i>e-kn-eb-a-t</i>	'they will have it'
stat	ეწერება	<i>e-ts'er-eb-a</i>	'it will be written'

The Conditional Screeve

Usage

The Georgian conditional screeve is used to express repeated actions that have been completed in the past, as in 'he used to hold it', 'he would hold it'. It is often accompanied in Georgian by the iterative marker ხოლმე *kholme* 'used to, was wont to', and, in this sense, it is similar to the imperfect, the main difference being in that the repeated action is viewed as having been completed.

This screeve is also used to express the result of meeting conditions that do not correspond to reality (usually introduced in Georgian by the conjunction რომ *rom* 'if'), as in 'if he were to retire [present subjunctive] early, he would have [conditional] much more leisure time.'

Formation

The conditional screeve of the verb -სწორ- *-sts'or-* 'to correct' is based on the form გასწორებდ- *ga-sts'or-eb-d-*, where გა- *ga-* is the preverb used to form the future screeve, -ებ *-eb* is the present/future stem formant, and -დ *-d* is the stem augment.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the conditional screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted, and some regularly derived verb forms, such as Class 1 causatives and relative C2(b) verbs, for example, are omitted). Where four affixes are noted in slots 5 and 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third person singular, and the third person plural forms, respectively. Note that the conditional screeve form is based on the future stem.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+4	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PI	PSF	SA	SM	PM	Plur
C1	PVB	PM	PV	ROOT	-∅	PSF	-დ <i>-d</i>	-ო <i>-i</i> -ო <i>-i</i> -∅ -∅	-∅ -∅ -ა <i>-a</i> -ნენ <i>-nen</i>	(-თ <i>-t</i>)
C2(a)			∅-		-ებ <i>-eb</i>	-∅				
C2(b)			ო- <i>i-</i>		-ებ <i>-eb</i>		-ოდ <i>-od</i>			
C2(c)			∅-		-დ <i>-d</i>	-ებ <i>-eb</i>				
C3	∅-	PM	ო- <i>i-</i>	ROOT	-∅	-ებ <i>-eb</i>	-დ <i>-d</i>	-∅	-ა <i>-a</i>	(-თ <i>-t</i>)
C4 ¹	PVB		ე- <i>e-</i> ∅-		-∅					
			∅- ო- <i>i-</i> , უ- <i>u-</i> ე- <i>e-</i> ა- <i>a-</i>		-დ <i>-d</i> ²		-ოდ <i>-od</i>			
			∅-		-∅					
stat ³	∅-		ე- <i>e-</i>		-∅					

- ¹ third person direct object assumed
- ² with occasional root alteration
- ³ third person subject assumed.

Conditional screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Nominative	Dative	Dative
Class 2	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Nominative	(Dative)	Dative
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Conditional screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal and plural markers in the conditional screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1-3		CLASS 1, 3	CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	ვ- — v- —	მ- — m- —	მ- — m- —	ვ- — -ო v- — -i	
2s	∅- (ბ- —) ∅- (kh- —)	გ- — g- —	გ- — g- —	— -ო — -i	
3s	— -ს, -ა, -თ — -s, -a, -o	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	— -ა — -a	
1p	ვ- — -თ v- — -t	გვ- — gv- —	გვ- — gv- —	ვ- — -ოთ v- — -i-t	
2p	— -თ (ბ- — -თ) — -t (kh- — -t)	გ- — -თ g- — -t	გ- — -თ g- — -t	— -ოთ — -i-t	
3p	— -ენ, -ან, -ნენ, -ნ, -ეს — -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — -თ h- (s-, ∅-) — -t	— -ა — -a

Conditional screeve pronominal markers

Illustrations

In its simplest form, where the present/future stem formant is -∅, the pattern is illustrated by the Class 1 verb წერდა *da-ts'er-d-a* 'he would write it'.

PERSON	CONDITIONAL SCREEVE		
1s	დავწერდი	<i>da-v-ts'er-d-i</i>	'I would write it'
2s	დაწერდი	<i>da-ts'er-d-i</i>	'you would write it'
3s	დაწერდა	<i>da-ts'er-d-a</i>	'he would write it'
1p	დავწერდით	<i>da-v-ts'er-d-i-t</i>	'we would write it'
2p	დაწერდით	<i>da-ts'er-d-i-t</i>	'you would write it'
3p	დაწერდნენ	<i>da-ts'er-d-nen</i>	'they would write it'

Note that the conditional screeve in this case is identical to the form of the imperfect, with the addition of the preverb და- *da-*.

The following examples illustrate how conditional screeve verb forms are constructed.

C1	ააშენებდნენ	<i>a-a-shen-eb-d-nen</i>	‘they would build it’
C1	გავაკეთებდით	<i>ga-v-a-k’et-eb-d-i-t</i>	‘we would do it’
C2(a)	დარჩებოდნენ	<i>da-rch-eb-od-nen</i>	‘they would remain’
C2(b)	დაიშლებოდა	<i>da-i-shl-eb-od-a</i>	‘it would come apart’
C2(c)	დაბერდებოდით	<i>da-ber-d-eb-od-i-t</i>	‘you would get old’
C3	ვილაპარაკებდი	<i>v-i-lap’arak’-eb-d-i</i>	‘I would speak’
C4	გესურვებოდა	<i>g-e-surv-eb-od-a</i>	‘you would wish’
C4	ვეყვარებოდით	<i>v-e-q’var-eb-od-i-t</i>	‘he would love us’
C4	ემიებოდათ	<i>e-shi-eb-od-a-t</i>	‘they would be hungry’
C4	ექნებოდათ	<i>e-kn-eb-od-a-t</i>	‘they would have it’
stat	იწერებოდა	<i>e-ts’er-eb-od-a</i>	‘it would be written’

The Future Subjunctive Screeve

Usage

The Georgian future subjunctive screeve (also known as the future conjunctive) is used to express possible single completed actions that might occur in the future. It is found in hypothetical conditions (usually introduced in Georgian by the conjunction *რომ rom* ‘if’), as in ‘if he were to hold it...’, which highlights the fact that he is not actually expected to hold it. It is also used in expressions of wishes and desires.

Formation

The future subjunctive screeve is based on the future stem, with a suffixed stem augment (*-(ო)დ -(o)d*). This is identical to the formation of the conditional screeve. The future subjunctive screeve of the verb *-სწორ-* *-sts’or-* ‘to correct’ is based on the form *გასწორებდ-* *ga-sts’or-eb-d-*, where *გა-* *ga-* is the preverb used to form the future screeve, *-ებ* *-eb* is the present/future stem formant, and *-დ* *-d* is the stem augment.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the future subjunctive screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted, and some regularly derived verb forms, such as Class 1 causatives and relative C2(b) verbs, for example, are omitted). Where four affixes are noted in slots 5 and 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third person singular, and the third person plural forms, respectively.

Note that the conditional screeve form is based on the future stem.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+4	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PI	PSF	SA	SM	PM	Plur
C1	PVB	PM	PV	ROOT	-∅	PSF	-დ <i>-d</i>	-ე <i>-e</i> -ე <i>-e</i> -ე <i>-e</i> -∅	-∅ -∅ -ს <i>-s</i> -ნენ <i>-nen</i>	(–თ <i>-t</i>)
C2(a)			∅-		-ებ <i>-eb</i>	-∅				
C2(b)			ი- <i>i-</i>		-ებ <i>-eb</i>		-ოდ <i>-od</i>			
C2(c)			∅-		-დ <i>-d</i>	-ებ <i>-eb</i>				
C3	∅-		ი- <i>i-</i>		-∅		-დ <i>-d</i>			
C4 ¹	PVB	PM	ე- <i>e-</i> ∅-	ROOT	-∅	-ებ <i>-eb</i>	-ოდ <i>-od</i>	-ე <i>-e</i>	-ს <i>-s</i>	
			∅-							
			ი- <i>i-</i> , უ- <i>u-</i> ე- <i>e-</i> ა- <i>a-</i>							
stat ³	∅-		ე- <i>e-</i>		-∅					

- ¹ third person direct object assumed
- ² with occasional root alteration
- ³ third person subject assumed

Future subjunctive screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Nominative	Dative	Dative
Class 2	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Nominative	(Dative)	Dative
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Future subjunctive screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal and plural markers in the future screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1-3		CLASS 1, 3	CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	ჰ- — v- —	მ- — m- —	მ- — m- —		ჰ- — -ჲ v- — -e
2s	∅- (b- —) ∅- (kh- —)	გ- — g- —	გ- — g- —		— -ჲ — -e
3s	— -ს, -ა, -ო — -s, -a, -o	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —		— -ა — -a
1p	ჰ- — -თ v- — -t	გგ- — gv- —	გგ- — gv- —		ჰ- — -ეთ v- — -e-t
2p	— -თ (b- — -თ) — -t (kh- — -t)	გ- — -თ g- — -t	გ- — -თ g- — -t		— -ეთ — -e-t
3p	— -ენ, -ან, -ნენ, -ნ, -ეს — -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — -თ h- (s-, ∅-) — -t	— -ა — -a

Future subjunctive screeve pronominal markers

Illustrations

In its simplest form, where the present/future stem formant is ∅-, the pattern is illustrated by the Class 1 verb დაწერდეს *da-ts'er-d-e-s* '(if) he were to write it'.

PERSON	FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE SCREEVE		
1s	დავწერდე	<i>da-v-ts'er-d-e</i>	'(if) I were to write it'
2s	დაწერდე	<i>da-ts'er-d-e</i>	'(if) you were to write it'
3s	დაწერდეს	<i>da-ts'er-d-e-s</i>	'(if) he were to write it'
1p	დავწერდეთ	<i>da-v-ts'er-d-e-t</i>	'(if) we were to write it'
2p	დაწერდეთ	<i>da-ts'er-d-e-t</i>	'(if) you were to write it'
3p	დაწერდნენ	<i>da-ts'er-d-nen</i>	'(if) they were to write it'

Future subjunctive screeve paradigm

Note that the third person plural form დაწერდნენ *da-ts'er-d-nen* is identical to the corresponding form of the conditional screeve.

The following examples illustrate how future subjunctive screeve verb forms are constructed:

C1	ააშენებდნენ	<i>a-a-shen-eb-d-nen</i>	'(if) they were to build it'
C1	გავაკეთებდეთ	<i>ga-v-a-k'et-eb-d-e-t</i>	'(if) we were to do it'
C2(a)	დარჩებოდნენ	<i>da-rch-eb-od-nen</i>	'(if) they were to remain'
C2(b)	დაიშლებოდეს	<i>da-i-shl-eb-od-e-s</i>	'(if) it were to come apart'
C2(c)	დაბერდებოდეთ	<i>ber-d-eb-od-e-t</i>	'(if) you were to get old'
C3	ვილაპარაკებდე	<i>v-i-lap'arak'-eb-d-e</i>	'(if) I were to speak'
C4	გესურვებოდეს	<i>g-e-surv-eb-od-e-s</i>	'(if) you were to wish'
C4	ვეყვარებოდეთ	<i>v-e-q'var-eb-od-e-t</i>	'(if) he were to love us'
C4	ემიებოდეთ	<i>e-shi-eb-od-e-t</i>	'(if) they were to be hungry'
C4	ექნებოდეთ	<i>e-kn-eb-od-e-t</i>	'(if) they were to have it'
stat	ეწერებოდეს	<i>e-ts'er-eb-od-e-s</i>	'(if) it were to be written'

The Aorist Screeve

Usage

The Georgian aorist screeve is used to express a single completed action in the past, such as 'he held it'. There is also a rare form of this screeve without a preverb, and not described here, that expresses uncompleted action in the past. Note that, for almost all verbs, with the main exception of the basic verbs of motion, the form of the second person imperative is the same as that of the corresponding aorist.

Formation

The aorist screeve is based on the future stem, with (almost invariably) any present/future stem formant removed. The verb root, however, may undergo some changes.

There are two sets of possible endings for all but Class 4 and stative verbs; these are known as the 'weak' and 'strong' conjugations. The aorist of the verb -სწორ- *-sts'or-* 'to correct' is based on the form გაასწორ- *ga-a-sts'or-*, where გა- *ga-* is the preverb used to form the future screeve.

In some verbs, the form of the verb root as used in the aorist stem differs from that used in the present and future stems; examples are -ჭერ- *-ch'er-* → -ჭრ- *-ch'r* ('cut'), -კლ- *-k'l-* → -კალ- *-k'al-* ('kill'), and -ცხ- *-tskh-* → -ცხვ- *-tskhv-* ('bake').

Some Class 2(b) verbs show peculiarities in the formation of the aorist series.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the aorist screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted, and some regularly derived verb forms, such as Class 1 causatives and relative C2(b) verbs, for example, are omitted). Where four affixes are noted in slots 5 and 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third persons singular, and the third person plural, respectively.

Some Class 1 verbs have the third person singular screeve marker -ო *-o*, e.g., აწყობს *a-ts'q'-ob-s* 'he arranges them' (pres) → დააწყო *da-a-ts'q'-o* 'he arranged them' (aor).

Note that one common Class 3 verb follows the 'strong' pattern, and also has the third person singular screeve marker -ო *-o*: გრძნობს *grdzn-ob-s* 'he feels it' (pres) → იგრძნო *i-grdzn-o* 'he felt it' (aor).

	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+5		+6	+7	
	PVB	PM	PV		PI	SM (weak)	SM (strong)	PM	Plur	
C1 ¹	PVB	PM	PV	ROOT	-∅	-ɟ -e -ɟ -e -s -a, -m -o -ɟ -e	-o -i -o -i -s -a -ɟ -e	-∅ -∅ -∅ -l -s	(-m -t)	
C2(a)			∅-			—	-o -i -o -i -s -a -∅	-∅ -∅ -∅ -bɟb -nen		
C2(b)			o -i-			-ɟ -e -ɟ -e -s -a, -m -o -∅	-o -i -o -i -s -a -∅	-∅ -∅ -∅ -bɟb -nen		
C2(c)			∅-			-ɔ -d	—	-o -i -o -i -s -a -∅		-∅ -∅ -∅ -bɟb -nen
C3			∅-			o -i-	-ɟ -e -ɟ -e -s -a -ɟ -e	—		-∅ -∅ -∅ -l -s
C4 ²	PVB	PM	ɟ -e ∅-	ROOT	-∅	-∅		-s -a		
			∅- o -i-, ɟ -u- ɟ -e s -a-			-ɔ -d ³	-∅			
stat ⁴	∅-		ɟ -e		-∅	-∅				

¹ PSF occurs exceptionally

² third person direct object assumed

³ with occasional root alteration

⁴ third person subject assumed

Aorist screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Narrative	Nominative	Dative
Class 2	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Narrative	(Nominative)	Dative
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Aorist screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal and plural markers in the aorist screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct, and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1-3		CLASS 1, 3	CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	ვ- — v- —	მ- — m- —	მ- — m- —		ვ- — -o v- — -i
2s	∅- (ბ- —) ∅- (kh- —)	გ- — g- —	გ- — g- —		— -o — -i
3s	— -ს, -ა, -ო — -s, -a, -o	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —		— -ა — -a
1p	ვ- — -თ v- — -t	გვ- — gv- —	გვ- — gv- —		ვ- — -ოთ v- — -it
2p	— -თ (ბ- — -თ) — -t (kh- — -t)	გ- — -თ g- — -t	გ- — -თ g- — -t		— -ოთ — -it
3p	— -ენ, -ან, -ნენ, -ნ, -ეს — -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — -თ h- (s-, ∅-) — -t	— -ა — -a

Aorist screeve subject and object marking

Illustrations

The weak conjugation is illustrated by the Class 1 verb დაწერა *da-ts'er-a* ('he wrote it').

PERSON	AORIST SCREEVE		
1s	დავწერე	<i>da-v-ts'er-e</i>	'I wrote it'
2s	დაწერე	<i>da-ts'er-e</i>	'you wrote it'
3s	დაწერა	<i>da-ts'er-a</i>	'he wrote it'
1p	დავწერეთ	<i>da-v-ts'er-e-t</i>	'we wrote it'
2p	დაწერეთ	<i>da-ts'er-e-t</i>	'you wrote it'
3p	დაწერეს	<i>da-ts'er-e-s</i>	'they wrote it'

Aorist screeve paradigm ('weak')

The strong conjugation is illustrated by the Class 1 verb დასვა *da-sv-a* ('he seated him').

PERSON	AORIST SCREEVE		
1s	დასვი	<i>da-v-sv-i</i>	'I seated him'
2s	დასვი	<i>da-sv-i</i>	'you seated him'
3s	დასვა	<i>da-sv-a</i>	'he seated him'
1p	დასვით	<i>da-v-sv-i-t</i>	'we seated him'
2p	დასვით	<i>da-sv-i-t</i>	'you seated him'
3p	დასვეს	<i>da-sv-e-s</i>	'they seated him'

Aorist screeve paradigm ('strong')

The following examples illustrate how aorist screeve verb forms are constructed.

C1	დაბეჭდეს	<i>da-bech'd-e-s</i>	'they printed it'
C1	გავაკეთეთ	<i>ga-v-a-k'et-e-t</i>	'we did it'
C2(a)	დარჩნენ	<i>da-rch-nen</i>	'they remained'
C2(b)	დაიშალა	<i>da-i-shal-a</i>	'it came apart'
C2(c)	დაბერდით	<i>da-ber-d-i-t</i>	'you got old'
C3	ვილაპარაკე	<i>v-i-lap'arak'-e</i>	'I spoke'
C4	გესურვა	<i>g-e-surv-a</i>	'you wished'
C4	შევუყვარდი	<i>she-v-u-q'var-d-i-t</i>	'he fell in love with us'
C4	შეეშინდათ	<i>she-e-shin-d-a-t</i>	'they became afraid'
C4	მეძინა	<i>m-e-dzin-a</i>	'I slept'
stat	ეწერა	<i>e-ts'er-a</i>	'it was written'

Note that the aorists of some Class 4 verbs are formed with the combination of a preverb with the passive infix -დ- *-d-*. These usually denote changes of state, as in the two examples above ('fell in love', 'became afraid'), and are known as 'inceptives'.

The Optative Screeve

Usage

The optative screeve (also known as the aorist subjunctive or aorist conjunctive) is used to express a possible completed action in present or future time, as in 'perhaps he may hold it.' It is also used with the conjunction რომ *rom* '(in order) to' to express purpose, as in 'I will open the window to let some air in.'

The optative is used with *უნდა unda* 'must', *იქნებ ikneb* 'perhaps', *შეიძლება sheidzleba* 'can', *შესაძლებელია shesadzlebelia* 'it is possible', *შეუძლებელია sheudzlebelia* 'it is impossible', *საჭიროა sach'iroa* 'it is necessary', *დროა droa* 'it is time'.

The optative is also used with *არ ar* 'not' in negative imperatives, and is found in expressions of wishes and desires, as in 'Let's go!' Like the aorist, there is also a rare form of this screeve without a preverb, and not described here, that expresses uncompleted action.

Formation

Like the aorist, the optative screeve is based on the future stem, with (almost invariably) any present/future stem formant removed. The verb root, however, may undergo some changes. There are two sets of possible endings for all but Class 4 and stative verbs; these are known as the 'weak' and 'strong' conjugations. The aorist of the verb -სწორ- *-sts'or-* 'to correct' is based on the form *გასწორ- ga-a-sts'or-*, where *გა- ga-* is the preverb used to form the future screeve.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the optative screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted, and some regularly derived verb forms, such as Class 1 causatives and relative C2(b) verbs, for example, are omitted). Where four affixes are noted in slots 5 and 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third persons singular, and the third person plural, respectively.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+5	+6	+7	
	PVB	PM	PV		PI	SM (weak)	SM (strong)	PM	Plur
C1 ¹	PVB	PM	PV	ROOT	-∅	-m -o	-s -a	-∅ -∅ -s -s -b -n	(-o -t)
C2(a)			∅-			—	-g -e -g -e -g -e -∅	-∅ -∅ -s -s -bgb -nen	
C2(b)			o- i-			-m -o	-s -a	-∅ -∅ -s -s -b -n	
C2(c)			∅-			-d -d	—	-g -e -g -e -g -e -∅	
C3	∅-		o- i-		-∅	-m -o	—	-∅ -∅ -s -s -b -n	
C4 ²	PVB		g- e- ∅-		-∅	-m -o		-s -s	
			∅- o- i-, u- u- g- e- s- a-		-d -d ³	-g -e			
stat ⁴	∅-		g- e-		-∅	-m -o			

¹ PSF occurs exceptionally

² third person direct object assumed

³ with occasional root alteration

⁴ third person subject assumed

Optative Screeve Formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Narrative	Nominative	Dative
Class 2	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Narrative	(Nominative)	Dative
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Optative screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal and plural markers in the optative screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct, and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1-3		CLASS 1, 3	CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	ვ- — v- —	მ- — m- —	მ- — m- —		ვ- — -o v- — -i
2s	∅- (ბ- —) ∅- (kh- —)	გ- — g- —	გ- — g- —		— -o — -i
3s	— -ს, -ა, -ო — -s, -a, -o	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —		— -ა — -a
1p	ვ- — -თ v- — -t	გვ- — gv- —	გვ- — gv- —		ვ- — -ოთ v- — -i-t
2p	— -თ (ბ- — -თ) — -t (kh- — -t)	გ- — -თ g- — -t	გ- — -თ g- — -t		— -ოთ — -i-t
3p	— -ენ, -ან, -ნენ, -ნ, -ეს — -en, -an, -nen, -n, -es	∅-	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — h- (s-, ∅-) —	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — -თ h- (s-, ∅-) — -t	— -ა — -a

Optative screeve pronominal markers

Illustrations

The weak conjugation is illustrated by the Class 1 verb დაწეროს *da-ts'er-o-s* ('he may write it').

PERSON	OPTATIVE SCREEVE		
1s	დავწერო	<i>da-v-ts'er-o</i>	'I may write it'
2s	დაწერო	<i>da-ts'er-o</i>	'you may write it'
3s	დაწეროს	<i>da-ts'er-o-s</i>	'he may write it'
1p	დავწეროთ	<i>da-v-ts'er-o-t</i>	'we may write it'
2p	დაწეროთ	<i>da-ts'er-o-t</i>	'you may write it'
3p	დაწერონ	<i>da-ts'er-o-n</i>	'they may write it'

Optative screeve paradigm ('weak')

The strong conjugation is illustrated by the Class 1 verb დასვას *da-sv-a* ('he may seat him').

PERSON	OPTATIVE SCREEVE		
1s	დასვა	<i>da-v-sv-a</i>	'I may seat him'
2s	დასვა	<i>da-sv-a</i>	'you may seat him'
3s	დასვას	<i>da-sv-a-s</i>	'he may seat him'
1p	დასვათ	<i>da-v-sv-a-t</i>	'we may seat him'
2p	დასვათ	<i>da-sv-a-t</i>	'you may seat him'
3p	დასვან	<i>da-sv-a-n</i>	'they may seat him'

Optative screeve paradigm ('strong')

The following examples illustrate how optative screeve verb forms are constructed.

C1	დაბეჭდონ	<i>da-bech'd-o-n</i>	'they may print it'
C1	გავაკეთოთ	<i>ga-v-a-k'et-o-t</i>	'we may do it'
C2(a)	დარჩნენ	<i>da-rch-nen</i>	'they may remain'
C2(b)	დაიშალოს	<i>da-i-shal-o-s</i>	'it may come apart'
C2(c)	დაბერდეთ	<i>da-ber-d-e-t</i>	'you may get old'

C3	ვილაპარაკო	<i>v-i-lap'arak'-o</i>	'I may speak'
C4	გესურვოს	<i>g-e-surv-o-s</i>	'you may wish'
C4	შევუყვარდეთ	<i>she-v-u-q'var-d-e-t</i>	'he may fall in love with us'
C4	შეეშინდეთ	<i>she-e-shin-d-e-t</i>	'they may become afraid'
C4	მეძინოს	<i>m-e-dzin-o-s</i>	'I may sleep'
stat	ეწეროს	<i>e-ts'er-o-s</i>	'it may be written'

Note that the optatives of some Class 4 verbs are formed with the combination of a preverb with the passive infix *-დ- -d-*. These usually denote changes of state, as in the two examples above ('fell in love', 'became afraid'), and are known as 'inceptives'.

The Perfect Screeve

Usage

The perfect screeve (also known as the present perfect, first evidential or resultative) describes completed actions in the past, the result of which is evident in the present. There is also a rare form of this screeve without a preverb, and not described here, that expresses uncompleted action. Inversion occurs in the perfect screeve for all verbs, except those in Class 2.

The perfect is used where the speaker infers that an action must have taken place in the past. It is often accompanied by the particle *თურმე turme*, which is sometimes approximated by 'apparently, it appears, it seems'. It is important to note that this particle does not introduce any doubt as to the veracity of what is being reported; rather, it adds the nuance that the speaker was not present at the event and is not an eyewitness. The following sentence contains examples of both the aorist and the perfect screeves.

რეზომ დაწერა წერილი და მისამართი მაიას მიუწერია – მის ხელს ვცნობ.
rezo-m da-ts'er-a ts'eril-i da misamart-i maia-s mi-u-ts'er-i-a – mis khel-s v-tsn-ob.
 Rezo (nar) X-writes-Y (aor 3s 3s) letter (nom sg) and address (nom sg) Maia (dat) X-adds-Y-to-Z-in-writing (perf 3s 3s 3s) – his (dat) hand (dat sg) X-recognizes-Y (pres 1s 3s)
 Rezo wrote the letter and Maia wrote the address – I recognize her writing.

The perfect is also used in negative statements referring to the past together with the particle *არ ar* 'not', where there is no purpose or intentionality (the aorist would be used in the corresponding positive statements).

გუშინ გავიგე, რომ მოვა, მაგრამ არ გამიგია ზუსტად როდის.
gushin ga-v-i-g-e, rom mo-v-a, magram ar ga-m-i-g-i-a zust'-ad rodīs.
 yesterday X-heard-Y (aor 1s 3s), that X-comes (fut 3s), but not X-hears-Y (perf 1s 3s) exactly when
 I heard yesterday that he will come, but I haven't heard precisely when.

The use of the aorist in place of the perfect in past negations would suggest an unwillingness to perform the action.

The perfect is also used in reported actions not directly witnessed by the speaker, as in this example.

მედეას კოლხეთში უცხოვრია.
medea-s k'olkhet-shi u-tskhovr-i-a.
 Medea (dat) Colchis (dat) - in X-lives (perf 3s)
 Medea is said to have lived in Colchis.

Among other uses of this screeve are questions such as the following.

ეს წიგნი წავიკითხიათ? წავიკითხე.
es ts'ign-i ts'a-g-i-k'itkh-i-a-t? ts'a-v-i-k'itkh-e.
 this (nom sg) book (nom sg) X-reads-Y (perf 2p 3s) X-reads-Y (aor 1s 3s)
 Have you read this book? I have read it.

Formation

The form of the Class 1 perfect screeve with a third person direct object is: preverb, followed by the pronominal marker / preverb / screeve marker combinations as shown in the table below, a possible present/future stem formant, and the

ending -օձ -i-a (occasionally -ւ -s). Class 3 perfect formation is similar, but without the preverb and present/future formant, and with the ending -օձ -i-a (sometimes -նօձ -n-i-a). Direct objects are marked using the present screeve of the verb 'to be'.

The form of the perfect screeve of Class 2 verbs depends on whether or not the verb makes reference to an indirect object. If it does not, as with the 'absolute' verbs, the perfect stem is the same as the past participle less the final -օ-i. The subject of these verbs is marked by suffixing forms of the present screeve of the verb 'to be' (with the prefix Յ- v- in the first person). Where an indirect object is referenced (the 'relative' Class 2 verbs), the perfect stem is the same as the masdar less the final -ձ -a, with the same subject marking as for the absolute verbs.

The perfect of Class 4 verbs is also based on the masdar, with the screeve ending -օձ -i-a.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the perfect screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted). Where four affixes are noted in slot 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third persons singular, and the third person plural, respectively.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+2	+4	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PSF	infix	SM	PM	Plur
C1	PVB	PM	օ- i-, յ- u-	ROOT	-∅ -յծ -eb ¹ -ձՅ -av -ձն -am		-օ -i -∅	-ձ -a -ւ -s	
C2 (abs)	PAST PARTICIPLE STEM ²					-∅	-∅	-Յն -var -նն -khar -ձ -a -նձ -an	(-օ -t)
C2 (rel)	PVB		∅-	MASDAR STEM	-∅ -յծ -eb				
C3	∅-	PM	օ- i-, յ- u-	ROOT	-∅	-∅ -ն -n	-օ -i	-ձ -a	
C4 ³	PVB		∅-	MASDAR STEM	-∅ -յծ -eb	-∅			

¹ when verb root contains a vowel, and PSF = -յծ -eb

² first person prefix Յ- v- occurs *after* any preverb

³ third person direct object assumed

Perfect screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Dative	Nominative	-օՅօն -tvis
Class 2 (abs)	Nominative	(—)	—
Class 2 (rel)	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Dative	(Nominative)	-օՅօն -tvis
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Perfect screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal, pre-radical vowels, screeve and plural markers in the perfect screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1, 3		CLASS 2 (abs)	CLASS 2 (rel)		CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	SUBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	მ-ი- — <i>m-i-</i> —	ვ- — -ივარ <i>v- — -i-v+ar</i>	ვ- — -ვარ <i>v- — -v+ar</i>	ვ- — -ივარ <i>v- — -i-v+ar</i>	მ- — <i>m-</i> —	მ- — <i>m-</i> —	ვ- — -ივარ <i>v- — -i-v+ar</i>
2s	გ-ი- — <i>g-i-</i> —	— -იხარ <i>— -i-kh+ar</i>	— -ხარ <i>— -kh+ar</i>	— -იხარ <i>— -i-kh+ar</i>	გ- — <i>g-</i> —	გ- — <i>g-</i> —	— -იხარ <i>— -i-kh+ar</i>
3s	∅-უ- — <i>∅-u-</i> —	— -ია, -ს <i>— -i-a, -s</i>	— -ა <i>— -a</i>	— -ია <i>— -i-a</i>	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — <i>h- (s-, ∅-) —</i>	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — <i>h- (s-, ∅-) —</i>	— -ია <i>— -i-a</i>
1p	გვ-ი- — <i>gv-i-</i> —	ვ- — - ივართ <i>v- — -i-v+ar-</i> <i>t</i>	ვ- — -ვართ <i>v- — -v+ar-t</i>	ვ- — -ივართ <i>v- — -i-v+ar-</i> <i>t</i>	გვ- — <i>gv-</i> —	გვ- — <i>gv-</i> —	ვ- — - ივართ <i>v- — -i-v+ar-</i> <i>t</i>
2p	გ-ი- — -თ <i>g-i-</i> — <i>-t</i>	— -იხართ <i>— -i-kh+ar-t</i>	— -ხართ <i>— -kh+ar-t</i>	— -იხართ <i>— -i-kh+ar-t</i>	გ- — -თ <i>g-</i> — <i>-t</i>	გ- — -თ <i>g-</i> — <i>-t</i>	— -იხართ <i>— -i-kh+ar-t</i>
3p	∅-უ- — - თ <i>∅-u-</i> — <i>-t</i>	— -ია, -ს <i>— -i-a, -s</i>	— -ან <i>— -an</i>	— -იან <i>— -i-an</i>	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — <i>h- (s-, ∅-) —</i>	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — - თ <i>h- (s-, ∅-) — -t</i>	— -ია <i>— -i-a</i>

Perfect screeve subject and object marking

Note that there is no plural marker for the combination of a third person plural subject and a first or second person singular direct object. Note also that the first person prefix *ვ-* *v-* occurs *after* any preverb.

Illustrations

The basic pattern is illustrated by the Class 1 verb დაუწერია *da-u-ts'er-i-a* 'he wrote it' (third person direct object).

PERSON	PERFECT SCREEVE		
1s	დამივწერია	<i>da-m-i-ts'er-i-a</i>	'I wrote it'
2s	დაგიწერია	<i>da-g-i-ts'er-i-a</i>	'you wrote it'
3s	დაუწერია	<i>da-u-ts'er-i-a</i>	'he wrote it'
1p	დაგვწერია	<i>da-gv-i-ts'er-i-a</i>	'we wrote it'
2p	დაგიწერიათ	<i>da-g-i-ts'er-i-a-t</i>	'you wrote it'
3p	დაუწერიათ	<i>da-u-ts'er-i-a-t</i>	'they wrote it'

Perfect screeve paradigm

Examples of verbs incorporating a direct object in other than the third person are ვუყვარხართ *v-u-q'var-v+ar-t* 'he loved us', უყვარხარ *u-q'var-kh+ar* 'he loved you' or 'they loved you' (note the absence of a plural marker in the latter), and უყვარხართ *u-q'var-ka+ar-t* 'he loved you (plural)' or 'they loved you (plural)'.

This screeve exhibits inversion (except for Class 2 verbs), as in the following example.

მზარეული სტუმრებს სადილს უმზადებს.
mzareul-i st'umr-eb-s sadil-s u-mzad-eb-s.
cook (nom sg) guest (dat pl) meal (dat sg) X-
prepares-Y-for-Z (pres 3s 3s 3s)
The cook prepares a meal for the guests.

მზარეულს სადილი სტუმრებისთვის მოუმზადებია.
mzareul-s sadil-i st'umr-eb-is-tvis mo-u-mzad-eb-i-a.
→ cook (dat sg) meal (nom sg) guest (gen pl) - for X-prepares-
Y-for-Z (perf 3s 3s 3s)
The cook prepared a meal for the guests.

In the present screeve of this Class 1 verb, the nominative case marks the subject ('the cook'), while the dative marks both the direct object ('a meal') and the indirect object ('the guests', which is also referenced in the verb by the pre-

radical vowel უ- *u*-). In the perfect screeve, the process of inversion results in the subject of the English sentence being marked in the Georgian equivalent by the dative case (which is also referenced in the verb by the pre-radical vowel უ- *u*-). The logical object in the perfect is marked by the nominative, while the indirect object is marked by the postposition -თვის *-tvis* ('for').

The following example provides a further illustration of the marking pattern of Class 1 verbs in the perfect screeve (the root -ჩუკ- *-chuk-* means 'to give someone something as a gift').

დათოს თავისი მეგობრისთვის წიგნი უჩუქებია.
dato-s tavis-i megobr-is-tvis ts'ign-i u-chuk-eb-i-a.
 dato (dat) his (gen) friend (gen sg) - for book (nom sg) X-gives-Y-to-Z-as a gift (perf 3s 3s 3s)
 Dato [apparently] gave his friend a book as a gift.

The following examples illustrate how perfect screeve verb forms are constructed.

	root	future	past participle	masdar	perfect	
C1	-ბან- -ban-	დაბანს <i>da-ban-s</i>			დაუბანია <i>da-u-ban-i-a</i>	'he washed it'
C1	-გ- -g-	გაიგებს <i>ga-i-g-eb-s</i>			გაუგია <i>ga-u-g-i-a</i>	'he heard it'
C1	-ქეთ- -ket-	გააქეთებს <i>ga-a-ket-eb-s</i>			გაუქეთებია <i>ga-u-ket-eb-i-a</i>	'he did it'
C1	-მალ- -mal-	დამალავს <i>da-mal-av-s</i>			დაუმალავს <i>da-u-mal-av-s</i>	'he hid it'
C1	-ცვ- -tsv-	ჩაიცვამს <i>cha-i-tsv-am-s</i>			ჩაუცვამს <i>cha-u-tsv-am-s</i>	'he dressed'
C2 (abs)	-წერ- -ts'er-	დაიწერება <i>da-i-ts'er-eb-a</i>	დაწერილი <i>da-ts'er-il-i</i>		დაწერილა <i>da-ts'er-il-a</i>	'it was written'
C2 (abs)	-ბად- -bad-	დაიბადება <i>da-i-bad-eb-a</i>	დაბადებული <i>da-bad-eb-ul-i</i>		დაბადებულა <i>da-bad-eb-ul-a</i>	'he was born'
C2 (abs)	-ცდ- -tsd-	შეცდება <i>she-tsd-eb-a</i>	შემცდარი <i>she-m-tsd-ar-i</i>		შემცდარა <i>she-m-tsd-ar-a</i>	'he erred'
C2 (abs)	-მალ- -mal-	დაიმალება <i>da-i-mal-eb-a</i>	დამალული <i>da-mal-ul-i</i>		დამალულა <i>da-mal-ul-a</i>	'he hid himself'
C2 (rel)	-მალ- -mal-	დაემალება <i>da-e-mal-eb-a</i>		დამალვა <i>da-mal-v-a</i>	დამალვია <i>da-mal-v-i-a</i>	'he hid from him'
C3	-თამაშ- -tamash-	ითამაშებს <i>i-tamash-eb-s</i>			უთამაშ(ნ)ია <i>u-tamash-(n)-i-a</i>	'he played'
C4	-ყავ- -q'av-	ეყოლება <i>e-q'ol-eb-a</i>		ყოლა <i>q'ol-a</i>	ჰყოლია <i>h-q'ol-i-a</i>	'he had him'

Perfect screeve examples

Here are some basic sentences in the perfect.

Class	Aorist	Perfect
C1	კაცმა დაწერა. <i>k'ats-ma da-ts'er-a.</i> The man wrote it.	კაცს დაუწერია. <i>k'ats-s da-u-ts'er-i-a.</i> The man [apparently] wrote it.
C1	ქალმა დახატა. <i>kal-ma da-khat'-a.</i> The woman painted it.	ქალს დაუხატავს. <i>kal-s da-u-khat'-av-s.</i> The woman [apparently] painted it.
C1	დედამ გააკეთა. <i>deda-m ga-a-k'et-a.</i> Mother did it.	დედას გაუკეთებია. <i>deda-s ga-u-k'et-eb-i-a.</i> Mother [apparently] did it.
C2 (abs)	ძმა დარჩა. <i>dzma da-rch-a.</i> The brother stayed.	ძმა დარჩენილა. <i>dzma da-rchen-il-a.</i> The brother [apparently] stayed.
C2 (rel)	გოგო დაეხმარა. <i>gogo da-e-khmar-a.</i> The girl helped him.	გოგო დახმარებია. <i>gogo da-khmar-eb-i-a.</i> The girl [apparently] helped him
C3	ბიჭმა ითამაშა. <i>bich'-ma i-tamash-a.</i> The boy played.	ბიჭს უთამაშ(ნ)ია. <i>bich'-s u-tamash-(n)-i-a.</i> The boy [apparently] played.

The Pluperfect Screeve

Usage

The pluperfect screeve (also known as the second evidential or resultative) describes completed actions in the past that have occurred earlier than the main time reference, which is also in the past. This corresponds to the English pluperfect tense in 'he had seen him before the lesson started'.

The main purpose of this screeve in Modern Georgian, however, is to act as a past for the subjunctive screeves (the present and future subjunctives, and the optative), as in the following example, where the optative is replaced by the pluperfect when the time reference shifts to the past:

<p>დროზე უნდა წავიდე. <i>dro-ze unda c'a-vid-e-s.</i> time (dat sg) - on [particle] X-leaves (opt 3s) He must leave on time.</p>	→	<p>დროზე უნდა წასულიყო. <i>dro-ze unda c'a-sul-i-q'-o.</i> time (dat sg) - on [particle] X-leaves (plup 3s) He had to leave on time.</p>
--	---	--

There is also a rare form of this screeve without a preverb (not described here) that expresses uncompleted action.

Inversion occurs in the pluperfect screeve for all verbs, except those in Class 2.

Formation

The form of the Class 1 pluperfect screeve with a third person direct object is shown in the table below, and ends in -ა -a or -ო -o (occasionally -ებინა -eb-in-a). Class 3 pluperfect formation is similar, and ends in -ა -a (sometimes -ნა -n-a).

The form of the pluperfect screeve of Class 2 verbs depends on whether or not the verb makes reference to an indirect object. If it does not, as with the 'absolute' verbs, the pluperfect stem is the same as the past participle less the final -ი -i. The subject of these verbs is marked by suffixing forms of the aorist screeve of the verb 'to be' (with the prefix ვ- v- in the first person). Where an indirect object is referenced (the 'relative' Class 2 verbs), the pluperfect stem is the same as the masdar less the final -ა -a, extended by -ოდ -od or -ებოდ -eb-od.

The pluperfect of Class 4 verbs is also based on the masdar, with the screeve ending -ოდა -od-a.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the pluperfect screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted). Where four affixes are noted in slot 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third persons singular, and the third person plural, respectively.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+2	+4	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PSF	SA infix	SM	PM	Plur
C1 ¹	PVB	PM	ɟ- e-	ROOT	-∅ -ɟɔ̃ -eb ²	-∅ -oɓ -in	-∅	-s -a -m -o -s -a	(-m -t)
C2 (abs)	PAST PARTICIPLE STEM ³					-∅	-o -i	-ɟsɔ̃ -q'av-i -ɟsɔ̃ -q'av-i -ɟm -q'-o -ɟɟɓɓɓ -q'v-nen	
C2 (rel)	PVB	PM	∅-	MASDAR STEM	-∅ -ɟɔ̃ -eb	-mɔ̃ -od	-o -i -o -i -∅ -∅	-∅ -∅ -s -a -ɓɓɓ -nen	
C3	∅-		ɟ- e-	ROOT	-∅	-∅ -ɓ -n	-∅	-s -a	
C4 ⁴	PVB	∅-	MASDAR STEM	-∅ -ɟɔ̃ -eb	-mɔ̃ -od	-∅	-s -a		

¹ third person direct object assumed

² PV s- a- → ɟ- e- and PSF -ɟɔ̃ -eb unchanged

³ first person prefix ɟ- v- occurs *after* any preverb

⁴ third person direct object assumed

Pluperfect screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Dative	Nominative	-mɔ̃s -tvis
Class 2 (abs)	Nominative	(—)	—
Class 2 (rel)	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Dative	(Nominative)	-mɔ̃s -tvis
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Pluperfect screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal, pre-radical vowels, screeve and plural markers in the pluperfect screeve verb that mark the person and number of the 'logical' subject, direct and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1, 3		CLASS 2 (abs)	CLASS 2 (rel)		CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	SUBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	მე — <i>m-e</i> —	ვ — ე <i>v- -e</i>	ვ — იყავი <i>v- -i-q'av-i</i>	ვ — ი <i>v- -i</i>	მ — <i>m-</i>	მ — <i>m-</i>	ვ — ი <i>v- -i</i>
2s	გე — <i>g-e</i> —	— ე <i>-e</i>	— იყავი <i>-i-q'av-i</i>	— ი <i>-i</i>	გ — <i>g-</i>	გ — <i>g-</i>	— ი <i>-i</i>
3s	ე — <i>Ø-e</i> —	— ა, -ო <i>-a, -o</i>	— იყო <i>-i-q'o</i>	— ა <i>-a</i>	ჰ- (ს-, Ø-) — <i>h- (s-, Ø-)-</i>	ჰ- (ს-, Ø-) — <i>h- (s-, Ø-)-</i>	— ა <i>-a</i>
1p	გვე — <i>gv-e</i> —	ვ — ეთ <i>v- -e-t</i>	ვ — იყავი <i>v- -i-q'av-i</i>	ვ — ით <i>v- -i-t</i>	გვ — <i>gv-</i>	გვ — <i>gv-</i>	ვ — ით <i>v- -i-t</i>
2p	გე — თ <i>g-e- -t</i>	— ეთ <i>-e-t</i>	— იყავით <i>-i-q'av-i-t</i>	— ით <i>-i-t</i>	გ — თ <i>g- -t</i>	გ — თ <i>g- -t</i>	— ით <i>-i-t</i>
3p	ე — თ <i>Ø-e- -t</i>	— ა, -ო <i>-a, -o</i>	— იყვნენ <i>-i-q'v-nen</i>	— ნენ <i>-nen</i>	ჰ- (ს-, Ø-) — <i>h- (s-, Ø-)-</i>	ჰ- (ს-, Ø-) — თ <i>h- (s-, Ø-)- -t</i>	— ა <i>-a</i>

Pluperfect screeve subject and object marking

Note that there is no plural marker for the combination of a third person plural subject and a first or second person singular direct object.

Illustrations

The basic pattern is illustrated by the Class 1 verb დაწერა *da-e-c'er-a* 'he had written it' (third person direct object).

PERSON	PLUPERFECT SCREEVE		
1s	დამწერა	<i>da-m-e-c'er-a</i>	'I had written it'
2s	დაგწერა	<i>da-g-e-c'er-a</i>	'you had written it'
3s	დაწერა	<i>da-e-c'er-a</i>	'he had written it'
1p	დაგვეწერა	<i>da-gv-e-c'er-a</i>	'we had written it'
2p	დაგწერათ	<i>da-g-e-c'er-a-t</i>	'you had written it'
3p	დაწერათ	<i>da-e-c'er-a-t</i>	'they had written it'

Pluperfect screeve paradigm

Examples of verbs incorporating a direct object in other than the third person are ვყვარებოდი *v-q'var-eb-od-i-t* 'he had loved us', ვყარებოდი *q'var-eb-od-i* 'he had loved you' or 'they had loved you' (note the absence of a plural marker in the latter), and ვყარებოდით *q'var-eb-od-i-t* 'he had loved you (plural)' or 'they had loved you (plural)'.

This screeve exhibits inversion (except for Class 2 verbs), as in the following example.

მზარეული სტუმრებს სადილს უმზადებს.
mzareul-i st'umr-eb-s sadil-s u-mzad-eb-s.
 cook (nom sg) guest (dat pl) meal (dat sg) X-
 prepares-Y-for-Z (pres 3s 3s 3s)
 The cook prepares a meal for the guests.

→ მზარეულს სადილი სტუმრებისთვის მოემზადებინა.
mzareul-s sadil-i st'umr-eb-is-tvis mo-e-mzad-eb-in-a.
 cook (dat sg) meal (nom sg) guest (gen pl) - for X-prepares-
 Y-for-Z (plup 3s 3s 3s)
 The cook had prepared a meal for the guests.

In the present screeve of this Class 1 verb, the nominative case marks the subject ('the cook'), while the dative marks both the direct object ('a meal') and the indirect object ('the guests', which is also referenced in the verb by the pre-radical vowel უ- *u-*). In the pluperfect, the process of inversion results in the subject of the English sentence being marked in the Georgian equivalent by the dative case (which is also referenced in the verb by the pre-radical vowel ე- *e-*). The logical object in the pluperfect is marked by the nominative, while the indirect object is marked by the postposition -თვის *-tvis* ('for').

The following example provides a further illustration of the case marking pattern of Class 1 verbs in the pluperfect screeve (the root -ჩუქ- **-čuk-** means 'to give someone something as a gift').

მინდოდა, რომ დათოს თავისი მეგობრისთვის წიგნი ეჩუქებინა.

m-i-nd-od-a, rom dato-s tavis-i megobr-is-tvis c'ign-i e-čuk-eb-in-a.

X-wants-Y (imp 1s 3s) that dato (dat) his (gen) friend (gen sg) - for book (nom sg) X-gives-Y-to-Z-as a gift (plup 3s 3s 3s)

I wanted Dato to give his friend a book as a gift.

The following examples illustrate how pluperfect screeve verb forms are constructed:

	root	future	past participle	masdar	perfect	
C1	-ბან- -ban-	დაბანს <i>da-ban-s</i>			დაებანა <i>da-e-ban-a</i>	'he had washed it'
C1	-გ- -g-	გაიგებს <i>ga-i-g-eb-s</i>			გაეგო <i>ga-e-g-o</i>	'he had heard it'
C1	-კეთ- -k'et-	გაკეთებს <i>ga-a-k'et-eb-s</i>			გაკეთებინა <i>ga-e-k'et-eb-in-a</i>	'he had done it'
C1	-მალ- -mal-	დამალავს <i>da-mal-av-s</i>			დაემალა <i>da-e-mal-a</i>	'he had hidden it'
C1	-ცვ- -cv-	ჩაიცვამს <i>ča-i-cv-am-s</i>			ჩაეცვა <i>ča-e-cv-a</i>	'he had dressed'
C2 (abs)	-წერ- -c'er-	დაიწერება <i>da-i-c'er-eb-a</i>	დაწერილი <i>da-c'er-il-i</i>		დაწერილიყო <i>da-c'er-il-i-q'o</i>	'it had been written'
C2 (abs)	-ბად- -bad-	დაიბადება <i>da-i-bad-eb-a</i>	დაბადებული <i>da-bad-eb-ul-i</i>		დაბადებულიყო <i>da-bad-eb-ul-i-q'o</i>	'he had been born'
C2 (abs)	-ცდ- -cd-	შეცდება <i>še-cd-eb-a</i>	შემცდარი <i>še-m-cd-ar-i</i>		შემცდარიყო <i>še-m-cd-ar-i-q'o</i>	'he had erred'
C2 (abs)	-მალ- -mal-	დაიმალება <i>da-i-mal-eb-a</i>	დამალული <i>da-mal-ul-i</i>		დამალულიყო <i>da-mal-ul-i-q'o</i>	'he had hidden himself'
C2 (rel)	-მალ- -mal-	დაემალება <i>da-e-mal-eb-a</i>		დამალვა <i>da-mal-v-a</i>	დამალოდა <i>da-mal-od-a</i>	'he had hidden himself from him'
C3	-თამაშ- -tamaš-	ითამაშებს <i>i-tamaš-eb-s</i>			ეთამაშა <i>e-tamaš-a</i>	'he had played'
C4	-ყავ- -q'av-	ეყოლება <i>e-q'ol-eb-a</i>		ყოლა <i>q'ol-a</i>	ჰყოლოდა <i>h-q'ol-od-a</i>	'he had had him'

Pluperfect screeve examples

Here are some basic sentences in the perfect.

Class	Aorist	Pluperfect
C1	კაცმა დაწერა. <i>k'ac-ma da-c'er-a.</i> The man wrote it.	კაცს დაეწერა. <i>k'ac-s da-e-c'er-a.</i> The man had written it.
C1	ქალმა დახატა. <i>kal-ma da-xat'-a.</i> The woman painted it.	ქალს დაეხატა. <i>kal-s da-e-xat'-a.</i> The woman had painted it.
C1	დედამ გააკეთა. <i>deda-m ga-a-k'et-a.</i> Mother did it.	დედას გაეკეთებინა. <i>deda-s ga-e-k'et-eb-in-a.</i> Mother had done it.
C2 (abs)	ძმა დარჩა. <i>žma da-rč-a.</i> The brother stayed.	ძმა დარჩენილიყო. <i>žma da-rčen-il-iq'o.</i> The brother had stayed.
C2 (rel)	გოგო დაეხმარა. <i>gogo da-e-xmar-a.</i> The girl helped him.	გოგო დახმარებოდა. <i>gogo da-xmar-eb-od-a.</i> The girl had helped him.

The Perfect Subjunctive Screeve

Usage

The perfect subjunctive screeve (also known as the third subjunctive) is rarely encountered in Modern Georgian. It is used for hypothetical actions in the past and for the formal expression of wishes and desires. It occurs in forms with and without a preverb.

Inversion occurs in the perfect subjunctive screeve for all verbs, except those in Class 2.

Formation

The form of the Class 1 perfect subjunctive screeve with a third person direct object is shown in the table below, and ends in -ას -as or -ოს -os (occasionally -ებინოს -eb-in-o-s). Class 3 perfect subjunctive formation is similar, and ends in -ოს -os (sometimes -ნოს -n-o-s).

The form of the perfect subjunctive screeve of Class 2 verbs depends on whether or not the verb makes reference to an indirect object. If it does not, as with the 'absolute' verbs, the perfect subjunctive stem is the same as the past participle less the final -ო -i. The subject of these verbs is marked by suffixing forms of the optative screeve of the verb 'to be' (with the prefix ვ- v- in the first person). Where an indirect object is referenced (the 'relative' Class 2 verbs), the perfect subjunctive stem is the same as the masdar less the final -ა -a, extended by -ოდ -od or -ებოდ -eb-od.

The perfect subjunctive of Class 4 verbs is also based on the masdar, with the screeve ending -ოდებს -od-e-s.

The table below provides a simplified summary of the formation of the perfect subjunctive screeve for the various verb classes (some minor exceptions are not noted). Where four affixes are noted in slot 6, these correspond to the first, second, and third persons singular, and the third person plural, respectively.

	-3	-2	-1	0	+2	+4	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PSF	SA infix	SM	PM	Plur
C1 ¹	PVB	PM	ვ- e-	ROOT	-∅	-∅	-ას -a -ოს -o	-ს -s	(-თ -t)
					-ებ -eb ²	-ინ -in	-ო -o		
C2 (abs)	PAST PARTICIPLE STEM ³				-∅	-∅	-ო -i	-ყო -q'o -ყო -q'o -ყოს -q'os -ყონ -q'on	
C2 (rel)	PVB	PM	∅-	MASDAR STEM	-∅ -ებ -eb	-ოდ -od	-ე -e -ე -e -ე -e -∅	-∅ -∅ -ს -s -ნენ -nen	
C3	∅-		ვ- e-	ROOT	-∅	-∅ -ნ -n	-ო -o	-ს -s	
C4 ⁴	PVB		∅-	MASDAR STEM	-∅ -ებ -eb	-ოდ -od	-ე -e	-ს -s	

¹ third person direct object assumed

² PV ა- a- → ვ- e- and PSF -ებ -eb unchanged

³ first person prefix ვ- v- occurs *after* any preverb

⁴ third person direct object assumed

Perfect Subjunctive screeve formation

Case Marking

The pattern of case marking is summarized in the following table.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
Class 1	Dative	Nominative	-თვის <i>-tvis</i>
Class 2 (abs)	Nominative	(—)	—
Class 2 (rel)	Nominative	(—)	Dative
Class 3	Dative	(Nominative)	-თვის <i>-tvis</i>
Class 4	Dative	Nominative	—

Perfect Subjunctive screeve case marking

Subject / Object Marking

The pronominal, pre-radical vowels, screeve and plural markers in the perfect subjunctive screeve verb that mark the 'logical' person and number of the subject, direct and indirect objects are detailed in the following table.

PERSON	CLASS 1, 3		CLASS 2 (abs)	CLASS 2 (rel)		CLASS 4	
	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	SUBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
1s	მ-ე- — <i>m-e- —</i>	ვ- — ე <i>v- — e</i>	ვ- — იყავი <i>v- — -i-q'+av-i</i>	ვ- — ი <i>v- — -i</i>	მ- — <i>m- —</i>	მ- — <i>m- —</i>	ვ- — ი <i>v- — -i</i>
2s	გ-ე- — <i>g-e- —</i>	— ე <i>— e</i>	— იყავი <i>— -i-q'+av-i</i>	— ი <i>— -i</i>	გ- — <i>g- —</i>	გ- — <i>g- —</i>	— ი <i>— -i</i>
3s	∅-ე- — <i>∅-e- —</i>	— ა, -ო <i>— a, -o</i>	— იყო <i>— -i-q'-o</i>	— ა <i>— -a</i>	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — <i>h- (s-, ∅-) —</i>	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — <i>h- (s-, ∅-) —</i>	— ა <i>— -a</i>
1p	გვ-ე- — <i>gv-e- —</i>	ვ- — ეთ <i>v- — -e-t</i>	ვ- — იყავით <i>v- — -i-q'+av-i</i>	ვ- — ით <i>v- — -i-t</i>	გვ- — <i>gv- —</i>	გვ- — <i>gv- —</i>	ვ- — ით <i>v- — -i-t</i>
2p	გ-ე- — თ <i>g-e- — -t</i>	— ეთ <i>— -e-t</i>	— იყავით <i>— -i-q'+av-i-t</i>	— ით <i>— -i-t</i>	გ- — თ <i>g- — -t</i>	გ- — თ <i>g- — -t</i>	— ით <i>— -i-t</i>
3p	∅-ე- — თ <i>∅-e- — -t</i>	— ა, -თ <i>— a, --t</i>	— იყვნენ <i>— -i-q'+v-nen</i>	— ნენ <i>— -nen</i>	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — <i>h- (s-, ∅-) —</i>	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) — თ <i>h- (s-, ∅-) — -t</i>	— ა <i>— -a</i>

Perfect Subjunctive screeve subject and object marking

Note that there is no plural marker for the combination of a third person plural subject and a first or second person singular direct object.

Illustrations

The basic pattern is illustrated by the Class 1 verb დაეწეროს *da-e-ts'er-o-s* 'may he write it' (third person direct object).

PERSON	PLUPERFECT SCREEVE		
1s	დამეწეროს	<i>da-m-e-ts'er-o-s</i>	'may I write it'
2s	დაგეწეროს	<i>da-g-e-ts'er-o-s</i>	'may you write it'
3s	დაეწეროს	<i>da-e-ts'er-o-s</i>	'may he write it'
1p	დაგვეწეროს	<i>da-gv-e-ts'er-o-s</i>	'may we write it'
2p	დაგეწეროთ	<i>da-g-e-ts'er-o-t</i>	'may you write it'
3p	დაეწეროთ	<i>da-e-ts'er-o-t</i>	'may they write it'

Perfect Subjunctive screeve paradigm

The perfect subjunctive screeve often occurs in wishes such as the following.

მშვიდობა ყოფილიყოს ჩვენს ქვეყანაში!

mshvidoba q'+op-il-i-q'os chven-s kveq'ana-shi!

peace (nom sg) X-is (perf subj 3s) our (dat) country (dat) - in

May there be peace in our country!

Indirect Object Marking

An Overview

Marking strategies

The Georgian verb uses a combination of pronominal marker, pre-radical vowel and plural marker to reference indirect objects, as summarized in the table below. For convenience, these sets of markers will be referred to as the *ჰ-/h-*, *ჲ-/u-*, *ე-/e-* and *ა-/a-* series as shown. The pronominal markers used are identical in all series, with the exception of the third person. The *ჰ-/h-* series differs from the other three in that it makes no explicit use of the pre-radical vowel to signal the indirect relation.

IO	ჰ-/h- series		→	ჲ-/u- series	ე-/e- series	ა-/a- series	Plur (all)
	PM	PV		PM	PV		
1s	ბ- m-	∅-	ბ- m-	ო- i-	ე- e-	ა- a-	-∅
2s	გ- g-		გ- g-				
3s	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) h- (ს-, ∅-)		∅-	ჲ- u-			
1p	ბბ- gv-		ბბ- gv-	ო- i-			
2p	გ- g-		გ- g-				
3p	ჰ- (ს-, ∅-) h- (ს-, ∅-)		∅-	ჲ- u-			-თ -t

Marking third person grammatical indirect objects

Plural marking: Summary

The plurality of a third person indirect object is not always marked in the verb; for example, the verb *გაუკეთა* *ga-u-k'et-a* may be translated as 'he did it for him' or as 'he did it for them'. There are, however, some circumstances where a third person plural indirect relation is explicitly marked by the plural marker -თ -t. This can occur in the perfect series of Class 1 and 3 verbs, and with Class 4 and stative verbs, as in the following illustrations.

დაუწერიათ
da-u-c'er-i-a-t
 Y-writes-X (perf 3p 3s)
 They wrote it.

ეცხოვრათ
e-cxovr-a-t
 Y-lives (plup 3p)
 They had lived.

ჰყავთ
h-q'av-t
 Y-has-X(animate) (pres 3p 3s)
 They have him

აცვიათ
a-cv-i-a-t
 Y-wears-X (stat pres 3p 3s)
 They wear it.

Note that in all these 'inverted' examples the marked third person plural 'grammatical' object of the indirect relation is, characteristically, the 'logical' subject.

Indirect object marking: Details

The following table provides a concise summary for reference purposes of when and how third person grammatical indirect objects (including 'logical' subjects) are explicitly marked in the Georgian verb. Note that the 3-/h- series third person pronominal marker Ø- is frequently found in place of 3- h- or ʌ- s- in the current language. 'C3 derivatives' are relative C2 verbs that have been derived from corresponding C3 verbs. Some marginal issues have been omitted from this summary.

3p IO marking	screeve series	verb class	valency	note	
3- h-	S1 (present)	C3 relatives	2	<u>1</u>	
	S1, S2	C1	3	<u>2</u>	
		C3 relatives	2	<u>3</u>	
		C2 relatives	2	<u>4</u>	
			3	<u>5</u>	
		S3	C2 relatives	2	<u>6</u>
			3	<u>7</u>	
		C3 derivatives	2	<u>8</u>	
3- — -თ h- — -t	S1 (present)	statives	2	<u>9</u>	
		C4	2	<u>10</u>	
	S3		2	<u>11</u>	
ჟ- u-	S1 (future), S2	C3 relative	2	<u>12</u>	
	S1, S2	C1	3	<u>13</u>	
		C3 relative	2	<u>14</u>	
		C2 relative (C3 derivatives)	2	<u>15</u>	
ჟ- — -თ u- — -t	S1 (present)	statives	2	<u>16</u>	
			3	<u>17</u>	
	S1	C4	2	<u>18</u>	
	S3 (perfect)	C1	2	<u>19</u>	
		C3	1	<u>20</u>	
			1/2	<u>21</u>	
j- e-	S1 (future), S2	statives	1	<u>22</u>	
	S1, S2	C2 relatives	2	<u>23</u>	
		C3 derivatives	2	<u>24</u>	
			2/3	<u>25</u>	
j- — -თ e- — -t	S1 (present)	C4	1	<u>26</u>	
			2	<u>27</u>	
	S1 (future), S2		2	<u>28</u>	
		statives	2/3	<u>29</u>	
	S1, S2	C4	2	<u>30</u>	
		S3 (pluperfect, perfect subjunctive)	C1	2	<u>31</u>
			C3	1	<u>32</u>
				1/2	<u>33</u>
j- a-	S1, S2	C1	3	<u>34</u>	
		C2 relatives	2	<u>35</u>	
j- — -თ a- — -t	S1 (present)	statives	2	<u>36</u>	
	S1	C4	2	<u>37</u>	

Notes

In these illustrations the grammatical indirect object is denoted by 'Y'.

3-/h-series IO markers (unmarked 3p)

These verbs use the 3-/h-series markers to reference a grammatical indirect object, the plurality of which is not marked in third person.

[1] Class 3 relative ჰყარაულობს *h-q'araul-ob-s* X-stands-guard-over-Y (pres 3s 3s) < C3 ყარაულობს *q'araul-ob-s* X-stands-guard (pres 3s). (Cf. [12] below.) [↑]

[2] Series 1 მოპარავს *mo-h-p'ar-av-s* X-steals-Z-from-Y (fut 3s 3s 3s), S2 მოპარა *mo-h-p'ar-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s 3s) < S1 მოპარავს *mo-p'ar-av-s* X-steals-Z (fut 3s 3s). [↑]

[3] Class 3 relatives: შესძახებს *she-s-žax-eb-s* X-calls-out-to-Y (fut 3s 3s) < იძახის *i-žax-i-s* X-calls-Z (pres 3s 3s); დასცინის *da-s-cin-i-s* X-laughs-at-Y (pres 3s 3s) < C3 იცინის *i-cin-i-s* X-laughs (pres 3s). Note the preverb in the present screeve of the latter relative verb, the corresponding future form of which is დასცინებს *da-s-cin-eb-s*. [↑]

[4] Although the Series 1 verb შეხვდება *še-xvd-eb-a* X-meets-Y (fut 3s 3s) has no explicit indirect object marker, it is, in fact, a Class 2(a) relative verb, and can reference a dative noun phrase or pronoun as in the following illustration:

ის მას შე[ჰ]ხვდება.
*is ma-s še-[*h]-xvd-eb-a*.
he (nom) him (dat) X-meets-Y (fut 3s 3s)
He will meet him.

This is an example of the frequent omission in the current language of an earlier explicit third person 3-/h- marker. An S2 form of the verb is შეხვდა *še-xvd-a* X-meets-Y (aor 3s 3s). [↑]

[5] Some Class 2 relative verbs can reference two dative indirect objects, as the trivalent C2(c) S1 example შეჰპირდება *še-h-p'ir-d-eb-a* X_{NOM}-promises-Z_{DAT}-to-Y_{DAT} (fut 3s 3s 3s), S2 შეჰპირდა *še-h-p'ir-d-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s 3s), < C1 აპირებს *a-p'ir-eb-s* X-intends-Z (pres 3s 3s). (See also [7] below.) [↑]

[6] Class 2 relative verbs also use the 3-/h-series markers to reference indirect objects in the perfect series, as in these examples: C2(a) relative გასთბობია *ga-s-tb-ob-i-a* X-is-warmed-for-Y (perf 3s 3s), გასთბობდა *ga-s-tb-ob-od-a* ditto (plup 3s 3s), გასთბობდეს *ga-s-tb-ob-od-e-s* ditto (perf subj 3s 3s), < C2(a) relative გაუთბება *ga-u-tb-eb-a*, ditto (fut 3s 3s), < C1 გაათბობს *ga-a-tb-ob-s* X-warms-Z (fut 3s 3s); C2(b) relative დაჰკარგია *da-h-k'arg-i-a* X-goes-lost-on-Y (perf 3s 3s), etc. < C2(b) relative დაეკარგება *da-e-k'arg-eb-a*, ditto (fut 3s 3s), < C1 დაკარგავს *da-k'arg-av-s* X-loses-Z (fut 3s 3s); C2(c) relative დაჰკავშირებია *da-h-k'avšir-eb-i-a* X-gets-in-touch-with-Y (perf 3s 3s), etc., < C2(c) relative დაუკავშირდება *da-u-k'avšir-d-eb-a* ditto (fut 3s 3s), < C1 დააკავშირებს *da-a-k'avšir-eb-s* X-contacts-Z (fut 3s 3s). [↑]

[7] Examples of such rare trivalent Series 3 verbs are the C2(c) relatives შეჰპირებია *še-h-p'ir-eb-i-a* X_{NOM}-promises-Z_{DAT}-to-Y_{DAT} (perf 3s 3s 3s), შეჰპირებოდა *še-h-p'ir-eb-od-a* ditto (plup 3s 3s 3s), შეჰპირებოდეს *še-h-p'ir-eb-od-e-s* ditto (perf subj 3s 3s 3s). (See also [5] above.) [↑]

[8] Class 2(b) relative და(ჰ)ლაპარაკებია *da-(h-)lap'arak'-eb-i-a* X-speaks-to-Y (perf 3s 3s), და(ჰ)ლაპარაკებოდა *da-(h-)lap'arak'-eb-od-a* ditto (plup 3s 3s), და(ჰ)ლაპარაკებოდეს *da-(h-)lap'arak'-eb-od-e-s* ditto (perf subj 3s 3s), < C2(b) relative დაელაპარაკება *da-e-lap'arak'-eb-a* ditto (fut 3s 3s), < C3 ლაპარაკობს *lap'arak'-ob-s* X-speaks (pres 3s). These derived C2(b) relatives do not have trivalent forms due to the perfective aspect of these verbs. (See also [21] below.) [↑]

3-/h-series IO markers (marked 3p)

These verbs use the 3-/h-series markers to reference a grammatical indirect object, the plurality of which is marked in the third person by the affix -თ -t.

[9] An example of a present stative is ჰყვია *h-kv-i-a* Y-is-called-X (stat pres 3s 3s). Note that some monovalent statives incorporate a functionless pronominal marker 3- h- that does not refer to an indirect object (cf. S1 [ჰ]კიდია *[h]-k'id-i-a* X-is-hanging (stat pres 3s). [↑]

[10] Class 4 verbs in Series 1 are inverted verbs in which the indirect object is the 'logical' subject, e.g., ჰყავს *h-q'av-s* Y-has-X(animate) (pres 3s 3s). (For S3 forms see [11] below.); სძულს *s-žul-s* Y-hates-X (pres 3s 3s). [↑]

[11] Among the Class 4 verbs with inversion in Series 3 are ჰყოლია *h-q'ol-i-a* Y-has-X(animate) (perf 3s 3s), ჰყოლოდა *h-q'ol-od-a* ditto (plup 3s 3s), ჰყოლოდეს *h-q'ol-od-e-s* ditto (perf subj 3s 3s). (For S1 pres forms see [10] above.); ჰყვარებია *h-q'var-eb-i-a* Y-loves-X (perf 3s 3s), etc. (For S1 present see [18] below.) [↑]

უ-/u-series IO markers (unmarked 3p)

These verbs use the უ-/u-series markers to reference a grammatical indirect object, the plurality of which is not marked in third person.

[12] Class 3 relative უყარაულებს *u-q'araul-eb-s* X-stands-guard-over-Y (fut 3s 3s), უყარაულა *u-q'araul-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s), < C3 rel ჰყარაულობს *h-q'araul-ob-s* ditto (pres 3s 3s), < C3 ყარაულობს *q'araul-ob-s* X-stands-guard (pres 3s). (Cf. [1] above.) [↑]

[13] Class 1 S1 გაუკეთებს *ga-u-k'et-eb-s* X-does-Z-for-Y (fut 3s 3s 3s), S2 გაუკეთა *ga-u-k'et-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s 3s). [↑]

[14] Class 3 relative S1 გაუღიმებს *ga-u-gim-eb-s* X-smiles-at-Y (fut 3s 3s), S2 გაუღიმა *ga-u-gim-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s), < C3 S1 იღიმის *i-gim-i-s* X-smiles (pres 3s) (See [20] below.); უყვირებს *u-q'vir-eb-s* X-shouts-at-Y (pres 3s 3s), უყვირა *u-q'vir-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s), < C3 იყვირებს *i-q'vir-eb-s* X-shouts (fut 3s). (See [15], [20] below.) [↑]

[15] Class 2(c) relative S1 აუყვირდება *a-u-q'vir-d-eb-a* X-begins-to-shout-at-Y (fut 3s 3s), S2 აუყვირდა *a-u-q'vir-d-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s), < C3 relative უყვირის *u-q'vir-i-s* X-shouts-at-Y (pres 3s 3s), < C3 ყვირის *q'vir-i-s* X-shouts (pres 3s 3s). (See [14] above, [20] below.) [↑]

უ-/u-series IO markers (marked 3p)

These verbs use the უ-/u-series markers to reference a grammatical indirect object, the plurality of which is marked in the third person by the affix -t.

[16] An example of a bivalent stative is უკეთია *u-k'et-i-a* Y-has-X(glasses, ring, etc.)-on (pres 3s 3s). See 'Stative Verbs'. [↑]

[17] Trivalent statives are uncommon, one example being ურჩევნია *u-rčevn-i-a* Y_{DAT}-prefers-X_{NOM}-to-Z_{DAT} (pres 3s 3s 3s), e.g.

სტუმრებს ჩაი ყავას ურჩევნიათ.

st'umr-eb-s čai q'ava-s u-rčevn-i-a-t.

guest (dat pl) tea (nom sg) coffee (dat sg) Y_{DAT}-prefers-X_{NOM}-to-Z_{DAT} (stat pres 3p 3s 3s)

The guests prefer tea to coffee. [↑]

[18] უყვარს *u-q'var-s* Y-loves-X (pres 3s 3s) is an example of an inverted Class 4 verb in which the indirect object marker points to the 'logical' subject, e.g.,

ჩვენ ყველას გვიყვარს ჩვენი სამშობლო.

čven q'vela-s gv-i-q'var-s čven-i sa+m+šob+l+o.

we (dat) all (dat) Y-loves-X (pres 1p 3s) our (nom) homeland (nom sg)

We all love our homeland.

(For perfect series forms see [11] above.) [↑]

[19] The Class 1 perfect screeve დაუწერია *da-u-c'er-i-a* Y-writes-X (perf 3s 3s) uses the indirect object marker უ-/u- to reference the 'logical' subject. [↑]

[20] Class 3 perfect screeves include უცხოვრია *u-cxovr-i-a* Y-lives (perf 3s) < C3 ცხოვრობს *cxovr-ob-s* ditto (pres 3s); უყარაულ(ნ)ია *u-q'araul-(n)-i-a* Y-stands-guard (perf 3s) (See [1], [12] above.); გაუღიმა *ga-u-gim-i-a* Y-smiles (perf 3s) (See [14] above.); უყვირ(ნ)ია *u-q'vir-(n)-i-a* Y-shouts (perf 3s). (See [14], [15] above.) [↑]

[21] The perfect screeves of a few Class 3 verbs may optionally have a 'logical' object in the nominative, as უთამაშ(ნ)ია *u-tamaš-(n)-i-a* Y-plays(-Z) (perf 3s (3s)), where argument Z could be, for example, the noun 'ball', < C3 თამაშობს *tamaš-ob-s* X-plays (pres 3s). Another such verb is ულაპარაკ(ნ)ია *u-lap'arak'-(n)-i-a* Y-speaks(-Z) (perf 3s (3s)), e.g.

თანამგზავრს დედასთან ულაპარაკია (ბევრი).

tana+m+gzav+r-s deda-s-tan u-lap'arak'-i-a (bevr-i).

fellow-passenger (dat sg) mother (dat sg) – [post] Y-speaks(-Z) (perf 3s (3s)) (much (nom))

Her fellow passenger spoke (a lot) to Mother.

The addition of ბევრი *bevr-i* changes the verb from monovalent to bivalent.

The following table incorporates data given here and in [8] above on C3 and derived C2(b) verbs based on the root -ლაპარაკ- **-lap'arak'**- 'speak':

series	screeve	Class 3	Class 2(b) relative	
S1	present	imperfective		
		ის ლაპარაკობს <i>is lap'arak'-ob-s</i> 'he speaks'	ის ელაპარაკება მას <i>is e-lap'arak'-eb-a ma-s</i> 'he speaks to him'	
S1	future	imperfective	imperfective	perfective
		ის ილაპარაკებს <i>is i-lap'arak'-eb-s</i> 'he will speak'	ის ელაპარაკება მას <i>is e-lap'arak'-eb-a ma-s</i> 'he will speak to him'	ის დაელაპარაკება მას <i>is da-e-lap'arak'-eb-a ma-s</i> 'he will speak to him'
S2	aorist	იმან ილაპარაკა <i>ima-n i-lap'arak'-a</i> 'he spoke'	ის ელაპარაკა მას <i>is e-lap'arak'-a ma-s</i> 'he spoke to him'	ის დაელაპარაკა მას <i>is da-e-lap'arak'-a ma-s</i> 'he spoke to him'
S3	perfect	მას ულაპარაკ(ნ)ია <i>ma-s u-lap'arak'-(n)-i-a</i> 'he spoke'	მას ულაპარაკ(ნ)ია მასთან <i>ma-s u-lap'arak'-(n)-i-a ma-s-tan</i> 'he spoke to him'	ის და(3)ლაპარაკებია მას <i>is da-(h-)lap'arak'-eb-i-a ma-s</i> 'he spoke to him'

[↑]

ე/-e-series IO markers (unmarked 3p)

These verbs use the ე/-e-series markers to reference a grammatical indirect object, the plurality of which is not marked in third person.

[22] Examples are the monovalent statives S1 ეწერება *e-c'er-eb-a* Y-is-written (stat fut 3s) and S2 ეწერა *e-c'er-a* ditto (stat aor 3s) < [ს]წერია [s-]c'er-i-a Y-is-written (stat pres 3s). [↑]

[23] C2(b) rel S1 დამალება *da-e-mal-eb-a* X-hides-from-Y (fut 3s 3s), S2 დამალა *da-e-mal-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s) < C2(b) S1 დაიმალება *da-i-mal-eb-a* X-hides (fut 3s) < C1 S1 დამალავს *da-mal-av-s* X-hides-Y (fut 3s 3s); C2(b) rel S1 მიესალმება *mi-e-salm-eb-a* X-greets-Y (fut 3s 3s), S2 მიესალმა *mi-e-salm-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s) < noun სალამი *salam-i* 'greeting'; C2(b) rel S1 დაეწმინდება *da-e-c'mind-eb-a* Y's-X-clears (fut 3s 3s), S2 დაეწმინდა *da-e-c'mind-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s) < C2(b) S1 დაიწმინდება *da-i-c'mind-eb-a* X-clears < C1 S1 დაწმენდს *da-c'mend-s* X-clears-Y (fut 3s 3s),

ქმრის გადარჩენის ამბის გაგებისას ცოლს სახე დაეწმინდა.

kmr-is ga+da-rčen-is amb-is ga-g-eb-is-a-s col-s saxe da-e-c'mind-a.

husband (gen sg) X-survives (masdar gen) news (gen sg) X-learns (masdar gen case-extension dat) wife (dat sg) face (nom sg) Y's-X-clears (aor 3s 3s)

The woman's face cleared on learning the news of her husband's survival. [↑]

[24] C2(b) rel S1 ეხუმრება *e-xumr-eb-a* X-jokes-with-Y (pres 3s 3s), S2 ეხუმრა *e-xumr-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s) < C3 S1 იხუმრებს *i-xumr-eb-s* X-jokes (fut 3s) < C3 S1 ხუმრობს *xumr-ob-s* X-jokes (pres 3s). [↑]

[25] C2(b) rel S1 ელაპარაკება *e-lap'arak'-eb-a* X-speaks(-Z)-to-Y (pres 3s (3s) 3s), S2 ელაპარაკა *e-lap'arak'-a* ditto (aor 3s (3s) 3s) < C3 S1 ილაპარაკებს *i-lap'arak'-eb-s* X-speaks(-Z) (fut 3s (3s)) < C3 S1 ლაპარაკობს *lap'arak'-ob-s* X-speaks(-Z) (pres 3s (3s)); C2(b) rel S1 ეთამაშება *e-tamaš-eb-a* X-plays(-Z)-with-Y (pres 3s (3s) 3s), S2 ეთამაშა *e-tamaš-a* ditto (aor 3s (3s) 3s) < C3 S1 ითამაშებს *i-tamaš-eb-s* X-plays(-Z) (fut 3s (3s)) < C3 S1 თამაშობს *tamaš-ob-s* X-plays(-Z) (pres 3s (3s)). [↑]

ე/-e-series IO markers (marked 3p)

These verbs use the ე/-e-series markers to reference a grammatical indirect object, the plurality of which is marked in the third person by the affix -თ -t.

[26] ეტირება *e-t'ir-eb-a* Y-feels-like-crying (pres 3s), ეტირებათ *e-t'ir-eb-a-t* ditto (pres 3p) (cf. C3 S1 ტირის *t'ir-is* X-cries (pres 3s)). [↑]

[27] C4 S1 ესმის *e-sm-i-s* Y-hears-X, Y-understands-X (pres 3s 3s). [↑]

[28] C4 S1 მოეწონება *mo-e-c'on-eb-a* Y-likes-X (fut 3s 3s), მოეწონა *mo-e-c'on-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s) < C4 S1 მოსწონს *mo-s-c'on-s* Y-likes X (pres 3s 3s). [↑]

[29] Examples are the bivalent statives ეხატება *e-xat'-eb-a* X-is-painted-on-Y (stat fut 3s 3s), ეხატა *e-xat'-a* ditto (stat aor 3s 3s) < ახატია *a-xat'-i-a* X-is-painted-on-Y (pres 3s 3s); ედება *e-d-eb-a* X-lies-on-Y (fut 3s 3s), ედო *e-d-oditto* (aor 3s 3s) < ადევს *a-dev-s* X-lies-on-Y (pres 3s 3s); and the trivalent stative ერჩივნება *e-rčivn-eb-a* Y-prefers-X(-to-Z_{DAT}) (fut 3s 3s (3s)), ერჩივნა *e-rčivn-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s (3s)) < ურჩევნია *u-rčevn-i-a* Y-prefers-X(-to-Z_{DAT}) (pres 3s 3s (3s)). [↑]

[30] C4 S1 ეძნელება *e-žnel-eb-a* X-is-difficult-for-Y (pres 3s 3s), ეძნელა *e-žnel-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s) < adjective ძნელი 'difficult'. [↑]

[31] C1 S3 დაეწერა *da-e-c'er-a* Y-writes-X (plup 3s 3s), დაეწეროს *da-e-c'er-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s 3s) < C1 S1 დაწერს *da-c'er-s* X-writes-Z (fut 3s 3s); გაეთბო *ga-e-tb-o* Y-warms-X (plup 3s 3s), გაეთბოს *ga-e-tb-o-s* ditto (perfsubj 3s 3s) < C1 S1 გაათბობს *ga-a-tb-ob-s* X-warms-Z (fut 3s 3s); C1 S3 გაეკეთებინა *ga-e-k'et-eb-in-a* Y-does-X (plup 3s 3s), გაეკეთებინოს *ga-e-k'et-eb-in-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s 3s) < C1 S1 გააკეთებს *ga-a-k'et-eb-s* X-does-Z (fut 3s 3s). [↑]

[32] C3 S3 ეცხოვრა *e-cxovr-a* Y-lives (plup 3s), ეცხოვროს *e-cxovr-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s) < C3 S1 ცხოვრობს *cxovr-ob-s* X-lives (pres 3s 3s); C3 S3 ესწავლებინა *e-sc'avl-eb-in-a* Y-studies (plup 3s), ესწავლებინოს *e-sc'avl-eb-in-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s) < C3 S1 სწავლობს *sc'avl-ob-s* X-studies (pres 3s); ეყვირ(ნ)ა *e-q'vir-(n)a* Y-shouts (plup 3s), ეყვიროს *e-q'vir-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s) < C3 S1 ყვირის *q'vir-i-s* (pres 3s) X-shouts; ეყარაულ(ნ)ა *e-q'araul-(n)a* Y-stands-guard (plup 3s), ეყარაულოს *e-q'araul-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s) < C3 S1 ყარაულობს *q'araul-ob-s* X-stands-guard (pres 3s); გაეღიმა *ga-e-ğim-a* Y-smiles (plup 3s), გაეღიმოს *ga-a-ğim-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s) < C3 S1 გაიღიმებს *ga-i-ğim-eb-s* X-smiles (fut 3s). [↑]

[33] C3 S3 ელაპარაკ(ნ)ა *e-lap'arak'-(n)a* Y-speaks(-X) (plup 3s (3s)), ელაპარაკოს *e-lap'arak'-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s (3s)) < C3 S1 ლაპარაკობს *lap'arak'-ob-s* X-speaks(-Z) (pres 3s (3s)); C3 S3 ეთამაშ(ნ)ა *e-tamaš-(n)a* Y-plays(-X) (plup 3s (3s)), ეთამაშოს *e-tamaš-o-s* ditto (perf subj 3s (3s)) < C3 S1 თამაშობს *tamaš-ob-s* X-plays(-Z) (pres 3s (3s)). [↑]

ა-/a-series IO markers (unmarked 3p)

These verbs use the ა-/a-series markers to reference a grammatical indirect object, the plurality of which is not marked in third person.

[34] An example of a trivalent C1 S1 verb is დააწერს *da-a-c'er-s* X-writes-Z-on-Y (fut 3s 3s 3s), დააწერა *da-a-c'er-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s 3s) < bivalent C1 S1 დაწერს *da-c'er-s* X-writes-Y (fut 3s 3s). [↑]

[35] C2(b) rel დააკვდება *da-a-k'vd-eb-a* X-dies-with-Y (fut 3s 3s), დააკვდა *da-a-k'vd-a* ditto (aor 3s 3s) < C2(b) S1 მოკვდება *mo-k'vd-eb-a* X-dies (fut 3s). [↑]

ა-/a-series IO markers (marked 3p)

These verbs use the ა-/a-series markers to reference a grammatical indirect object, the plurality of which is marked in the third person by the affix -თ *-t*.

[36] S1 აცვია *a-cv-i-a* Y-wears-X (stat pres 3s 3s). Note that some monovalent statives incorporate a functionless pronominal marker ა- *a-* that does not refer to an indirect object (cf. S1 ანთია *a-nt-i-a* 'X-is-lit' (stat pres 3s)). [↑]

[37] C4 S1 აქვს *a-kv-s* Y-has-X(inanimate) (pres 3s 3s). [↑]

Transitive Verbs

Marking strategies

The various strategies employed by transitive direct verbs to mark third person singular indirect objects are summarized in the following table.

marker	class	optional indirect object	obligatory indirect object	no indirect object
ა- a-	C1	და(ა)წერს <i>da-(a-)ts'er-s</i> X-writes-Y(-on-Z) (fut 3s 3s (3s))	–	–
უ- u-	C1	და(უ)მალავს <i>da-(u-)mal-av-s</i> X-hides-Y(-from-Z) (fut 3s 3s (3s))	<u>with Direct Object</u> დაუსხამს <i>da-u-skh-am-s</i> X-pours-Y-on-Z (fut 3s 3s 3s) <u>Direct Object inadmissible</u> უყურებს <i>u-q'ur-eb-s</i> X-looks-at-Y (pres 3s 3s)	დაუბერავს <i>da-u-ber-av-s</i> X-blows (fut 3s)
	C3	(უ)ჩივის <i>(u-)chiv-i-s</i> X-complains(-against-Y) (pres 3s (3s))	უღიმიანს <i>u-ghim-i-s</i> X-smiles-at-Y (pres 3s 3s)	–
ს- s-	C1	მო(ს)ტეხს <i>mo-(s-)-t'ekh-s</i> X-breaks-Y(-off-Z) (fut 3s 3s (3s))	შესთავაზებს <i>she-s-tavaz-eb-s</i> X-offers-Y-to-Z (fut 3s 3s 3s)	ასწევს <i>a-s-ts'ev-s</i> X-raises-Y (fut 3s 3s)
	C3	(ს)დარაჯობს <i>(s-)daraj-ob-s</i> X-keeps-watch(-over-Y) (pres 3s (3s))	დასცინის <i>da-s-tsin-i-s</i> X-laugh-at-Y (pres 3s 3s)	–
ჰ- h-	C1	–	მოჰპარავს <i>mo-h-p'ar-av-s</i> X-steals-Y-from-Z (fut 3s 3s 3s)	–
	C3	(ჰ)ყარაულობს <i>(h-)q'araul-ob-s</i> X-guards(-Y) (pres 3s (3s))	ჰპატრონობს <i>h-p'at'ron-ob-s</i> X-looks-after-Y (pres 3s 3s)	–
∅-	C1	–	<u>with Direct Object</u> შემატებს <i>she-mat'-eb-s</i> X-increases-Y's-Z (fut 3s 3s 3s) <u>Direct Object inadmissible</u> შეხედავს <i>she-khed-av-s</i> X-takes-a-look-at-Y (fut 3s 3s)	–

Notes and examples

The pre-radical vowel ა- a- can sometimes mark indirect objects (the superessive version), although this marker usually occurs in the neutral version.

მდივანმა კონვერტს მისამართი დააწერა.

mdivan-ma k'onvert'-s misamart-i da-a-ts'er-a.

secretary (nar sg) envelope (dat sg) address (nom sg) X-writes-Y-on-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The secretary wrote the address on the envelope.

This indirect reference is often emphasized by the addition of the postposition -ზე -ze ('on'):

მდივანმა კონვერტზე მისამართი დააწერა.

mdivan-ma k'onvert'-ze misamart-i da-a-ts'er-a.

secretary (nar sg) envelope (dat sg) – on address (nom sg) X-writes-Y-on-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The secretary wrote the address on the envelope.

The pre-radical vowel უ- u- frequently marks indirect objects in verbs with contrasting markerless direct forms:

დედამ შვილს ბურთი დაუმალა.

deda-m shvil-s burt-i da-u-mal-a.

mother (nar sg) child (dat sg) ball (nom sg) X-hides-Y-from Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)
The mother hid the ball from the child.

ძმისშვილს ხშირად უჩივის.

dzm+is+shvil-s khshir-ad u-chiv-i-s.

nephew/niece (dat sg) often X-complains-about-Y (pres 3s 3s)

He often complains about his nephew.

Some such verbs have no corresponding markerless forms:

მეზღვემ ყვავილებს წყალი დაუსხა.

me+bagh+e-m q'vavil-eb-s ts'q'al-i da-u-skh-a.

gardener (nar sg) flower (dat pl) water (nom sg) X-pours-Y-on-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The gardener watered the flowers.

პატარმალნი ნეფეს უღიმი.

p'at'ar+dzal-i nepe-s u-ghim-i-s.

bride (nom sg) groom (dat sg) X-smiles-at-Y (pres 3s 3s)

The bride smiles at the groom.

There are a few bipersonal verbs with pre-radical vowel უ- *u-* that cannot reference a direct object, as in this example:

მოწაფემ დაფას უყურა.

mots'ape-m dapa-s u-q'ur-a.

pupil (nar sg) blackboard (dat sg) X-looks-at-Y (aor 3s 3s)

The pupil looked at the blackboard.

There are also some rare transitive verbs which, although they incorporate an indirect object marker, make no reference to any such object, as in this illustration:

ქარმა მოულოდნელად დაუბერა.

kar-ma mo+u+lodn+el-ad da-u-ber-a.

wind (nar sg) unexpectedly X-blows (aor 3s)

The wind blew unexpectedly.

Indirect objects are also referenced using the pronominal markers ს- *s-*

(before *d*, *t*, *ტ* *t'*, *ჩ* *ch*, *ც* *ts*, *ძ* *dz*, *წ* *ts'*, *ჭ* *ch'*, *ჯ*) and ჰ- *h-* (before *ბ*, *გ*, *კ* *k'*, *პ* *p'*, *ფ* *p*, *ქ* *k*, *ყ* *q'*), as in the following examples:

მეტყვემ ხეს შტო მოსტეხა.

me+t'q'v+e-m khe-s sht'o mo-s-t'ekh-a.

forester (nar sg) tree (dat sg) branch (nom sg) X-breaks-Y-off-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The forester broke a branch off the tree.

გლეხი ვენახს სდარაჯობს.

glekh-i venakh-s s-daraj-ob-s.

peasant (nom sg) vineyard (dat sg) X-keeps watch-over-Y (pres 3s 3s)

The peasant is keeping watch over the vineyard.

ჯარისკაცი სახლს ჰყარაულობს.

jar+is+k'ats-i sakhl-s h-q'araul-ob-s.

soldier (nom sg) house (dat sg) X-keeps-watch-over-Y (pres 3s 3s)

The soldier is guarding the house.

In other cases, there is no corresponding markerless verb.

ახალგაზრდამ მოხუცს სკამი შესთავაზა.

akhalgazrda-m mokhuts-s sk'am-i she-s-tavaz-a.

youth (nar sg) elder (dat sg) chair (nom sg) X-offers-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The young man offered a chair to the old person.

გოგო თავის დაქალს დასცინის.

gogo tavis da+kal-s da-s-ts'in-i-s.

girl (nom sg) her (dat) girlfriend (dat sg) X-laughs-at-Y (pres 3s 3s)
The girl is laughing at her friend.

ქურდმა მგზავრს ფული მოჰპარა.
kurd-ma mgzavr-s pul-i mo-h-p'ar-a.
thief (nar sg) traveller (dat sg) X-steals-Y-from-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)
The thief stole money from the traveller.

უფროსი შვილი ოჯახს ჰპატრონობს.
upros-i shvil-i ojaxh-s h-p'at'ron-ob-s.
eldest (nom) child (nom sg) family (dat sg) X-looks-after-Y (pres 3s 3s)
The eldest child is looking after the family.

Again, there are rare verbs with a redundant obligatory indirect object marker.

ამწემ ტვირთი მაღლა ასწია.
amts'e-m t'virt-i maghla a-s-ts'-i-a.
crane (nar sg) load (nom sg) high X-raises-Y (aor 3s 3s)
The crane raised the load high.

Some verbs have no explicit marker (PM = Ø-), as in the following illustration:

ახალმა ამბავმა ხალხს ოპტიმიზმი შემატა.
akhal-ma ambav-ma khalkh-s op'timizm-i she-mat'-a.
new (nar) tidings (nar sg) people (dat sg) optimism (nom sg) X-increases-Y's-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)
The news strengthened the people's optimism.

In some unusual cases, there is no reference to a direct object.

მკვლევარმა ციფერბლატს შეხედა.
m+k'vlev+ar-ma tsiperblat'-s she-khed-a.
scientist (nar sg) dial (dat sg) X-takes-a-look-at-Y (aor 3s 3s)
The scientist looked at the dial.

Intransitive Verbs

Marking strategies

The various strategies employed by intransitive Class 2 verbs to mark third person indirect objects are summarized in the following table.

marker	optional indirect object	obligatory indirect object
ა- a-	–	დააკვირდება <i>da-a-k'vir-d-eb-a</i> X-observes-Y (fut 3s 3s)
ე- e-	–	მიესალმება <i>mi-e-salm-eb-a</i> X-greets/welcomes-Y (fut 3s 3s)
		ეხუმრება <i>e-khumr-eb-a</i> X-jokes-with-Y (pres 3s 3s)
უ- u-	მო(უ)კვდება <i>mo-(u)-k'vd-eb-a</i> X-dies(-on-Y) (fut (3s) (3s))	გაუფრთხილდება <i>ga-u-prtkhil-d-eb-a</i> X-is-on-guard-against-Y (fut 3s 3s)
ს- s-	–	მისწვდება <i>mi-s-ts'vd-eb-a</i> X-reaches-Y (fut 3s 3s)
ჰ- h-	გადა(ჰ)რჩება <i>gada-(h-)rch-eb-a</i> X-survives(-Y) (fut 3s (3s))	შეჰპირდება <i>she-h-p'ir-d-eb-a</i> X-promises-Y-to Z (fut 3s 3s 3s)

Notes and examples

Class 2 verbs are largely intransitive and thus monopersonal (with a subject and no indirect object). However, some can code an indirect relation; these are known as relative Class 2 verbs.

The pre-radical vowel ა- *a-* marks the indirect object in a few intransitive verbs, as in this example:

მგზავრი იქაურობას დააკვირდა და გააგრძელა გზა.

mgzavr-i ik+a+ur+oba-s da-a-k'vir-d-a da ga-a-grdzel-a gza.

traveller (nom sg) locality (dat sg) X-observes-Y (aor 3s 3s) and X-continues-Y (aor 3s 3s) way (nom sg)

The traveller observed the locality and continued on his journey.

The pre-radical vowel ე- *e-* occurs frequently as a relative marker, as in this illustration:

ელჩი ახალ ხელშეკრულებას მიესალმა.

elch-i akhal khel+she+k'r+ul-eba-s mi-e-salm-a.

ambassador (nom sg) new (dat) treaty (dat sg) X-welcomes-Y (aor 3s 3s)

The ambassador welcomed the new treaty

It is also used in relative forms of Class 2(b) verbs (the 'prefixal intransitives'), as in this example:

თაგვი კატას ემალება.

tagv-i k'at'a-s e-mal-eb-a.

mouse (nom sg) cat (dat sg) X-hides-from-Y (pres 3s 3s)

The mouse is hiding from the cat.

Some Class 3 verbs can mark indirect objects using the pronominal markers ს- *s-* and ჰ- *h-*, or the pre-radical vowel უ- *u-*. Much more common, however, is for an indirect relation to be expressed by a relative Class 2(b) intransitive using the pre-radical vowel ე- *e-* and based on the future screeve of the medial verb, as in the following example:

ხუმრობს		იხუმრებს		ეხუმრება
C3 <i>khumr-ob-s</i>	→	C3 <i>i-khumr-eb-s</i>	→	C2(b) rel <i>e-khumr-eb-a</i>
X-jokes (pres 3s)		X-jokes (fut 3s)		X-jokes-with-Y (pres 3s 3s)

ჩემი და ხშირად ეხუმრება თავის თანამშრომლებს.

chem-i da khshir-ad e-khumr-eb-a tavis tanam+shrom+l-eb-s.

my (nom sg) sister (nom sg) often X-jokes-with-Y (pres 3s 3s) her (dat) colleague (dat pl)

My sister often jokes with her work colleagues.

Few Class 2(a) verbs (the 'radical or markerless intransitives') have relative forms. The pronominal marker უ- *u-* marks the indirect object in the relative Class 2(a) verb in this example:

შვილი მოულოდნელად მოუკვდა დედას.

shvil-i mo+u+lodn+el-ad mo-u-k'vd-a deda-s.

child (nom sg) unexpectedly X-dies-on-Y (aor 3s 3s) mother (dat sg)

The child died unexpectedly on its mother.

The same marker occurs in this Class 3 derivative:

ფოსტალიონი ავ ძაღლს გაუფრთხილდა.

post'alion-i av dzaghl-s ga-u-prtkhil-d-a.

postman (nom sg) bad-tempered (dat) dog (dat sg) X-is-on-guard-against-Y (aor 3s 3s)

The postman was on his guard against the bad-tempered dog.

Class 2(c) verbs (the 'suffixal intransitives') usually use the pre-radical vowel უ- *u-* to express an indirect relation, as in this example:

ჯოგს ახალი ბოსელი უშენდება.

jog-s akhal-i bosel-i u-shen-d-eb-a.

herd (dat sg) new (nom) cowshed (nom sg) X-is-being-built-for-Y (pres 3s 3s)

A new cowshed is being built for the herd.

The pronominal marker *s-* can also mark an indirect object:

მაღალი ბიჭია, მაგრამ ჭერს ვერ მისწვდება.

maghal-i bich'-i-a, magram ch'er-s ver mi-s-ts'vd-eb-a.

high (nom sg) boy (nom sg) – X-is (pres 3s), but ceiling (dat sg) cannot X-reaches-Y (pres 3s 3s)

He is a tall boy, but he cannot reach the ceiling.

The following is an example of a relative Class 2(a) verb with the pronominal marker *h-* (now almost invariably omitted) marking the indirect object:

ჯაშუში დაკითხვას გადა(ჰ)რჩა.

jashush-i da+k'itkhv+a-s gada-(h-)rch-a.

spy (nom sg) interrogation (dat sg) X-survives-Y (aor 3s 3s)

The spy survived the interrogation.

The same marker occurs in this relative intransitive Class 1 derivative (which is also an example of a tripersonal intransitive verb):

მთავრობა უმუშევრებს ფულს შეჰპირდა.

m+tavr+ob+a u+mush+av+r-eb-s pul-s she-h-p'ir-d-a.

government (nom sg) unemployed (dat pl) money (dat sg) X-promises-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The government promised money to the unemployed.

Note that the Class 3 root -კითხულ- *-k'itkh+ul-* ('ask') is the basis of two types of relative verb, both incorporating the truncated root -კითხ- *-k'itkh-*. One is a Class 3 transitive with the pronominal marker *h-*, while the other is a Class 2 intransitive with the pre-radical vowel *h-* and based on the future form იკითხავს *i-k'itkh-av-s*, as in the following illustrations:

მასწავლებელმა მოწაფეს რა ჰკითხა?

ma+sts'avl+eb+el-ma mots'ape-s ra h-k'itkh-a?

teacher (nar sg) pupil (dat sg) what (nom) X-asks-Y-of-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

მასწავლებელი მოწაფეს რას შეეკითხა?

ma+sts'avl+eb+el-i mots'ape-s ra-s she-e-k'itkh-a?

teacher (nom sg) pupil (dat sg) what (dat) X-asks-Y-of-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

What did the teacher ask the pupil?

Tripersonal Verbs

Many Georgian verbs are tripersonal in character, referencing both direct and indirect objects in addition to the subject. In such cases, one of the objects must necessarily be in the third person.

Tripersonal Transitive Verbs

The verbs -ჩუქ- *-chuk-* 'to give a gift' and -ლოც- *-lots-* 'to congratulate', for example, can reference two objects, as in the following examples:

აჩუქებს

a-chuk-eb-s

X-gives-Y-to-Z-as-a-gift (pres 3s 3s 3s)

'he gives it to him as a gift'

მიულოცავს

mi-u-lots-av-s

X-congratulates-Y-on-Z (fut 3s 3s 3s)

'he will congratulate him on it'

In both of these cases, the direct object is not explicitly in the verb, while the indirect object has an explicit marker (*sa-* ა-, უ- *u-*). Let us take the following sentence as an illustration:

გოგო მეგობარს წიგნს მისცემს.

gogo megobar-s ts'ign-s mi-s-tsem-s.

girl (nom sg) friend (dat sg) book (dat sg) X-gives-Y-to-Z (fut 3s 3s 3s)
The girl will give her friend a book.

The indirect object pronominal marker *ს-* *s-* in the verb refers to the indirect object (*მეგობარს megobar-s*), which is in the dative, as is the direct object (*წიგნს ts'ign-s*), which is unmarked in the verb. The indirect object relation is clearer if we change the screeve to the aorist, where there is only one noun – the indirect object – in the dative case:

გოგომ მეგობარს წიგნი მისცა.
gogo-m megobar-s ts'ign-i mi-s-ts-a.
girl (nar sg) friend (dat sg) book (nom sg) X-gives-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)
The girl gave her friend a book.

However, the structure changes in the perfect, where the indirect object is marked using the postposition *-თვის -tvis* 'for'.

გოგოს მეგობრისთვის წიგნი მიუცია.
gogo-s megobr-is-tvis ts'ign-i mi-u-ts-i-a.
girl (dat sg) friend (gen sg) – [postposition] book (nom sg) X-gives-Y-to-Z (perf 3s 3s)
The girl gave her friend a book.

The dative now marks the subject of the English sentence, as a result of the process of known as 'inversion'. The verb still expresses an indirect relationship, but it now marks the 'logical subject' (*გოგოს gogo-s*) using the pre-radical vowel *უ-* *u-*.

Not all such tripersonal transitives belong to Class 1. Some Class 3 verbs have transitive relative forms that can reference both direct and indirect objects in addition to the subject, as in the following example:

ბებია შვილიშვილს ნანას უმღერის.
bebia shvil+i+shvil-s nana-s u-mgher-i-s.
grandmother (nom sg) grandchild (dat sg) lullaby (dat sg) X-sings-Y-to-Z (pres 3s 3s 3s)
The grandmother is singing a lullaby to her grandchild.

Case marking here follows the same pattern as for C1 verbs.

Tripersonal Intransitive Verbs

Most relative C2 verbs are bipersonal, with the indirect object marked by the dative case in all series. In addition to this, there are a number of tripersonal relative C2 verbs with both objects marked by the dative, as in the following examples:

დარაჯი პატრონს ამბავს მოუყვა.
daraj-i p'at'ron-s ambav-s mo-u-q'v-a.
watchman (nom sg) owner (dat sg) news (dat sg) X-tells-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)
The watchman reported the news to the owner.

მასწავლებელი მოწაფეს რაღაცას შეეკითხა.
m+a+sts'avl+eb+el-i mots'ape-s ra+gha+ts+a-s she-e-k'itkh-a.
teacher (nom sg) pupil (dat sg) something (dat sg) X-asks-Y-of-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)
The teacher asked the pupil something.

სტუმარი ბავშვს კანფეტს დაჰპირდა.
st'umar-i bavshv-s k'anpet'-s da-h-p'ir-d-a.
guest (nom sg) child (dat sg) sweet (dat sg) X-promises-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)
The guest promised the child a sweet.

Note that there is a tendency for some tripersonal relative C2 verbs to be replaced by a combination of a bipersonal verb and a postposition, as in the following illustrations:

?კაცი უცნობს დედას დაეფიცა.
?k'ats-i utsnob-s deda-s da-e-pits-a.
man (nom sg) stranger (dat sg) mother (dat sg) X-swears-on-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

კაცმა უცნობთან დედა დაიფიცა.
k'ats-ma utsnob-tan deda da-i-pits-a.
man (nar sg) stranger (dat sg) – [postposition] mother (nom sg) X-swears-on-Y (aor 3s 3s)

The man swore on his mother to the stranger.

?მძღოლი მილიციონერს კანონს შეედავა.

?*mdzghol-i militsioner-s k'anon-s she-e-dav-a.*

driver (nom sg) policeman (dat sg) law (dat sg) X-argues-with-Y-over-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

მძღოლი მილიციონერს კანონზე შეედავა.

mdzghol-i militsioner-s k'anon-ze she-e-dav-a.

driver (nom sg) policeman (dat sg) law (dat sg) – [postposition] X-argues-with-Y (aor 3s 3s)

The driver argued with the policeman over the law.

Some intransitive relative verbs based on Class 3 transitives are tripersonal, as in this example:

ქალი თავის ახალ რძალს ცოტას ელაპარაკა.

kal-i tavis akhal rdzal-s tsot'a-s e-lap'arak'-a.

woman (nom sg) her (dat) new (dat) daughter-in-law (dat sg) little (dat sg) X-speaks-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The woman spoke little to her new daughter-in-law.

In the colloquial language, these tripersonal intransitive verbs can sometimes deviate from the grammatical norm and follow the transitive case-marking pattern, as in these illustrations:

*დარაჯმა პატრონს ამბავი მოუყვა.

**daraj-ma p'at'ron-s ambav-i mo-u-q'v-a.*

watchman (nar sg) owner (dat sg) news (nom sg) X-tells-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The watchman reported the news to the owner.

*ქალმა თავის ახალ რძალს ცოტა ელაპარაკა.

**kal-ma tavis akhal rdzal-s tsot'a e-lap'arak'-a.*

woman (nar sg) her (dat) new (dat) daughter-in-law (dat sg) little (nom sg) X-speaks-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s)

The woman spoke little to her new daughter-in-law.

Version

Neutral Version

The pre-radical vowel plays an important role in expressing indirect relations, a concept which itself is much broader in Georgian than in English. The following sentence makes no reference to an indirect relation, and is thus sometimes said to have 'neutral version'.

კაცი სახლს აშენებს.

k'ats-i sakhl-s a-shen-eb-s.

man (nom sg) house (dat sg) X-builds-Y (pres 3s 3s)

The man is building a house.

Subjective Version

If we change the pre-radical vowel from ა- a- to ი- i- , the meaning of the verb is changed. The pre-radical vowel (or 'version vowel') now indicates that the builder himself is the beneficiary of the action. The verb is now said to have 'subjective version'.

კაცი სახლს იშენებს.

k'ats-i sakhl-s i-shen-eb-s.

man (nom sg) house (dat sg) X-builds-Y-for-self (pres 3s 3s)

The man is building a house for himself.

Objective Version

The pre-radical vowel უ- u- refers to a third person indirect relation. The verb is said to have 'objective version'.

კაცი ძმას სახლს უშენებს.

k'ats-i dzma-s sakhl-s u-shen-eb-s.

man (nom sg) brother (dat sg) house (dat sg) X-builds-Y-for-Z (pres 3s 3s 3s)

The man is building a house for [his] brother.

This distinction is preserved in the aorist series, but it is lost in the perfect series as the pre-radical vowel now marks the 'logical subject' (კატს *k'ats-s*) and not the beneficiary of the action.

Superessive Version

The pre-radical vowel ა- *a-* is used to mark an indirect relationship, indicating that the action of the verb takes place 'on' a surface, as in this example.

სურათს ხატავს.

surat-s khat'-av-s.

picture (dat sg) X-paints-Y (pres 3s 3s)

He is painting a picture.

→

სურათს კედელს ახატავს.

surat-s k'edel-s a-khat'-av-s.

picture (dat sg) wall (dat sg) X-paints-Y-on-Z (pres 3s 3s 3s)

He is painting a picture on the wall.

This is sometimes referred to as the 'superessive version.'

Non-Finite Verb Forms

The Masdar

Usage

The masdar (or verbal noun) is a form of the verb that behaves as a noun. It does not provide any information as to the time of the action, the person involved, or other details typically contained in a finite verb form. Instead, it expresses the intrinsic 'essence' of the verb, its basic meaning. It may be compared to the English verbal nouns 'to hold' and 'holding', for example. (Note that Georgian does not have an infinitive form of the verb). The only category that can be expressed by the masdar is 'aspect' in the case of Class 1 and 2 verbs, that is, whether the action is viewed as completed ('perfective') or uncompleted ('imperfective'). This distinction is made through the presence or absence of a preverb. Transitive and intransitive forms of the same verb (that is, those with and without an indirect object) both share the same form of the masdar.

Formation

As the following incomplete summary suggests, in many cases the form of the masdar cannot be predicted, and must be learnt separately. There are many 'irregular' masdar formations, especially for Class 3 and 4 verbs.

	PREFIX	-3	0	INFIX	+2	MASDAR FORMANT
		PVB			PSF	
Class 1, 2	∅-	(PVB)	ROOT	-∅	-∅, -ებ, -ობ → -∅, -ებ, -ობ -∅, -eb, -ob → -∅, -eb, -ob	-ა -ა
					-ავ, -ამ → -v, -მ -av, -am → -v, -m	
	-ი → -∅ -i → -∅					
Class 3	∅-	-∅, -ილ, -ოლ, -ობ, etc. -∅, -il, -ol, -ob, etc.			-∅	-ა, -ი, -ე
Class 4	∅-, სი- ∅-, si-	∅-	-∅, -ილ, -ოლ, -ულ, etc. -∅, -il, -ol, -ul, etc.	-∅, -ებ -∅, -eb	-ა, -ი, -ე -a, -i, -e	

Masdar formation

Note the following selected irregular masdars.

PRESENT	MASDAR
არის ar-i-s 'He is.'	ყოფნა q'op+n-a 'being'
PVB-დის PVB-d-i-s 'He comes, goes, etc.'	PVB-სვლა PVB-svl-a 'going', 'coming', etc.'
დგას dg-a-s 'He stands.'	დგომა dg+om-a 'standing'
ზის z-i-s 'He sits.'	ჯდომა jd+om-a 'sitting'
სხედან skhed-an 'They sit.'	სხდომა skhd+om-a 'sitting'
თხოულობს tkhoul-ob-s 'He asks.'	თხოვნა tkhov+n-a 'request'
შოულობს shoul-ob-s 'He finds it.'	შოვნა shov+n-a 'finding'

Irregular masdar formation

Illustrations

Here are some examples of the formation of the Georgian imperfective masdar.

CLASS	PRESENT	MASDAR
Class 1, 2	წერს, იწერება ts'er-s, i-ts'er-eb-a 'He writes it.' 'It is written.'	წერა ts'er-a 'writing', 'being written'
	აკეთებს, კეთდება a-k'et-eb-s, k'et-d-eb-a 'He does it.' 'It is done'	კეთება k'et-eb-a 'doing', 'being done'
	აშრობს, შრება a-shr-ob-s, shr-eb-a 'He dries it.' 'It is dried.'	შრობა shr-ob-a 'drying', 'being dried'
	ხატავს, იხატება khat'av-s, i-khat'-eb-a 'He paints it.' 'It is painted.'	ხატვა khat'-v-a 'painting', 'being painted'
	სვამს, ისმება sv-am-s, i-s-m-eb-a 'He drinks it.' 'It is drunk.'	სმა s-m-a 'drinking', 'being drunk'
	ჭრის, იჭრება ch'r-i-s, i-ch'r-eb-a 'He cuts it.' 'It is cut.'	ჭრა ch'r-a 'cutting', 'being cut'
Class 3	ყეფს q'ep-s 'He barks.'	ყეფა q'ep-a 'barking'
	ყვირის q'vir-i-s 'He yells.'	ყვირილი q'vir+il-i 'yelling'
	იბრძვის i-brdzv-i-s He fights.	ბრძოლა brdz+ol-a 'fighting, fight'
	მუშაობს musha-ob-s 'He works.'	მუშაობა musha-ob-a 'working, work'
Class 4	უნდა u-nd-a 'He wants it.'	ნდომა nd+om-a 'desire'
	სძინავს s-dzin-av-s 'He sleeps.'	ძილი dz+il-i 'sleep'
	უყვარს u-q'var-s 'He loves him.'	სიყვარული si-q'var+ul-i 'love'
	ეშინია e-shin-i-a 'He fears it.'	შიში shish-i 'fear'
	ცხლა tskhel-a 'He is hot.'	სიცხე si-tskh-e 'heat'

Masdar examples

Although derived from a verb, the masdar behaves as any other noun. It may be translated in various ways, as in these examples.

აღარ მინდა იმის ნახვა.

agh-ar m-i-nd-a im-is nakh-v-a.

no-longer X-wants-Y (pres 1s 3s) that (gen sg) X-sees-Y (mas nom sg)

I no longer wish to see that.

გასვლის წინ შუქი გამორთო.

ga-svl-is ts'in shuk-i ga-mo-rt-o.

X-goes-out (mas gen sg) before light (nom sg) X-switches-Y-off (aor 3s 3s)

He switched off the light before going out.

Note that the masdar is the usual citation form of the verb in Georgian dictionaries. This practice of listing verbs by masdar (and not by root) can make the use of Georgian dictionaries particularly difficult for the student unfamiliar with the verb system.

The Active Participle

Usage

The active participle (also known as the present participle) names the 'doer' of the action described by the corresponding verb, as in the English 'singer', 'cleaner', and the like. Active participles may occur with or without a preverb, and there are sometimes parallel variants with and without a suffix. Active participles behave as nouns and, when there is an associated object, it is marked by the genitive case, as in this example.

სპექტაკლის მაყურებლებს გამოჰკითხავენ.

sp'ekt'ak'l-is ma+q'ur-eb-l-eb-s ga+mo-h-k'itkh-av-en.

show (gen sg) X-looks-at-Y (act part dat pl) X-asks-Y-about-Z (fut 3p 3p 3s)

They will hold a survey of those who watched the show.

Formation

The general form of the active participle is illustrated here.

CLASS	-3	-1	0	+2	+3	NOMINAL MARKER
	PVB	PREFIX		PSF	SUFFIX	
Class 1	(PVB)	მ- <i>m-</i>	ROOT	PSF	-∅	-ო <i>-i</i>
		მა- <i>ma-</i>			-ელ <i>-el</i>	
Class 3	(PVB)	მ- <i>m-</i>	ROOT	PSF	-არ (-ალ) ¹ <i>-ar (-al)</i> ¹	
				-ო → -∅ <i>-i</i> → -∅	-∅	
				-ავ → -ავ <i>-av</i> → - <i>v</i>	-ელ <i>-el</i>	
				-ამ → -მ <i>-am</i> → - <i>m</i>	-არ (-ალ) ¹ <i>-ar (-al)</i> ¹	
				-არე <i>-are</i>		
				-იარე <i>-iare</i>		
				-არ (-ალ) ¹ <i>-ar (-al)</i> ¹		
		მო- <i>mo-</i>		-ებ → -∅ <i>-eb</i> → -∅	-ე <i>-e</i>	
				-ობ → -∅ <i>-ob</i> → -∅		
				PSF	-∅	
				-ო → -∅ <i>-i</i> → -∅		
				-ავ → -ავ <i>-av</i> → - <i>v</i>	-არ(ე) <i>-ar(e)</i>	
				-ამ → -მ <i>-am</i> → - <i>m</i>		

¹ form in -ალ *-al* used if root contains რ *r*

Active participle formation

Note the following selected irregular active participles.

PRESENT	ACTIVE PARTICIPLE
არის ar-i-s 'He is.'	მყოფი, მყოფელი m-q'op-i, m-q'op-el-i 'person / thing being'
PVB-დის PVB-d-i-s 'He comes, goes, etc.'	PVB-მსვლელი, PVB-მავალი PVB-m-svl-el-i, PVB-ma-val-i 'person / thing going, coming', etc. ¹
დგას dg-a-s 'He stands.'	მდგომი m-dg+om-i 'person / thing standing'
ზის z-i-s 'He sits.'	მჯდომი m-jd+om-i 'sitter'
სხედან skhed-an 'They sit.'	მსხდომი m-skhd+om-i 'sitter'
თხოულობს tkhoul-ob-s 'He asks.'	მთხოვნელი m-tkhov+n-el-i 'person asking'
შოულობს shoul-ob-s 'He finds it.'	მშოვნელი m-shov+n-el-i 'finder'

¹ Note მომავალი *mo-ma-val-i* 'future'.

Irregular active participle formation

Illustrations

The following examples illustrate the formation of the active participle for Class 1 verbs.

PRESENT	ACTIVE PARTICIPLE
მოიტანს ¹ mo-i-t'an-s ¹ 'He will bring it.'	მომტანი mo-m-t'an-i 'bringer', 'waiter'
სვამს sv-am-s 'He drinks it.'	მსმელი m-sm-el-i 'drinker'
კერავს k'er-av-s 'He sews it.'	მკერავი m-k'er-av-i 'tailor'
ჭრის ch'r-i-s 'He cuts it.'	მჭრელი m-ch'r-el-i 'cutter'
აერთიანებს a-ert+ian-eb-s 'He unites it.'	მაერთიანებელი ma-ert+ian-eb-el-i 'uniter'
ხატავს khat'-av-s 'He paints it.'	მხატვარი m-khat'-v-ar-i 'painter'
წერს ts'er-s 'He writes it.'	მწერალი m-ts'er-al-i 'writer'

¹ future screeve

Active participle examples

The Future Participle

Usage

The future participle (also known as the future passive participle) behaves as an adjective describing that which will be subjected to the action of the verb, or that to be used in implementing the action of the verb, e.g., სამუშაო მაგიდა *sa-musha-o magida* 'work table', that is, 'a table intended for working'.

A number of common 'nouns' are actually future participles, e.g., საჭმელი *sa-ch'm-el-i* 'food = that to be eaten', სასმელი *sa-sm-el-i* 'drink = that to be drunk', გასაღები *ga-sa-gh-eb-i* 'key = that to be used in opening', საჩუქარი *sa-chuk-ar-i* 'gift = that to be given as a present', etc.

The future participle in the adverbial case expresses purpose while, in combination with the verbs 'to be' or 'to have', it can express an obligation to perform the action of the verb.

Formation

The general form of the future participle is illustrated here.

CLASS	-3	-1	0	+2	+3	ADJECTIVAL MARKER
	PVB	PREFIX		PSF	SUFFIX	
Class 1	(PVB)	სა- sa-	ROOT	PSF	-∅	-ი -i
				PSF -ი → -∅ -ი → -∅ -ავ → -(ა)ვ -av → -(a)v -ამ → -მ -am → -m	-ელ -el	
Class 3	(PVB)	სა- sa-	ROOT	PSF	-∅	
				-ი → -∅ -ი → -∅	-არ (-ალ) ¹ -ar (-al) ¹	
				-ობ → -∅ -ob → -∅	-ო -o	-∅

¹ form in -ალ -al used if root contains რ r

Future participle formation

Note the following selected irregular future participles.

PRESENT	FUTURE PARTICIPLE
არის ar-i-s 'He is.'	სამყოფი, სამყოფელი <i>sa-m-q'op-i, sa-m-q'op-el-i</i> 'residence, abode'
PVB-დის <i>PVB-d-i-s</i> 'He comes, goes, etc.'	PVB-სასვლელი <i>PVB-sa-svl-el-i</i> 'he who must go, come, etc.'; 'leading here, there, etc.'
დგას dg-a-s 'He stands.'	სადგომი <i>sa-dg+om-i</i> 'dwelling, shelter'
ზის z-i-s 'He sits.'	საჯდომი <i>sa-jd+om-i</i> 'place / object for sitting, rear'
სხედან skhed-an 'They sit.'	სასხდომი <i>sa-skhd+om-i</i> 'place for sitting'

თხოვლობს tkhoul-ob-s 'He asks.'	სათხოვარი, სათხოვნ(ელ)ი sa-tkhov-ar-i, sa-tkhov+n-(el)-i 'thing to be asked', 'request'
შოვლობს shoul-ob-s 'He finds it.'	საშოვნ(ელ)ი, საშოვარი sa-shovn-(el)-i, sa-shov-ar-i 'thing to be found, food'

Irregular future participle formation

Illustrations

A number of future participles are given above, while the following are examples of some of its special uses. The future passive participle in the adverbial case can often be translated by the English infinitive, as in these examples.

შესახედავად არაფერი არ არის.

she-sa-khed-av-ad ara+per-i ar ar-i-s.

X-looks-at-Y (fut part adv) nothing (nom sg) not X-is (pres 3s)

He's nothing to look at.

დასასვენებლად წავიდა უცხოეთში.

da-sa-sven-eb-l-ad ts'a-vid-a utskho+et-shi.

X-rests (fut part adv) X-goes-away (aor 3s) abroad (gen sg) - in

He went abroad to rest.

Used in combination with 'to be' and 'to have', the future participle can express obligation, as in these two examples.

თქვენი ხელი მოსაწერია ამ საბუთზე.

tkven-i khel-i mo-sa-ts'er-i-a am sabut-ze.

your (nom sg) hand (nom sg) X-writes-Y (fut part nom) - X-is (pres 3s) this (dat sg) document (dat sg) - on

You have to sign this document.

ბევრი წერილი მაქვს დასაწერი.

bevr-i ts'eril-i m-a-kv-s da-sa-ts'er-i.

many (nom sg) letter (nom sg) X-has-Y (pres 1s 3s) X-writes-Y (fut part nom)

I have many letters to write.

The Perfect Participle

Usage

The perfect participle (also known as the past participle or the perfect passive participle) behaves as a derived adjective describing the action or state of the verb in past time, e.g., დაკეტილი *da-k'et'-il-i* 'closed (= having been closed)', მიღებული *mi-gh-eb-ul-i* 'accepted = having been received', ყოფილი *q'op-il-i* 'former = having been', etc.

A number of common 'nouns' are actually perfect participles, e.g. წერილი *ts'er-il-i* 'letter = having been written', ნაცნობი *na-tsn-ob-i* 'acquaintance = having been known', ნაყინი *na-q'in-i* 'ice cream = having been frozen', etc.

The perfect participle is used in combination with forms of the verb 'to be' ('is', 'was', and 'may be') to form a passive, known as the 'periphrastic passive', e.g., დაწერილია (= დაწერილი არის) *da-ts'er-il-i-a* (= *da-ts'er-il-i ar-i-s*) 'it is written', დაწერილი იყო *da-ts'er-il-i i-q'-o* 'it was written', and დაწერილი იქნება *da-ts'er-il-i i-q'-o-s* 'it may be written'.

A less common and more formal periphrastic passive is formed using a combination of the perfect participle and verb forms such as იქნება *i-kn-eb-a* 'it will be' or იქნა *i-kn-a* 'it was', e.g., იქნება დაპატიმრებული *i-kn-eb-a da-p'at'imr-eb-ul-i* 'he will be apprehended'.

The combination of the perfect participle and the verbs 'to have' forms the resultative, where the emphasis is on the outcome of the action of the verb, e.g., დამთავრებული აქვთ *da-mtavr-eb-ul-i a-kv-t* 'they have completed it'.

Formation

The general form of the perfect participle is illustrated here.

CLASS	-3	-1	0	+2	+3	ADJECTIVAL MARKER
	PVB	PREFIX		PSF	SUFFIX	
Class 1(, 2)	PVB	∅-	ROOT	-∅ -ობ ³ , -ენ ³ -ob ³ , -en ³ -ავ ¹ , -ი → -∅ -av ¹ , -i → -∅	-ილ -il	-ი -i
				-ებ -eb -ამ → -მ -am → -m -ევ → -ე -ev → -e -ავ → -∅ ² -av → -∅ ²	-ულ -ul	
		მ- m-		-ობ, -ენ → -∅ ⁵ -ob, -en → -∅ ⁵ -ებ → -∅ ⁶ -eb → -∅ ⁶	-არ (-ალ) ⁴ -ar (-al) ⁴	
Class 1	(PVB)	ნა- na-		PSF -ი, -ავ → -∅ -i, -av → -∅	-∅	

¹ if root contains ე e or ო o

² if root does not contain ე e or ო o

³ if passive formed with ი- i-

⁴ form in -ალ -al used if root contains რ r

⁵ if passive formed with -ები -ebi

⁶ passives in -ებ -eb with no corresponding transitives

Perfect participle formation

The variant in ნა- na- is an older, less common form of the perfect participle which emphasizes the outcome of an action (cf. დაწერ-ილ-ი da-ts'er-il-i 'written', ნაწერ-ი na-ts'er-i 'document').

Note the following selected irregular perfect participles.

AORIST	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
იყო <i>i-q'-o</i> 'He was.'	ყოფილი, ნამყოფი <i>q'op-il-a, na-m+q'op-i</i> 'having been'
PVB-ვიდა <i>PVB-vid-a</i> 'He came, went, etc.'	PVB-სული <i>PVB-sul-i</i> 'having come, gone, etc'
იდგა, ადგა <i>i-dg-a, a-dg-a</i> 'He was standing.', 'He stood up.'	მდგარი, ამდგარი <i>m-dg-ar-i, a-m-dg-ar-i</i> 'having been standing', 'having stood up'
იჯდა, დაჯდა <i>i-jd-a, da-jd-a</i> 'He was seated.', 'He sat down.'	მჯდარი, დამჯდარი <i>m-jd-ar-i, da-m-jd-ar-i</i> 'having been seated', 'having sat down'
ისხდნენ, დასხდნენ <i>i-skhd-nen, da-skhd-nen</i> 'They were seated.' 'They sat down.'	მსხდარი, დამჯდარი <i>m-skhd-ar-i, da-m-skhd-ar-i</i> 'having been seated', 'having sat down'
ითხოვა <i>i-tkhov-a</i> 'He asked.'	ნათხოვ(ნ)ი, ნათხოვარი <i>na-tkhov(+n)-i, na-tkhov-ar-i</i> 'having been requested, borrowed, promised in marriage'
იშოვ(ნ)ა <i>i-shov(n)-a</i> 'He found it.'	საშოვნი, ნაშოვარი <i>na-shovn-i, na-shov-ar-i</i> 'having been found, procured'

Irregular perfect participle formation

Illustrations

The perfect participle is usually – but not always – translated by the English past participle.

ჩაი კეთდება ადუღებულ წყლით.

chai k'et-d-eb-a a-dugh-eb-ul-i ts'q'l-it.

tea (nom sg) X-is-made (pres 3s) X-boils-Y (perf part adv sg) water (adv sg)

Tea is made with boiling water.

Note that the perfect participle can sometimes behave as a noun in Georgian.

ახალი მოსულები არიან.

akhal-i mo-sul-eb-i ar-i-an.

new (nom sg) X-comes (perf part nom pl) X-is (pres 3p)

They have recently arrived.

The following example of the periphrastic passive also includes a perfect participle that is part of a compound noun (ხელნაწერი *khel+na-ts'er-i* 'having been written by hand' (ხელი *kheli* 'hand') = 'manuscript').

ეს ხელნაწერი შუა საუკუნეებშია დაწერილი.

es khel+na-ts'er-i shua sauk'une-eb-shi-a da-ts'er-il-i.

this (nom sg) manuscript (nom sg) middle (dat pl) century (dat pl) - X-is (pres 3s) X-writes-Y (perf part nom sg)

This manuscript was written in the Middle Ages.

Here are two examples of the resultative.

სტატია უკვე დაწერილი მქონდა, როცა შოთა მოვიდა.

st'at'ia uk've da-ts'er-il-i m-kon-d-a, rotsa shota mo-vid-a.

article (nom sg) already X-writes-Y (past part nom sg) X-has-Y (aor 1s 3s), when Shota (nom) X-comes (aor 3s)

I had already written the article when Shota came.

ნუგზარს თავისი სოფლელი ნათესავები ნანახი არა ჰყავს.

nugzar-s tavis-i sofl-el-i natesav-eb-i na-nakh-i ar-a h-q'-av-s.

Nugzar (dat sg) his (nom) rustic (nom) relative (nom pl) X-sees-Y (past part nom) not X-has-Y (aor 3s 3p)

Nugzar has not seen his relatives from the country.

The Privative Participle

Usage

The privative participle (also known as the negative participle) may be viewed as a negative form of the perfect participle, e.g., მიუღებელი *mi-u-gh-eb-el-i* 'unacceptable = not having been received', გაუგებარი *ga-u-g-eb-ar-i* 'incomprehensible = not having been understood', გაუთავველი *ga-u-tav-eb-el-i* 'endless = not having ended', მოუსვენარი *mo-u-sven-ar-i* 'restless = not having rested', etc.

Formation

CLASS	-3	-1	0	+2	+3	ADJECTIVAL MARKER
	PVB	PREFIX		PSF	SUFFIX	
Class 1	PVB	უ- u-	ROOT	PSF	-ელ -el -არ -ar	-ი -i
				-ი → -∅ -i → -∅		
				-ავ → -v -am → -m		
				-ავ -av	-∅	
		უ-მ- ¹ u-m- ¹		-∅	-არ (-ალ) ² -ar (-al) ²	

¹ if passive formed with -ები *-ebi*

² form in -ალ -al/ used if root contains რ r

Privative participle formation

Illustrations

Here are two examples of the use of the privative participle.

ჩემი მოგზავრობა მთებში დაუვიწყარი იყო.

chem-i mogzavroba mt-eb-shi da-u-vits'q'-ar-i i-q'-o.

my (nom) travel (nom sg) mountain (dat pl) - in X-forgets-Y (priv part nom sg) X-s (aor 3s)

My travels in the mountains were unforgettable.

გაუთავებლად მუშაობს თავის ბაღში.

ga-u-tav-eb-l-ad musha-ob-s tavis bagh-shi.

X-ends-Y (priv part adv sg) X-works (pres 3s) his (dat) garden (dat sg) - in

He is forever working in his garden.

Miscellaneous

Ergativity

Ergativity is a shared characteristic of the Caucasian languages. It refers to the occurrence of constructions in which the object of a transitive verb is marked in the same way as the subject of an intransitive verb. Compare the following two Georgian sentences.

ბიჭმა ძაღლი ბაღში დამალა.

bich'-ma dzaghl-i bagh-shi da-mal-a.

boy (nar sg) dog (nom sg) garden (dat sg) - in X-hides-Y (aor 3s 3s - trans) dog (nom sg)

The boy hid the dog in the garden.

ძაღლი ბაღში დაიმალა.

dzaghl-i bagh-shi da-i-mal-a.

dog (nom sg) garden (dat sg) - in X-hides-himself (aor 3s - intrans)

The dog hid in the garden.

Here the absolutive ('dog') is marked by the nominative case suffix -ი *-i*, while the ergative ('boy') is marked by narrative case suffix -მა *-ma*. In Georgian, ergativity is a feature of the aorist series only, as is seen by putting the above sentences into the future (the -ს *-s* suffix marks the dative case):

ბიჭი ძაღლს ბაღში დამალავს.

bich'-i dzaghl-s bagh-shi da-mal-av-s.

boy (nom sg) dog (dat sg) garden (dat sg) - in X-hides-Y (fut 3s 3s - trans)

The boy will hide the dog in the garden.

ძაღლი ბაღში დაიმალება.

dzaghl-i bagh-shi da-i-mal-eb-a.

dog (nom sg) garden (dat sg) - in X-hides-himself (fut 3s - intrans)

The dog will hide in the garden.

The intransitive verb in the examples above is a member of Class 2, the 'intransitive verbs'. There is also another class of intransitive verbs (Class 3) that pattern as the transitive (Class 1) verbs. The following sentences illustrate the behavior of these two types of intransitive in the aorist series.

ბიჭმა ბაღში ითამაშა.

bich'-ma bagh-shi i-tamash-a.

boy (nar sg) garden (dat sg) - in X-plays[-Y] (aor 3s; intrans)

The boy played in the garden.

ბიჭი ბაღში დარჩა.

bich'-i bagh-shi da-rch-a.

boy (nom sg) garden (dat sg) - in X-remains (aor 3s; intrans)

The boy remained in the garden.

This behavior has led to the suggestion that Georgian is more accurately portrayed as an example of an 'active' language. In this language type the subject of a transitive verb is marked with the same case as the subject of an 'active' intransitive, while the object of a transitive verb is marked with the same case as the subject of an 'inactive' intransitive (the narrative and the nominative, respectively, in the case of Georgian). Note that the terms 'active' and 'inactive' are used here not to describe semantic categories, but rather as verb class labels.

Imperatives

The formation of the imperative is summarized in this table.

PERSON	POSITIVE	NEGATIVE (polite)	NEGATIVE (abrupt)
First person	= optative screeve	ნუ <i>nu</i> + present or future screeve	არ <i>ar</i> + optative screeve
Second person	= aorist screeve		
Third person	= optative screeve		

Imperative formation

The only exceptions to this general pattern are the third person imperatives of the basic verbs of motion, which have the form PVB-დი(-თ) *PVB-di(-t)*, e.g., შემოდით *she+mo-di-t* 'you (all) come in'. The negative imperative with არ *ar* 'not' is more abrupt than the polite form.

A number of verbs in the colloquial language have a shortened third person singular imperative in addition to the regular form. These are known as 'truncated imperatives'. Some such forms are listed here.

STANDARD		TRUNCATED
წამოდი <i>ts'a-mo-d-i</i> Come!	→	წამო <i>ts'a-mo</i> Come!
ადეცი <i>a-dek-i</i> Stand up!	→	ადე <i>a-d-e</i> Stand up!
მიეცი <i>mi-e-ts-i</i> Give it to him!	→	მიე <i>mi-e</i> Give it to him!
მომეცი <i>mo-m-e-ts-i</i> Give it to me!	→	მომე <i>mo-me</i> Give it to me!
მოიცადე <i>mo-i-tsad-e</i> Wait!	→	მოიცა <i>mo-i-tsa</i> Wait!
დაიჭირე <i>da-i-ch'ir-e!</i> Catch it!	→	დაიჭი <i>da-i-ch'i</i> Catch it!
დახედე <i>da-khed-e</i> Look at it!	→	დახე <i>da-khe</i> Look at it!
შეხედე <i>she-khed-e</i> Look at it!	→	შეხე <i>she-khe</i> Look at it!
დაჯექი <i>da-jek-i</i> Sit down!	→	დაჯე <i>da-je</i> Sit down!

Truncated imperatives

Here are some illustrations of Georgian imperatives.

მოდი აქ ჩქარა!
mo-d-i ak chkar-a!
X-comes-here (aor 2s) quickly
Come here quickly!

არ წახვიდე, რა!
ar ts'a-kh-vid-e, ra!
[particle] X-goes-away (opt 2s) [particle]
Please don't go!

ნუ ხარ მაჩხუბარი!
nu kh-ar ma-chkhub-ar-i!
[particle] X-is (pres 2s) X-fights (act part nom sg)
Don't squabble!

The Dative Construction

This construction involves a Class 2 verb with a third person inanimate subject, and an indirect object in the dative case. The English equivalent often tends to have a subject corresponding to the Georgian indirect object, as in the following examples.

გამომწერს ყოველთვიურად გაეგზავნება ჟურნალი.
ga+mo-m-ts'er-s q'ovel+tv+iur-ad ga-e-gzavn-eb-a zhurnal-i.

subscriber (act part dat sg) every-month X-is-sent-to-Y (fut 3s 3s) magazine (nom sg)
 The subscriber will receive a magazine every month.

მძღოლს ბენზინი გზაზე დაუმთავრდა.
mdzghol-s benzin-i gza-ze da-u-mtavr-d-a.
 driver (dat sg) petrol (nom sg) way (dat sg) - on X-ended-to-Y (aor 3s 3s)
 The driver ran out of petrol en route.

Where there is a Class 1 verb corresponding to a Class 2 dative construction verb, the latter indicates an involuntary action:

ბავშვმა გასაღები დაკარგა.
bavshv-ma gasagheb-i da-k'arg-a.
 child (nar sg) key (nom sg) X-lost-Y (aor 3s 3s)
 The child lost the key.

ბავშვს გასაღები დაეკარგა.
bavshv-s gasagheb-i da-e-k'arg-a.
 child (dat sg) key (nom sg) X-is-lost-to-Y (aor 3s 3s)
 The child lost the key.

The second example expresses the nuance that the child could not help losing the key.

Causative Verbs

Causative verbs describe the 'enabling' of another person's actions by the subject. The causative of the verb წერს *ts'er-s* 'he writes it' is აწერიბებს *a-ts'er-in-eb-s* 'he causes him to write it / he makes him write it / he lets him write it'.

Causatives are formed from Class 1 verbs using the pre-radical vowel *ა-* in combination with one of a number of suffixes: *-ინ-ებ* *-in-eb*, *-ევიინ-ებ* *-ev+in-eb*, or *-ევ* *-ev*. These derived verbs behave as Class 1 verbs with a present/future stem formant *-ებ* *-eb*. For example, the aorist of the causative აწერიბებს *a-ts'er-in-eb-s* 'he lets him write it' is დააწერინა *da-a-ts'er-in-a* 'he let him write it'.

The causative of Class 3 verbs is formed by changing the pre-radical vowel of the future screeve to *ა-* (e.g., თამაშობს *tamash-ob-s* 'he plays' → ათამაშებს *a-tamash-eb-s* 'he (will) let him play / he (will) play with him'). These causatives usually have the same form for the present and future screeves. Sometimes, the addition of a preverb can change the aspect to perfective.

The causatives აჭმევს *a-ch'm-ev-s* 'he gives him something to eat / he feeds him' (from ჭამს *ch'am-s* 'he eats it') and ასმევს *a-sm-ev-s* 'he gives him something to drink' (from სვამს *sv-am-s* 'he drinks it') are the only examples of the use of the suffix *-ევ* *-ev*.

CLASS	-3	-2	-1	0	+2	+3	+5	+6	+7
	PVB	PM	PV		PSF	causative marker	SM	PM	Plur
Class 1	PVB	PM	ა- a-	ROOT	PSF -ო → -∅ ² -ი → -∅ ² -ავ → -ავ ² -av → -v ²	-ინ-ებ <i>-in-eb</i>	SM	PM	Plur
					-ო → -∅ ³ -ი → -∅ ³ -ავ → -ავ ³ -av → -v ³ -ამ → -მ <i>-am → -m</i>	-ევიინ-ებ <i>-ev+in-eb</i>			
					-∅	-ევ <i>-ev</i>			
Class 3	(PVB) ¹				-ებ <i>-eb</i>	-∅			

- ¹ changes aspect to perfective
² if root vowel present
³ if no root vowel present
⁴ two roots only: -სვ- **-sv-** ‘drink’, -ჭ(ა)მ- **-ch’(a)m-** ‘eat’

Causative verb formation (present series)

Irregular Verbs

There are a number of irregularities in the Georgian verb system, too numerous to detail here. Instead, the following list gives the second person singular forms of the present, imperfect, future, and aorist screeves for a number of common verbs that exhibit some irregular features.

masdar	present	imperfect	future	aorist	
თქმა tkm-a	ამბობ amb-ob	ამბობდი amb-ob-d-i	იტყვი i-t’q’v-i	თქვი tkv-i	‘say it’
	ეუბნები e-ubn-eb-i	ეუბნებოდი e-ubn-eb-od-i	ეტყვი e-t’q’v-i	უთხარი u-tkhar-i	‘tell him it’
ბრძოლა brdz+ol-a	იბრძვი i-brdzv-i	იბრძოდი i-brdz-od-i	იბრძოლებ i-brdzol-eb	იბრძოლე i-brdzol-e	‘fight’
დგომა dg+om-a	დგახარ dg-a-kh+ar	—	იდეგი i-dg-eb-i	იდექი i-dek-i	‘are standing’
	დგები dg-eb-i	დგებოდი dg-eb-od-i	დადგები da-dg-eb-i	დგდექი da-dek-i	‘stand, get up’
ჯდომა jd+om-a	ჯიხარ zi-kh+ar	—	იჯდები i-jd-eb-i	იჯექი i-jek-i	‘sit’
	ჯდები jd-eb-i	ჯდებოდი jd-eb-od-i	დაჯდები da-jd-eb-i	დაჯექი da-jek-i	‘sit down’
ნდომა nd+om-a	გინდა g-i-nd-a	გინდოდა g-i-nd-od-a	გენდომება g-e-ndom-eb-a	—	‘want it’
სმა, დალევა sm-a, da-lev-a	სვამ sv-am	სვამდი sv-am-d-i	დალევი da-lev	დალიე da-li-e	‘drink it’
სროლა sr+ol-a	ესვრი e-svr-i	ესროდი e-sr-od-i	ესვრი e-svr-i	ესროლა e-srol-a	‘throw it’
ქონა kon-a	გაქვს g-a-kv-s	გქონდა g-kon-d-a	გექნება g-e-kn-eb-a	—	‘have it’ (inanimate)
ყოლა q’ol-a	გყავს g-q’av-s	გყავდა g-q’av-d-a	გეყოლება g-e-q’ol-eb-a	გეყოლა g-e-q’ol-a	‘have him’ (animate)
ქმ(ნ)ა km(n)-a	შვრები shvr-eb-i	შვრებოდი shvr-eb-od-i	იზამ i-z-am	ქენი ken-i	‘do it’
შივება shiv-eb-a	გშია g-shi-a	გშიოდა g-shi-od-a	გეშიება g-e-shi-eb-a	—	‘are hungry’
ცოდნა tsodn-a	იცო i-ts-i	იცოდი i-ts-od-i	გეცოდინება g-e-ts-od+in-eb-a	—	‘know it’
მიცემა mi-tsem-a	აძლევ a-dzl+ev	აძლევდი a-dzl+ev-d-i	მისცემ mi-s-tsem	მიეცი mi-e-ts-i	‘give him it’
წოლა ts’+ol-a	წევხარ ts’ev-kh+ar	—	იწვები i-ts’v-eb-i	იწექი i-ts’ek-i	‘are lying’
	წვები ts’v-eb-i	წვებოდი ts’v-eb-od-i	დაწვები da-ts’v-eb-i	დაწექი da-ts’ek-i	‘lie down’
წყურება ts’q’ur-eb-a	გწყურია g-ts’q’ur-i-a	გწყუროდა g-ts’q’ur-od-a	მოგეწყურება mo-g-e-ts’q’ur-eb-a	მოგეწყურა mo-g-e-ts’q’ur-a	‘are thirsty’
ნახვა nakhv-a	ხედავ khed-av	ხედავდი khed-av-d-i	ნახავ nakh-av	ნახე nakh-e	‘see it’

Selected irregular verbs

The Copula

The screeves of the verb 'to be' (the copula, whose masdar is ყოფნა *q'op+n-a*) are listed in this table. The forms of each screeve are listed in the following order: 1s (1p), 2s (2p), 3s and 3p.

SERIES	SCREEVES			
1 (‘present’)	present subseries		future subseries	
	present		future	
	ვარ(თ) ხარ(თ) არის რიან	<i>v-ar(-t)</i> <i>kh-ar(-t)</i> <i>ar-i-s</i> <i>ar-i-an</i>	ვიქნები(თ) იქნები(თ) იქნება იქნებიან	<i>v-i-kn-eb-i(-t)</i> <i>i-kn-eb-i(-t)</i> <i>i-kneb-a</i> <i>i-kn-eb-ian</i>
	imperfect		conditional	
	—		ვიქნებოდი(თ) იქნებოდი(თ) იქნებოდა იქნებოდნენ	<i>v-i-kn-eb-od-i(-t)</i> <i>i-kn-eb-od-i(-t)</i> <i>i-kn-eb-od-a</i> <i>i-kn-eb-od-nen</i>
	present subjunctive		future subjunctive	
	—		ვიქნებოდე(თ) იქნებოდე(თ) იქნებოდეს იქნებოდნენ	<i>v-i-kn-eb-od-e(-t)</i> <i>i-kn-eb-od-e(-t)</i> <i>i-kn-eb-od-e-s</i> <i>i-kn-eb-od-nen</i>
2 (‘aorist’)	aorist			
	ვყავი(თ) იყავი(თ) იყო იყვნენ	<i>v-i-q'av-i(-t)</i> <i>i-q'av-i(-t)</i> <i>i-q'-o</i> <i>i-q'v-nen</i>		
	optative			
ვიყო(თ) იყო(თ) იყოს იყოიყო, იყვნენ	<i>v-i-q'-o(-t)</i> <i>i-q'-o(-t)</i> <i>i-q'-o-s</i> <i>i-q'-o-n, i-q'v-nen</i>			
3 (‘perfect’)	perfect			
	ვყოფილვარ(თ) ყოფილხარ(თ) ყოფილა ყოფილან	<i>v-q'+op-il-v+ar(-t)</i> <i>q'+op-il-kh+ar(-t)</i> <i>q'+op-il-a</i> <i>q'+op-il-an</i>		
	pluperfect			
	ვყოფილიყავი(თ) ყოფილიყავი(თ) ყოფილიყო ყოფილიყვნენ	<i>v-q'+op-il-i+q'av+i(-t)</i> <i>q'+op-il-i+q'av+i(-t)</i> <i>q'+op-il-i+q'+o</i> <i>q'+op-il-i+q'v+nen</i>		
	perfect subjunctive			
	ვყოფილიყო(თ) ყოფილიყო(თ) ყოფილიყოს ყოფილიყონ	<i>v-q'+op-il-i+q'+o(-t)</i> <i>q'+op-il-i+q'+o(-t)</i> <i>q'+op-il-i+q'+o-s</i> <i>q'+op-il-i+q'+o-n</i>		

An ‘enclitic’ (that is to say, attached) variant of the third person singular of the present screeve of the copula is also frequently found. It has the form -ა(ა) *-a(a)* = არის (*ar-i-s*) ‘X-is’. The longer form occurs after consonants.

Basic Verbs of Motion

The basic verbs of motion consist of a preverb (PVB) in combination with a form of the verb ‘to go’ (masdar სვლა *svl-a*). These show considerable irregularity, e.g., მივლენ *mi-vl-en* ‘they will go’, ჩამოხვედით *cha+mo-kh-ved-i-t* ‘you came down, you arrived’.

SERIES	SCREEVES			
1 ('present')	present subseries		future subseries	
	present		future	
	PVB-ვდივარ(თ) PVB-დიხარ(თ) PVB-დის PVB-დიან	PVB- <i>v-di-v+ar(-t)</i> PVB- <i>di-kh+ar(-t)</i> PVB- <i>di-s</i> PVB- <i>di-an</i>	PVB-ვალ(თ) PVB-ხვალ(თ) PVB-ვა PVB-ვლენ	PVB- <i>val(-t)</i> PVB- <i>kh-val(-t)</i> PVB- <i>va</i> PVB- <i>vl-en</i>
	imperfect		conditional	
	PVB-ვიდოდი(თ) PVB-დიოდი(თ) PVB-დიოდა PVB-დიოდნენ	PVB- <i>v-di-od-i(-t)</i> PVB- <i>di-od-i(-t)</i> PVB- <i>di-od-a</i> PVB- <i>di-od-nen</i>	PVB-ვიდოდი(თ) PVB-ხვიდოდი(თ) PVB-ვიდოდა PVB-ვიდოდნენ	PVB- <i>vid-od-i(-t)</i> PVB- <i>kh-vid-od-i(-t)</i> PVB- <i>vid-od-a</i> PVB- <i>vid-od-nen</i>
	present subjunctive		future subjunctive	
	PVB-ვიოდდე(თ) PVB-დიოდდე(თ) PVB-დიოდდეს PVB-დიოდნენ	PVB- <i>v-di-od-e(-t)</i> PVB- <i>di-od-e(-t)</i> PVB- <i>di-od-es</i> PVB- <i>di-od-nen</i>	PVB-ვიოდდე(თ) PVB-ხვიოდდე(თ) PVB-ვიოდდეს PVB-ვიოდნენ	PVB- <i>vid-od-e(t)</i> PVB- <i>kh-vid-od-e(-t)</i> PVB- <i>vid-od-es</i> PVB- <i>vid-od-nen</i>
2 ('aorist')	aorist			
	PVB-ვედი(თ) PVB-ხვედი(თ) PVB-ვიდა PVB-ვიდნენ	PVB- <i>ved-i(-t)</i> PVB- <i>kh-ved-i(-t)</i> PVB- <i>vid-a</i> PVB- <i>vid-nen</i>		
	optative			
PVB-ვიდე(თ) PVB-ხვიდე(თ) PVB-ვიდეს PVB-ვიდნენ	PVB- <i>vid-e(-t)</i> PVB- <i>kh-vid-e(-t)</i> PVB- <i>vid-es</i> PVB- <i>vid-nen</i>			
3 ('perfect')	perfect			
	PVB-ვსულვარ(თ) PVB-სულხარ(თ) PVB-სულა PVB-სულან	PVB- <i>v-s-ul-v+ar(-t)</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-kh+ar(-t)</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-a</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-an</i>		
	pluperfect			
	PVB-ვსულიყავი(თ) PVB-სულიყავი(თ) PVB-სულიყო PVB-სულიყვნენ	PVB- <i>v-s-ul-i+q'+av+i(-t)</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-i+q'+av+i(-t)</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-i+q'+o</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-i+q'v+nen</i>		
	perfect subjunctive			
	PVB-ვსულიყო(თ) PVB-სულიყო(თ) PVB-სულიყოს PVB-სულიყონ	PVB- <i>v-s-ul-i+q'+o(-t)</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-i+q'+o(-t)</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-i+q'+o+s</i> PVB- <i>s-ul-i+q'+o+n</i>		
Imperative	PVB-დი(თ)	PVB- <i>di(-t)</i>		

Animate and Inanimate Verbs

Certain verbs can only be used of persons, a different verb being required in impersonal contexts. Here are some examples.

ANIMATE		INANIMATE
ბანს ban-s 'he washes him'	↔	რეცხავს retskh-av-s 'he washes it'
მოიყვანა mo-i-q'van-a 'he brought him'	↔	მოიტანა mo-i-t'an-a 'he brought it'
მყავს m-q'av-s 'I have him'	↔	მაქვს m-a-kv-s 'I have it'
იცნობს i-tsn-ob-s 'he knows him'	↔	იცის i-ts-i-s 'he knows it'
წევს ts'ev-s 'he is lying'	↔	დევს dev-s 'it is lying'

Note that the verb root -ც- -ts- can also be used of people, in the sense of 'to know of (but not personally)'.

Singular and Plural Verbs

Some Georgian verbs are only used with singular subjects or objects, while others are used with the plural. Examples of these are given here.

SINGULAR		PLURAL
აზის a-b-i-a 'it grows on it'	↔	ასხის a-skh-i-a 'they grow on it'
გააგდებს ga-a-gd-eb-s 'he will drive it out'	↔	რარეკავს ga-rek'-av-s 'he will drive them out'
ჩააგდებთ cha-a-gd-eb-t 'you will drop it'	↔	ჩაყრით cha-q'r-i-t 'you will drop them'
ჩავარდება cha-ward-eb-a 'it will fall down'	↔	ჩაცვივდებიან cha-tsviv-d-eb-ian 'they will fall down'
ვზივარ v-zi-v+ar 'I am sitting'	↔	ვსხედვართ v-skhed-v+ar+t 'we are sitting'
კვდება k'vd-eb-a 'he is dying'	↔	იხოცებიან i-khots-eb-ian 'they are dying'
დაკლავს da-k'l-av-s 'he will slaughter it'	↔	დახოცავს da-khots-av-s 'he will slaughter them'
ჩასვეს cha-sv-es 'they seated him'	↔	ჩასხეს cha-skh-es 'they seated them'

თავს დაეცა <i>tav-s da-e-ts-a</i> 'he attacked him'	←→	თავს დაესხნენ <i>tav-s da-e-skhn-en</i> 'they attacked him'
იჯდა <i>i-jd-a</i> 'he sat down'	←→	ისხდნენ <i>i-skhd-nen</i> 'they sat down'

Verbs of Politeness

A number of Georgian verbs are used to show respect to the person being addressed or being spoken of (the so-called 'honorifics' or 'verbs of politeness'). The following are some examples.

STANDARD FORM		POLITE FORM
არის <i>ar-i-s</i> 'he is'	←→	გახლავთ <i>g-a-khl-av-t</i> 'he is'
ხართ <i>kh-ar-t</i> 'you are'	←→	ბრძანდებით <i>brdzan-d-eb-i-t</i> 'you are'
მოდით <i>mo-d-i-t</i> 'come'	←→	მობრძანდით <i>mo-brdzan-d-i-t</i> 'please come'
გინდათ <i>g-i-nd-a-t</i> 'you want it'	←→	გნებავთ <i>g-neb-av-t</i> 'you want it'
გეტყვით <i>g-e-t'q'v-i-t</i> 'I will tell you'	←→	მოგახსენებთ <i>mo-g-a-khsen-eb-t</i> 'I will tell you'
ჭამეთ <i>ch'am-e-t</i> 'eat it'	←→	მიირთვით <i>mi-i-rtv-i-t</i> 'please eat it'
დაჯექით <i>da-jek-i-t</i> 'sit down'	←→	დაბრძანდით <i>da-brdzan-d-i-t</i> 'please take a seat'

The root -ბრძან- **-brdzan-** means 'to order / command', but it is also found in a number of verbs of politeness. In the following polite phrase the verb ბრძანდებით ***brdzan-d-eb-i-t*** replaces the usual ხართ *kh-ar-t*.

როგორ ბრძანდებით?
rogor brdzan-d-eb-i-t?
how X-is (pres 2p)
How are you?

In addition to replacing some forms of the verb 'to be', this root is also found in a number of other verbs of politeness showing movement or change in position, as in the examples above. Note that it does not occur in first person verbs.

The root -ხ(ე)ლ- **-kh(e)l-** can also be used in polite forms of the verb 'to be' (including the first person, but not the second). It always includes a second person plural indirect object marker (გ- — თ *g- — t*). Thus the following options are available in Georgian to express the present tense of the English verb 'to be'.

PERSON	STANDARD FORM	POLITE FORMS	
root:	-არ- -ar-	-ბრძან- -brdzan-	-ხლ- -khl-
1s	ვარ v-ar	—	გახლავართ g-a-khl-a-v+ar-t
2s	ხარ kh-ar	ბრძანდები brdzan-d-eb-i	—
3s	არის, – ა(ა) ar-i-s, – a(a)	ბრძანდება brdzan-d-eb-a	გახლავთ g-a-khl-av-t
1p	ვართ v-ar-t	—	გახლავართ g-a-khl-a-v+ar-t
2p	ხართ kh-ar-t	ბრძანდებით brdzan-d-eb-i-t	—
3p	არიან ar-i-an	ბრძანდებიან brdzan-d-eb-i-an	გახლავან g-a-khl-av-an

Present screeve forms of 'to be'

SYNTAX

Left Branching

In English, both the constructions 'my friend's brother's house' and 'the house of the brother of my friend' are permissible. The former is what is known as a left-branching structure, and is the only type found in Georgian. For example, the above phrase is translated into Georgian as follows.

ჩემი მეგობრის ძმის სახლი
chem-i megobr-is dzm-is sakhl-i
my (nom sg) friend (gen sg) brother (gen sg) house (nom sg)
my friend's brother's house

Left-branching can lead to some phrases that might appear cumbersome to the English speaker.

Word Order

Although the word order in certain phrases is fixed (for example, the determiner precedes the noun, and the adverb precedes the verb), Georgian shows considerable variation at the sentence level. The order 'subject – indirect object – direct object – transitive verb', as in this example, might be described as neutral.

შვილი დედას წერილს უგზავნის.
shvil-i deda-s ts'eril-s u-gzavn-i-s.
son (nom sg) mother (dat sg) letter (dat sg) X-sends-Y-to-Z (pres 3s 3s 3s)
The son sends a letter to his mother.

Other word orders are entirely acceptable. In general, bringing a phrase forwards towards the beginning of the sentence serves to emphasize it. However, not all word order variants are permissible; for example,

*დედას უგზავნისწერილს შვილი **dedas ugzavnis ts'erils shvili* is unacceptable in Georgian.

If a yes / no answer is expected, a question can be indicated by a rising tone on the last syllable of a sentence that otherwise does not differ from the corresponding statement. Alternatively, the subject can follow the predicate, as in this example.

დაიძინეს ბავშვებმა?
da-i-dzin-es bavshv-eb-ma?
X-falls-asleep (aor 3p) child (nar pl)?
Have the children gone to sleep?

Interrogative pronouns and interrogative adverbs usually take first place in the sentence, and are followed by the predicate, as in this example.

რატომ არ მელაპარაკები?
rat'om ar m-e-lap'arak'-eb-i?
why not X-speaks-to-Y (pres 2s 1s)?
Why are you not speaking to me?

Negation

The negative particles are არ(ა) *ar(a)*, ვერ(ა) *ver(a)*, ნუ *nu*, არც *arts*, ვერც, *verts*, and ნურც *nurts*. These may be classified as in this table.

CATEGORY	BASIC	FUTURE EXTENSION	ALTERNATIVES
negation	არ(ა) <i>ar(a)</i> 'not'	აღარ <i>a+ghar</i> 'no longer'	არც ... არც <i>ar+ts ... ar+ts</i> 'neither ... nor'
potential	ვერ(ა) <i>ver(a)</i> 'cannot'	ველარ <i>ve+ghar</i> 'can ... no longer'	ვერც .. ვერც <i>ver+ts ... ver+ts</i> 'can neither ... nor'
prohibition	ნუ <i>nu</i> 'do not'	ნულარ <i>nu+ghar</i> 'do not ... any longer'	ნურც ... ნურც <i>nu+r+ts ... nu+r+ts</i> 'do not either ... or'

Negative particles

The form არ *ar* indicates simple negation, in contrast to ვერ *ver*, which conveys the idea of inability.

ვერ გაგიკეთებ; დრო სულ არა მაქვს.

ver ga-g-i-k'et-eb; dro sul ara ma-kv-s.

[particle] X-does-Y-for-Z (fut 1s 3s 2s) time (nom sg) at-all [particle] X-has-Y (pres 1s 3s)

I can't do it for you; I simply don't have the time.

The particle ნუ *nu* is used in prohibitions.

ნუ გეშინია ნურაფრის.

nu g-e-shin-i-a nur-a-pr-i-s.

[particle] X-fears-Y (pres 2s 3s) anything (gen sg)

Don't be afraid of anything.

The forms in -ც *-ts* correspond to the English 'and ... not', e.g., არც *arts* 'and ... not', 'neither'.

ვერც სახლში ვერც ბაღში ვერ იპოვა.

ver-ts sakhl-shi verts bagh-shi ver i-p'ov-a.

can-neither house (dat sg) - in nor garden (dat sg) - in cannot X-finds-Y (aor 3s 3s)

He couldn't find it either in the house or in the garden.

Repeated negation in Georgian serves to reinforce the negation, as in this example.

მე ვერაფერი ვერ გავიგე.

me veraper-i ver ga-v-i-g-e.

I (nom) nothing (nom) not X-understands-Y (aor 3s 3s)

I couldn't understand a thing.

Here, the negative pronoun ვერაფერი *ver+aper-i* is a form of არაფერი *ara+per-i* ('nothing') that indicates inability (approximately 'can ... nothing').

Reported Speech

Indirect speech can be reported using the particles -მეტკი *-metki*, -თქო *-tko*, and -ო *-o* with no change in the original quote. The conjunction რომ *rom* ('that') may also be used, in which case the verb screeve and person are changed. Here is an example using the particle ო *-o*.

ლევანმა თქვა, არ მოვალა.

levan-ma tkv-a, ar mo-val-o.

levan (aor sg) X-says-Y (aor 3s 3s), not X-comes (fut 1s) - [particle]

Levan said that he would not come.

This may be recast using the conjunction რომ *rom* ('that').

ლევანმა თქვა, რომ არ მოვიდოდა.

levan-ma tkv-a, rom ar mo-vid-od-a.

levan (nar sg) X-says-Y (aor 3s 3s), that not X-comes (cond 3s)

Levan said that he would not come.

Both may be translated as 'Levan said that he would not come', but the first indicates that Levan's not coming is still in the future at the time the speaker is reporting Levan's words. The second sentence, with its use of *რომ* *rom* and the conditional screeve, indicates that his not coming is already an event in the past at the time of reporting (that is to say, the time at which he might have come is already past).

Number Agreement

It is usual in Georgian for third person plural inanimate subjects to be accompanied by a singular verb. Here is an illustrative sentence in which both subjects are plural, but only the second verb is in the singular.

მეცნიერებმა აღმოაჩინეს, რომ პლანეტები მზის გარშემო მოძრაობს.
metsnier-eb-ma agh-mo-a-chin-es, rom p'lanet'-eb-i mz-is garshemo modzra-ob-s.
 scientist (nar pl) X-discovers-Y (aor 3p 3s) that planet (nom pl) sun (gen sg) around X-moves (pres 3s)
 Scientists have discovered that the planets move around the sun.

In this example, the animate plural (მეცნიერებმა *metsnier-eb-ma* 'scientists') has a plural verb (აღმოაჩინეს *agh-mo-a-chin-es* 'discovered'), while the inanimate plural (პლანეტები *p'lanet'-eb-i* 'planets') has a singular verb (მოძრაობს *modzra-ob-s* 'move').

Conditionals

Summary

Georgian distinguishes between real and unreal conditions. Real (that is, possible or non-hypothetical) conditions are marked by the conjunction *თუ* *tu* 'if', while unreal (impossible or hypothetical) conditions use the conjunction *რომ* *rom* 'if'. This table summarizes how conditions are expressed in Georgian.

TYPE	SUBJECT MATTER	TIME	'IF' CLAUSE		MAIN CLAUSE	
0	general truths	all time	<i>თუ</i> <i>tu</i>	+	Present or Future	Present or Future
1	possibilities	present			Present	Present or Future
		future			Future or Aorist	Future
2	unreal situations	past	<i>რომ</i> <i>rom</i> ¹	+	Pluperfect	Conditional
		present			Present Subjunctive ²	
		future			Future Subjunctive	

¹ usually not first word in clause

² optative used if the verb has no present subjunctive

Conditionals

Type 0

This type of conditional expresses general truths that are valid at all times.

თუ ყინულს (გა)აცხელებ, მალე (გა)დნება.
tu q'inul-s (ga-)a-cxel-eb, male (ga-)dn-eb-a.
 if ice (dat sg) X-heats-Y (pres (/ fut) 2s 3s) soon X-melts (pres (/ fut) 3s)
 If you heat ice, it will soon melt.

Type 1

These conditionals are concerned with possible situations in the present or future.

თუ ფანჯარასთან არ დგას, ვერ გვხედავს.
tu panjara-s-tan ar dg-a-s, ver gv-xed-av-s.
 if window (dat sg) - near X-stands (pres 3s) not X-sees-Y (pres 3s 2p)
 If he is not standing by the window, he cannot see us.

თუ სახლში ადრე მოვა, გავისეირნებთ.
tu saxl-ši adre mo-v-a, ga-v-i-seirn-eb-t.
if house (dat sg) - to early X-comes (fut 3s) X-goes-for-walk (fut 1p)
If he comes home early, we will go for a walk.

თუ სახლში ადრე მოვიდა, გავისეირნებთ.
tu saxl-ši adre mo-vid-a, ga-v-i-seirn-eb-t.
if house (dat sg) - to early X-comes (aor 3s) X-goes-for-walk (fut 1p)
If he comes home early, we will go for a walk.

Type 2

Type 2 conditionals describe unreal, untrue or impossible situations. They may refer to the past, present, or future.

ქოლგა რომ წამოგედო, არ დასველდებოდი.
kolga rom c'a+mo-g-e-ġ-o, ar da-svel-d-eb-od-i.
umbrella (nom sg) if X-brings-Y (plup 2s 3s) not X-gets-wet (cond 2s)
If you had brought an umbrella, you would not have gotten wet.

აქ რომ იყოს, მომეხმარებოდა.
ak rom i-q'o-s, mo-m-e-xmar-eb-od-a.
here if X-is (opt 3s) X-helps-Y (cond 3s 1s)
If he were here, he would help me.

მე რომ წავიდოდე, კრება დამთავრდებოდა.
me rom c'a-vid-od-e, k'reba da-mtavr-d-eb-od-a.
I (nom) if X-leaves (pres subj 1s) meeting (nom sg) X-ends (cond 3s)
If I were to leave, the meeting would come to an end.

Uses of the Subjunctive Screeves

Three screeves are classified as 'subjunctive' (the present subjunctive, the future subjunctive, and the optative). This verb mood is widely used in Georgian. It is employed to express desire, intention, necessity, possibility, fear, and the like. It may stand on its own to express a general desire or wish, or it may be used with verbs such as მინდა *m-i-nd-a* ('I want [to] ...') and მეშინია *m-e-shin-i-a* ('I am afraid [that] ...'), with particles such as ნეტა *net'a* ('if only ...'), and with the negative particle არ(ა) *ar(a)* to express a request rather than an order. Note how the choice of the optative or future screeve changes the meaning in the following examples.

მეშინია, [რომ] არ მოვიდეს.
m-e-shin-i-a, [rom] ar mo-vid-es.
X-fears-Y (pres 1s 3s), [that] not X-comes (opt 3s)
I'm afraid that he might not come.

მეშინია, რომ არ მოვა.
m-e-shin-i-a, rom ar mo-va.
X-fears-Y (pres 1s 3s), [that] not X-comes (fut 3s)
I'm afraid that he will not come.

The present and future subseries each has a subjunctive screeve, the difference between the two being one of aspect. These screeves are used to express a wish, as in this example.

მალე მოვიდეს!
male mo-vid-es!
soon X-comes (opt 3s)
May he come soon!

They are also used in unreal (hypothetical) conditions in the present and the future.

The subjunctive screeve of the aorist series is known as the optative. Like the corresponding screeves of the present series, it also refers to present or future time. It is used in dependent clauses to express a wish or request.

მინდა, რომ წიგნი დავწერო

m-i-nd-a, rom ts'ign-i da-v-ts'er-o.

X-wants-Y (pres 1s 3s), that book (nom sg) X-writes-Y (opt 1s 3s)

I want to write a book.

It is also used with certain particles and impersonal verb constructions such

as უნდა *unda* ('must'), საჭიროა *sa+ch'ir+o-a* ('it is necessary'), შეიძლება *she-i-dzl-eb-a* ('it is possible'), and others.

დროა სახლში წავიდეთ.

dro-a sakhl-shi ts'a-vid-e-t.

time (nom sg) - is house - to X-goes (opt 1p)

It is time that we went home.

შეუძლებელია, [რომ] არ დაგინახოთ.

she+u+dzl+eb+el+i-a, [rom] ar da-g-i-nakh-o-t .

impossible - X-is (pres 3s), [that] not X-catches-sight-of-Y (opt 3s 2p)

It is impossible that he will not catch sight of you.

VOCABULARY

Borrowings

Georgian has a very rich vocabulary that is capable of meeting the widest range of demands, from traditional folk tales, through lyrical poetry, to the requirements of modern science, technology, business and administration. Throughout its long history, Georgian has borrowed from the other languages with which it came into contact, and this process continues up to the present day. External influences on Georgian are not restricted to vocabulary; Georgian syntax, for example, has been significantly influenced by external contact.

Arabic, Persian and Turkish

The Arabic, Persian, and Turkish languages constitute a very important source of loanwords. Borrowings from Arabic were sometimes direct, but were also via Persian and Turkish. Loans from these languages are numerous, and include these examples.

საათი	<i>saat-i</i>	'clock, hour'	(Arabic <i>sā'a</i> , Persian <i>sa:'at</i> , Turkish <i>saat</i>)
კალამი	<i>k'alam-i</i>	'pen'	(Arabic <i>qālam</i> , Persian <i>qalam</i> , Turkish <i>kalem</i>)
ჯიბე	<i>jibe</i>	'pocket'	(Arabic <i>jayb</i> , Turkish <i>jib</i> , Persian <i>jib</i>)
ყასაბი	<i>q'asab-i</i>	'butcher'	(Arabic <i>qassab</i> , Persian <i>qassāb</i> , Turkish <i>kasap</i>)
ხალხი	<i>xalx-i</i>	'people'	(Arabic <i>xalq</i> , Turkish <i>halk</i>)

Classical and European languages

Greek, Latin, and the major European languages (including Russian) have provided a very large number of loanwords. With the exception of some early loans directly from Greek, these borrowings have largely been via Russian, and are of relatively recent origin. The number of borrowings from English in recent years has been significant. Here are some examples.

ეკლესია	<i>ek'lesia</i>	'church'
ეპისკოპოსი	<i>ep'isk'op'osi</i>	'bishop'
პლომბი	<i>p'lombi</i>	'(tooth) filling'
გაზეთი	<i>gazeti</i>	'newspaper'
კონპეტი	<i>k'onpet'i</i>	'sweet'
პამიდორი	<i>p'amidori</i>	'tomato'
ბაზა	<i>baza</i>	'base'
კლასი	<i>k'lasi</i>	'class'
ლამპა	<i>lamp'a</i>	'lamp'
ტრაგედია	<i>t'ragedia</i>	'tragedy'
რეჟისორი	<i>režisori</i>	'director'
ელექტროდინამომეტრი	<i>elekt'rodinamomet'ri</i>	'electrodynamometer'
იმიჯი	<i>imiji</i>	'image'
რეიტინგი	<i>reitingi</i>	'rating'
ბრენდინგი	<i>brendingi</i>	'branding'

Other languages of the South Caucasus have provided a smaller number of loans; these may include აფრა *apra* 'sail' < Abkhaz, ქალაქი *kalaki* 'town' < Armenian, ბელადი *beladi* 'leader' < Azeri (ultimately Persian / Arabic), and ლუდი *ludi* 'beer' < Ossetian.

Borrowed verb roots are less common, and include the following examples.

-ფიქრ-	-pikr-	'think' (cf. Arabic <i>fikr</i> , Persian <i>fikr</i>)
-თარგმნ-	-targmn-	'translate' (cf. Arabic <i>tarjam</i> , Persian <i>tarjome</i> , Turkish <i>tercume</i>)
-ანალიზ-	-analiz-	'analyze'

There are many instances in the colloquial language of borrowings almost displacing the native Georgian term. Examples include მალინა *malina* in place of the Georgian ჯოლო *žolo* 'raspberry', გაროხი *garoxi* instead of the Georgian ბარდა *barda* 'pea', ვერტალოტი *vert'a lot'i* in place of the Georgian შვეულმფრენი *šveulmpreni* 'helicopter' (or, indeed, ვერტმფრენი *vertmpreni*), and შურუპი *šurup'i* instead of the Georgian ხრახნი *xraxni* 'screw'.

False Cognates

The majority of the Georgian words that might at first sight appear familiar to the native English speaker, but which can actually differ significantly in meaning, are borrowings from European languages. Here is a small selection of these false cognates (or 'false friends').

აირი	<i>airi</i>	'gas'	not	'air'
ანეკდოტი	<i>anek'dot'i</i>	'joke'	not only	'anecdote'
ასისტენტი	<i>asist'ent'i</i>	'junior teacher'	not	'assistant'
აქტუალური	<i>akt'ualuri</i>	'topical'	not	'actual'
აქცია	<i>akcia</i>	'stock (equity)'	not only	'action'
ბატარეა	<i>bat'area</i>	'(central heating) radiator'	not only	'battery'
ბატონი	<i>bat'oni</i>	'lord, mister'	not	'baton'
ბილეთი	<i>bileti</i>	'ticket'	not	'billet'
ბლანკი	<i>blank'i</i>	'form'	not	'blank'
ბრილიანტი	<i>briliant'i</i>	'diamond'	not	'brilliant'
გენიალური	<i>genialuri</i>	'of genius'	not	'genial'
გრაფი	<i>grapi</i>	'count / earl'	not	'graph'
დეტექტივი	<i>det'ekt'ivi</i>	'crime novel / film'	not only	'detective'
ელემენტი	<i>element'i</i>	'battery'	not only	'element'
ეტიკეტი	<i>et'ik'eti</i>	'label'	not only	'etiquette'
ვენტილატორი	<i>vent'ilat'ori</i>	'fan'	not only	'ventilator'
კანონი	<i>k'anoni</i>	'law'	not	'can(n)on'
კარტონი	<i>k'art'oni</i>	'cardboard'	not	'carton'
კონვერტი	<i>k'onvert'i</i>	'envelope'	not	'convert'
კონკურენტი	<i>k'unk'urent'i</i>	'(business) competitor'	not	'concurrent'
კონკურენცია	<i>k'onk'urencia</i>	'(business) competition'	not	'concurrence'
კონკურსი	<i>k'onk'ursi</i>	'competition'	not	'concourse'
კონსერვატორია	<i>k'onsevat'oria</i>	'conservatoire'	not	'conservatory (UK Eng.)'
კონტროლი	<i>k'ont'roli</i>	'supervision'	not only	'control'
კოსტიუმი	<i>k'ost'iumi</i>	'suit'	not only	'costume'
ლომბრდი	<i>lombardi</i>	'pawnshop'	not	'Lombardy'
მაღაზია	<i>magazia</i>	'shop'	not	'magazine'
მიტინგი	<i>mit'ingi</i>	'political rally'	not	'(non-political) meeting'
ნათურა	<i>natura</i>	'light bulb'	not	'nature'
ნომერი	<i>nomeri</i>	'(hotel) room'	not only	'number'
ოპერატორი	<i>op'erat'ori</i>	'cameraman'	not only	'operator'
პატრონი	<i>p'at'roni</i>	'owner'	not	'patron'
პლაკატი	<i>p'lak'at'i</i>	'poster'	not	'placate'
პრემია	<i>p'remia</i>	'prize'	not only	'premium'
პროექტი	<i>p'roekt'i</i>	'draft'	not only	'project'
პროცენტი	<i>p'rocent'i</i>	'(bank) interest'	not only	'per cent'
პროცესი	<i>p'rocesi</i>	'court case'	not only	'process'

ჟურნალი	<i>žurnali</i>	'magazine'	not	'journal'
რეაქტიული	<i>reakt'iuli</i>	'jet (plane)'	not	'reactor'
რეკლამა	<i>rek'lama</i>	'advertisement'	not	'reclaim'
რემონტი	<i>remont'i</i>	'repair'	not	'remount'
რეპეტიცია	<i>rep'et'icia</i>	'rehearsal'	not	'repetition'
რეფლექტორი	<i>replekt'ori</i>	'(electric) bar heater'	not only	'reflector'
რეცეპტი	<i>recep't'i</i>	'(medical) prescription, recipe'	not	'receipt'
როიალი	<i>roiali</i>	'grand piano'	not	'royal'
რომანი	<i>romani</i>	'novel (literature)'	not	'Roman'
სერვანტი	<i>servant'i</i>	'sideboard'	not	'servant'
სერიალი	<i>seriali</i>	'soap opera, TV serial'	not	'serial'
სიმპათიური	<i>simp'atiuri</i>	'nice (person)'	not	'sympathetic'
სცენა	<i>scena</i>	'stage'	not only	'scene (of play)'
ტრანსლაცია	<i>t'ranslacia</i>	'transmission'	not	'translation'
ფაბრიკა	<i>pabrik'a</i>	'factory'	not	'fabric'
ფორმა	<i>porma</i>	'uniform'	not only	'form'
ფრაქცია	<i>prackia</i>	'faction'	not	'fraction'

Note also that there are also some examples of Georgian terms that are coincidentally similar to English words. However, it is rare that their meanings might coincidentally appear to be remotely related (cf. ბუჩქი *bučk-i* 'bush'; ველი *veli* 'field', **not** 'valley').

Word List

The following word list covering one hundred basic items and concepts is provided here for reference. Verbs are given in root form, with all root variants being listed. The morphological analysis in the case of some of the transcriptions has been simplified.

I	მე	<i>me</i>
you	შენ (sg) თქვენ (pl)	<i>šen, tkven</i>
we	ჩვენ	<i>čven</i>
this	ეს	<i>es</i>
that	ეგ, ის	<i>eg, is</i>
who	ვინ	<i>vin</i>
what	რა	<i>ra</i>
not	არ(ა)	<i>ara</i>
all	ყველა	<i>q'vela</i>
many	ბევრი	<i>bevr-i</i>
one	ერთი	<i>ert-i</i>
two	ორი	<i>or-i</i>
big	დიდი	<i>did-i</i>
long	გრძობილი	<i>grž+el-i</i>
small	პატარა	<i>p'at'ara</i>
woman	ქალი	<i>kal-i</i>

man	კაცი	<i>k'ac-i</i>
person	ადამიანი	<i>adam+ian-i</i>
fish	თევზი	<i>tevz-i</i>
bird	ჩიტი	<i>čit'-i</i>
dog	ძალი	<i>žagl-i</i>
louse	ტილი	<i>t'il-i</i>
tree	ხე	<i>xe</i>
seed	თესლი	<i>tesl-i</i>
leaf	ფოთოლი	<i>potol-i</i>
root	ფესვი	<i>pesv-i</i>
bark	ქერქი	<i>kerk-i</i>
skin	ტყავი	<i>t'q'av-i</i>
flesh	ხორცი	<i>xorc-i</i>
blood	სისხლი	<i>sisxl-i</i>
bone	ძვალი	<i>žval-i</i>
grease	ცხიმი	<i>cxim-i</i>
egg	კვერცხი	<i>k'vercx-i</i>
horn	რქა	<i>rka</i>
tail	კუდი	<i>k'ud-i</i>
feather	ბუმბული, ნაკრტენი (obs.)	<i>bum(+)<i>bul-i</i>, na+k'rt'en-i</i> (obs.)
hair	თმა	<i>tma</i>
head	თავი	<i>tav-i</i>
ear	ყური	<i>q'ur-i</i>
eye	თვალი	<i>tval-i</i>
nose	ცხვირი	<i>cxvir-i</i>
mouth	პირი	<i>p'ir-i</i>
tooth	კბილი	<i>k'b+il-i</i>
tongue	ენა	<i>ena</i>
claw	კლანჭი	<i>k'lanč'-i</i>
foot	ფეხი	<i>pex-i</i>
knee	მუხლი	<i>muxl-i</i>
hand	ხელი	<i>xel-i</i>
belly	მუცელი	<i>mucel-i</i>
neck	კისერი	<i>k'iser-i</i>
breast	ძუძუ	<i>žu+žu</i>
heart	გული	<i>gul-i</i>
liver	ღვიძლი	<i>gvižl-i</i>
drink	-სვ-, -ს-, -სმევ-, -ლევ-, -ლი-, -ლივ-	<i>-sv-, -s-, -smev-, -lev-, -li-, -liv-</i>
eat	-ჭ(ა)მ-, -ჭმ-, -ჭმე(ვ)-, -ჭმი-	<i>-č'(a)m-, -č'm-, -č'me(v)-, -č'mi-</i>
bite	-კბენ-, -კბინ-	<i>-k'ben-, -k'bin-</i>
see	-ხედ-, -ნახ(+ულ)-, -ნახვ-	<i>-xed-, -nax(+ul)-, -naxv-</i>

hear	-სმენ-, -სმინ-, -სმ(ნ)-	-smen-, -smin-, -sm(n)-
know	-ც-, -ცოდ(ი)ნ-, -ცნ+ობ-	-c-, -cod(i)n-, -cn+ob-
sleep	-ძინ-	-žin-
die	-კვდ(+ომ)-	-k'vd(+om)-
kill	-კ(ა)ლ-, -კვლ-	-k'(a)l-, -k'vl-
swim	-ცურ-, -ცურ+ა(ვ)-	-cur-, -cur+a(v)-
fly	-ფრენ-, -ფრინ-, -ფრნ-	-pren-, -prin-, -prn-
walk	'go' + 'on foot' ¹	
come	'go' + 'hither' ¹	
lie	-წოლ-, -წ(ე)ვ-, -წექ-	-c'ol-, -c'(e)v-, -c'ek-
sit	-ჯდ(ომ)-, -ზი-, -ჯდ-, -ჯექ-, -სხდ(ომ)-, -სხ(ე)დ-	-jd(om)-, -zi-, -jd-, -jek-, -sxd(om)-, -sx(e)d-
stand	-დგ(+ომ), -დგა-, -დგე-, -დგ-, -დექ-, -დეგ-	-dg(+om)-, -dga-, -dge-, -dg-, -dek-, -deg-
give	-ცემ)-, -ძლე(ვ)-, -ძლი(ვ)-	-c(em)-, -žle(v)-, -žli(v)-
say	-მბ(+ობ)-, -(ა)მბ-, -ტყ(ვ)-, -თქ(ვ)-, -უბნ-, -თხ(ა)რ-	-mb(+ob)-, -(a)mb-, -t'q(v)-, -tk(v)-, -ubn-, -tx(a)r-
sun	მზე	mze
moon	მთვარე	mtvare
star	ვარცკლავი	varck'lav-i
water	წყალი	c'q'al-i
rain	წვიმა	c'vima
stone	ქვა	kva
sand	ქვიშა	kviša
earth	მიცა	mica
cloud	ღრუბელი	ğrubel-i
smoke	ბოლი, კვამლი	bol-i, k'vaml-i
fire	ცეცხლი	cecxl-i
ash	ნაცარი	na+car-i
burn	-წვ-	-c'v-
path	ბილიკი	bilik'-i
mountain	მთა	mta
red	წითელი	c'itel-i
green	მცვანე	mcvane
yellow	ყვითელი	q'vitel-i
white	თეთრი	tetr-i
black	შავი	šav-i
night	ღამე	ğame
hot	ცხელი	cxel-i
cold	ცივი	civ-i
full	სავსე	savse
new	ახალი	axal-i
good	კარგი	k'arg-i
round	მრგვალი	mrgval-i

dry მშრალი

m+šr+al-i

name სახელი

sax+el-i

¹ The verb 'go' uses the following roots: -ხვლ- *-svl-*, -დი- *-di-*, -ვა(ლ)- *-va(l)-*, -ვედ- *-ved-*, -ველ- *-vel-*, -ს- *-s-*, and -არ- *-ar-*.

SAMPLE TEXT

This sample text is a folk tale that comes from Svaneti, the mountainous homeland of the Svans, who are one of the Kartvelian peoples. Five versions of the tale are given in the analysis: the original Georgian text (marked .1), a transliteration (marked .2), a word-for-word gloss with grammatical information (marked .3), a word-for-word translation (marked .4), and a free translation (marked .5). The piece illustrates many of salient features of the Georgian language.

The free translation attempts to capture the essence of the original, but many of the nuances of the Georgian text cannot readily be conveyed. Note that watch-towers are a distinctive feature of Svaneti, the earliest of which date from the first millennium BC. Many were erected in medieval times to help defend the land and, of these, about two hundred have survived. Note also the significance of the number twelve in South Caucasian folklore.

Text

სწორ-მრუდის მაკრატელა

იყო და არა იყო რა, იყო ხუთი ძმა. ერთხელ ძმებმა მოითათბირეს:

– მოდი, ერთი ისეთი კოშკი ავაშენოთ, მთელ ხეობაში იმისთანა მეორე არ იდგესო.

მართლაც, ადგნენ და წავიდნენ ოსტატის სამეზნელად. ბევრი ძნებისა და კითხვა-კითხვის შემდეგ იპოვეს ერთი კარგი ოსტატი და შეუდგნენ კოშკის აშენებას. თორმეტ წელიწადს აშენეს და, როგორც იქნა, მეთორმეტე წელიწადს დაასრულეს. აშენება რომ დაამთავრეს, ოსტატმა თქვა:

– წადით ახლა, მთელი ხეობა დაიარეთ და თუ სადმე უკეთესი კოშკი ნახოთ, რაც გინდა, ის მიყავითო.

დაიარეს ძმებმა მთელი ხეობა, ყველა კოშკი დაათვალიერეს, მაგრამ თავიანთი კოშკისთანა, მართლაც, მეორე ვერ მონახეს. ძმებმა იფიქრეს: კოშკი კი ყველაზე უკეთესი გვიდგას, მაგრამ ჩვენმა ოსტატმა ხომ შეიძლება სხვასაც აუშენოს ასეთი კოშკი. მოდი, ოსტატი დილეგში ჩავამწყვდიოთ და სხვა კოშკს ვეღარ ააშენებსო.

ძმები შინ დაბრუნდნენ, ოსტატი დილეგში შეაგდეს და უთხრეს:

– კოშკი საუკეთესოა გვიშენებია, მაგრამ სანამ თუჯის კარსაც არ ჩამოაბამ, დილეგში იჯდებიო.

– კარგიო, – უთხრა ოსტატმა, –

ოღონდ, ერთ რამესა გთხოვთ და ის უნდა ამისრულოთ: ჩემს ცოლთან მიმეგზავნეთ და უთხარით, თორმეტკლიტულში რომ ჩემი სწორ-მრუდის მაკრატელა დევს, ის გამოგატანოთ, თორემ თუჯის კარს ვერ ჩამოვაბამო.

ძმებმა იფიქრეს, რა გვენდვლება, წავალთ, იმ სწორ-

მრუდის მაკრატელას მოვიტანთ, თუჯის კარსაც ჩამოვაბამთ, ოსტატის დამწყვდევას კი მერეც მოვესწრებითო.

გაგზავნეს ორი ძმა. ბევრი სიარულის შემდეგ ძმები ოსტატის ცოლს მიადგნენ და დანაბარები მოახსენეს. ქალი მათში ნვე მიხვდა ყველაფერს, შეიყვანა ძმები თორმეტკლიტულში, კარი გარედან მაგრად დაუკეტა დამიამახა:

– ერთი კაცი ხომ ჩემი ქმარია დამწყვდეული, ორნიც თქვენ იქნებითო.

ძმებმა რომ დაიგვიანეს, ადგა კიდევ ორი ძმა და იმათი ამბის გასაგებად გაემურა. ოსტატის ცოლმა ამათაც იგივე დღე აწია: შეიყვანა თორმეტკლიტულში, ორ ძმას კიდევ ორი მიუმატა და გარედან კარი მაგრად დაუკეტა.

– ერთი ჩემი ქმარი იქნება დამწყვდეული, ოთხი კი თქვენო.

გავიდა ხანი და ძმებმა იფიქრეს: თუ რამე არ ვიღონეთ, ამ თორმეტკლიტულში ამოვიხოცებითო და ოსტატის ცოლს შეუთვალეს:

– ოღონდ აქედან გავვიშვი და რასაც ითხოვ, აგისრულებთო.

ოსტატის ცოლმა უპასუხა:

– რამდენი ლოდის თქვენს ციხე-კოშკს მოხმარდა, იმდენ ხარ-
ძროხას სანამ არ მომიყვანთ და ჩემს ქმარსაც არ გამოუშვებთ, დღის სინათლეს ვერ ეღირსებითო.

რალას იზამდნენ დამწყვედული ძმები, შინ დარჩენილს კაცი გაუგზავნეს და ყველაფერი წერილად შეუთვალეს: ჩვენ
ი ოსტატის გამოუშვი, რაც ხარ-ძროხა გვყავს, ისიც დღესვე აქ მორეკეო. ამ ხუთივე ძმასუთვალავი ხარ-
ძროხა ჰყავდა. გამოუშვა ძმამ დილეგში დამწყვედული ოსტატი, გაირეკა წინ ხუთივე ძმის ჯოგი, ოსტატის ცოლს კა
რზე მიაყენა. ოსტატის ცოლმაც თავისი აასრულა, გაათავისუფლათორმეტკლიტულში დამწყვედული ოთხივე ძმა დ
ა უთხრა:

– აი, ასეც თქვენი სწორ-მრუდის მაკრატელა, წაბრძანდით და ღმერთმა სიკეთეში მოგახმაროთო.

კუდამოძუებული ძმები შინ დაბრუნდნენ, ოსტატმა და მისმა ცოლმა კი ბედნიერად იცხოვრეს.

უჩა ცინდელიანი «სვანური ზღაპრები» © გამომცემლობა „ნაკადული“ თბილისი 1991 წ.

Analysis

1.1 სწორ-მრუდის მაკრატელა

1.2 *sc'or-mrud-is mak'rat'ela*

1.3 straight-curve (gen sg) | shears (nom sg)

1.4 of straight-curve | shears

1.5 The Straight-Curved Shears

2.1 იყო და არა იყო რა, იყო ხუთი ძმა.

2.2 *i-q'-o da ara i-q'-o ra, i-q'-o xut-i žm-a.*

2.3 X-is (aor 3s) | and | not | X-is (aor 3s) | what (nom), | X-is (aor 3s) | five (nom) | brother (nom sg).

2.4 it was | and | not | it was | what, | he was | five | brother.

2.5 Once upon a time there were five brothers.

3.1 ერთხელ ძმებმა მოითათბირეს:

3.2 *ert+xel žm-eb-ma mo-i-tatbir-es:*

3.3 once | brother (nar pl) | X-deliberates-Y (aor 3p 3s):

3.4 once | brothers | they deliberated it:

3.5 One day they deliberated:

4.1 – მოდი, ერთი ისეთი კოშკი ავაშენოთ, მთელ ხეობაში იმისთანა მეორე არ იდგესო.

4.2 *mo+di, ert-i i+se+t-i k'ošk'-i a-v-a-šen-o-t, mtel xeoba-ši im-is-tana me-or-e ar i-dg-es-o.*

4.3 [particle], | one (nom) | such (nom) | tower (nom sg) | X-builds-Y (opt 1p 3s), | whole (dat) | valley (dat sg) – in | that
(gen) – [suffix] | another (nom) | not | X-stands (opt 3s) – [particle].

4.4 come, | one | such | tower | let us build it, | whole | in the valley | such | another | not | it may stand.

4.5 "Let's build such a tower," they said, "the like of which there will be no other in the whole valley."

5.1 მართლაც, ადგნენ და წავიდნენ ოსტატის საძებნელად.

5.2 *martla-c, a-dg-nen da c'a-vid-nen ost'at'-is sa-žebn-el-ad.*

5.3 true – [particle], | X-rises (aor 3p) | and | X-departs (aor 3p) | craftsman (gen sg) | X-searches-for-Y (fut part adv).

5.4 indeed, | they got up | and | they departed | of a craftsman | to be searched for.

5.5 And so they set out to look for a master-builder.

6.1 ბევრი ძნებისა და კითხვა-კითხვის შემდეგ იპოვეს ერთი კარგი ოსტატი და შეუდგნენ კოშკის აშენებას.

6.2 *bevr-i žebn-is-a da k'itx-v-a-k'itx-v-is šemdeg i-p'ov-es ert-i k'arg-i ost'at'-i da še-u-dg-nen k'ošk'-is a-šen-eb-a-s.*

6.3 much (gen) | X-searches-for-Y (masdar gen) | and | X-asks (masdar nom) – X-asks (masdar gen) | after | X-finds-Y
(aor 3p 3s) | one (nom) | good (nom) | craftsman (nom sg) | and | X-begins-Y (aor 3p 3s) | tower (gen sg) | X-builds-Y
(masdar dat).

6.4 much | of searching | and | of asking-asking | after | they found him | one | good | craftsman | and | they began it | of
the tower | building.

6.5 After much searching and questioning they found a good builder, and they began to construct the tower.

7.1 თორმეტ წელიწადს აშენეს და, როგორც იქნა, მეთორმეტე წელიწადს დაასრულეს.

7.2 *t+or+met' c'el+i+c'ad-s a-šen-es da, rogor-c i-kn-a, me-t+or+met'-e c'el+i+c'ad-s da-a-srul-es.*

7.3 twelve (dat) | year (dat sg) | X-builds-Y (aor 3p 3s) | and, | how – [particle] | X-is (aor 3s), | twelfth (dat) | year (dat
sg) | X-completes-Y (aor 3p 3s).

7.4 twelve | year | they built it | and, | as | it was, | twelfth | year | they completed it.

7.5 They were twelve years building it and, at long last, they completed it in the twelfth year.

8.1 აშენება რომ დაამთავრეს, ოსტატმა თქვა:

8.2 *a-šen-eb-a rom da-a-mtavr-es, ost'at'-ma tkv-a:*

8.3 X-builds-Y (masdar nom) | that | X-finishes-Y (aor 3p 3s), | craftsman (nar sg) | X-says-Y (aor 3s 3s):

8.4 building | when | they finished it, | craftsman | he said it:

8.5 When it was finished, the builder said:

9.1 – წადით ახლა, მთელი ხეობა დაიარეთ და თუ სადმე უკეთესი კოშკი ნახოთ, რაც გინდა, ის მიყავითო.

9.2 – *c'a-di-t axla, mtel-i xeoba da-i-ar-e-t da tu sad-me u+k'et+es-i k'ošk'-i nax-o-t, ra-c g-i-nd-a-t, is m-i-q'av-i-t-o.*

9.3 X-goes-away (imper 2p) | now, | all (nom) | valley (nom sg) | X-visits-various-places-in-Y (imper 2p 3s) | and | if | where – [particle] | better (nom) | tower (nom sg) | X-sees-Y (opt 2p 3s), | what (nom) – [particle] | X-wants-Y (pres 2p 3s), | that (nom) | X-does-Y-to-Z (imper 2p 3s 1s) – [particle].

9.4 go away | now, | all | valley | you travel around it | and | if | somewhere | better | tower | you may see it, | what | you want it, | that | do it to me he said.

9.5 "Go now and travel around the whole valley, and if you see a better tower standing anywhere, you may do whatever you want with me."

10.1 დაიარეს მძებმა მთელი ხეობა, ყველა კოშკი დაათვალიერეს, მაგრამ თავიანთი კოშკისთანა, მართლაც, მეორე ვერ მონახეს.

10.2 *da-i-ar-es žm-eb-ma mtel-i xeob-a, q'vela k'ošk'-i da-a-tval+ier-es, magram tav+ian+t-i k'ošk'-is-tana, martla+c, me-or-e ver mo-nax-es.*

10.3 X-visits-various-places-in-Y (aor 3p 3s) | brother (nar pl) | whole (nom) | valley (nom sg), | all (nom) | tower (nom sg) | X-goes-and-sees-Y (aor 3p 3s), | but | their-own (gen) | tower (gen sg) – [suffix], | true – [particle], | other (nom) | [particle] | X-searches-for-and-finds-Y (aor 3p 3s).

10.4 they visited various places in it | brothers | whole | valley, | all | tower | they went and saw it, | but | their own | like the tower, | indeed, | another | could not | they searched for and found it.

10.5 The brothers traveled around the whole valley taking a look at all the towers, but they just could not find another one like their own.

11.1 მძებმა იფიქრეს: კოშკი კი ყველაზე უკეთესი გვიდგას, მაგრამ ჩვენმა ოსტატმა ხომ შეიძლება სხვასაც აუშენოს ა სეთი კოშკი.

11.2 *žm-eb-ma i-pikr-es: k'ošk'-i k'i q'vela-ze u+k'et+es-i gv-i-dga-s, magram čven-ma ost'at'-ma xom še+i+žl+eb+a sxva-s-a-c a-u-šen-os ase+t-i k'ošk'-i (nom).*

11.3 brother (nar pl) | X-thinks (aor 3p): | tower (nom sg) | [particle] | all (dat) – on | better (nom) | X's-Y-stands (pres 1p 3s), | but | our (nar) | craftsman (nar sg) | [particle] | [particle] | other (dat sg) – [case extension] – [particle] | X-builds-Y-for-Z (opt 3s 3s 3s) | such-a (nom) | tower (nom sg).

11.4 brothers | they thought: | tower | indeed | of all | best | ours stands, | but | our | craftsman | surely | can | other | he may build it for him | such a | tower.

11.5 Then the thought occurred to them: "Although we have the best tower of all, it is surely possible that our builder might construct another like it for someone else."

12.1 მოდი, ოსტატი დილეგში ჩავამწყვდიოთ და სხვა კოშკს ვეღარ ააშენებსო.

12.2 *mo+di, ost'at'-i dileg-ši ča-v-a-mc'q'vd-i-o-t da sxva k'ošk'-s ve+gar a-a-šen-eb-s-o.*

12.3 [particle], | craftsman (nom sg) | dungeon (dat sg) – in | X-locks-Y-up-in (opt 1p 3s) | and | other (dat) | tower (dat sg) | [particle] | X-builds-Y (fut 3s 3s) – [particle].

12.4 come, | craftsman | in the dungeon | we may lock him up | and | other | tower | can no longer | he will build it they said.

12.5 Let's lock him up in the dungeon, and he will no longer be able to build another tower."

13.1 მძებნი შინ დაბრუნდნენ, ოსტატი დილეგში შეაგდეს და უთხრეს:

13.2 *žm-eb-i šin da-brun-d-nen, ost'at'-i dileg-ši še-a-gd-es da u-txr-es:*

13.3 brother (nom pl) | home | X-returns (aor 3p), | craftsman (nom sg) | dungeon (dat sg) – in | X-throws-Y-in (aor 3p 3s) | and | X-says-Y-to-Z (aor 3p 3s 3s):

13.4 brothers | home | they returned, | craftsman | in the dungeon | they threw him in | and | they said it to him:

13.5 The brothers returned home, threw the builder into the dungeon, and said to him:

14.1 – კოშკი საუკეთესო აგვიშენებია, მაგრამ სანამ თუჯის კარსაც არ ჩამოაბამ, დილეგში იჯდებიო.

14.2 – *k'ošk'-i sa-u+k'et+es-o a-g-i-šen-eb-i-a, magram sanam tuj-is k'ar-s-a-c ar ča+mo-a-b-am, dileg-ši i-jd-eb-i-o.*

14.3 tower (nom sg) | best (nom) | X-builds-Y (perf 2s 3s), | but | until | cast-iron (gen) | door (dat sg) – [case extension] – [particle] | not | X-hangs-Y (fut 2s 3s), | dungeon (dat sg) – in | X-sits (fut 2s) – [particle].

14.4 tower | best | you have built it, | but | until | of cast iron | door | not | you will hang it, | in the dungeon | you will sit he said.

14.5 "You may have built the best tower of all but, unless you add an iron door, you will remain in the dungeon."

15.1 – კარგიო, – უთხრა ოსტატმა, – ოღონდ, ერთ რამესა გთხოვთ და ის უნდა ამისრულოთ:

15.2 – *k'arg-i-o, – u-txr-a ost'at'-ma, – oğond, ert ra-me-s-a g-txov-t da is u+nd+a a-m-i-srul-o-t.*

15.3 good (nom) – [particle], | X-says-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s) | craftsman (nar sg), | however, | one (dat) | what – [particle]

(dat) – [case extension] | X-requests-Y-of-Z (pres 1s 3s 2p) | and | that (nom) | [particle] | X-fulfils-Y-for-Z (opt 2p 3s 1s):
15.4 good he said, | he said it to him | craftsman, | however, | one | something | I ask it of you | and | that | must | you may fulfil it for me:

15.5 "All right," the builder said, "but I have one request, which you must grant me:

16.1 ჩემს ცოლთან მიმეგზავნეთ და უთხარიტ, თორმეტკლიტულში რომ ჩემი სწორ-

მრუდის მაკრატელა დევს, ის გამოგატანოთ, თორემ თუჯის კარს ვერ ჩამოვაბამო.

16.2 *čem-s col-tan mi-m-e-gzavn-e-t da u-txar-i-t, t+or+met'-k'lit'-ul-ši rom čem-i sc'or-mrud-is mak'rat'ela dev-s, is ga+mo-g-a-t'an-o-t, torem tuj-is k'ar-s ver ča-mo-v-a-b-am-o.*

16.3 my (dat) | wife (dat sg) – at | X-visits-at-Y's-request (imper 2p 1s) | and | X-says-Y-to-Z (imper 2p 3s 3s), | twelve-lock-place (dat sg) – in | that | my (nom) | straight-curve (gen sg) | shears (nom sg) | X-lies (stat pres 3s), | that (nom) | X-sends-Y-by-Z's-hand (opt 3s 3s 2p), | else | cast-iron (gen) | door (dat sg) | [particle] | X-hangs-Y (fut 1s 3s) – [particle].

16.4 my | at wife's place | visit at my request | and | say it to her, | in the twelve lock place | that | my | of straight-curve | shears | it lies, | that | she may send it by your hand, | else | cast iron | door | cannot | I will hang it he said.

16.5 Go to my wife for me and tell her to give you my straight-curved shears that is kept behind twelve locks, for without it I cannot hang the iron door."

17.1 ძმებმა იფიქრეს, რა გვენაღვლება, წავალთ, იმ სწორ-

მრუდის მაკრატელას მოვიტანთ, თუჯის კარსაც ჩამოვაბამთ, ოსტატის დამწყვედევას კი მერეც მოვესწრებითო.

17.2 *zm-eb-ma i-pikr-es, ra gv-e-nağvl-eb-a, c'a-val-t, im sc'or-mrud-is mak'rat'ela-s mo-v-i-t'an-t, tuj-is k'ar-s-a-c ča+mo-v-a-b-am-t, ost'at'-is da-mc'q'vd-ev-a-s k'i mere-c mo-v-e-sc'r-eb-i-t-o.*

17.3 brother (nar pl) | X-thinks (aor 3p), | what (nom) | X-bothers-Y (pres 3s 1p), | X-goes-away (fut 1p), | that (dat) | straight-curve (gen sg) | shears (dat sg) | X-brings-Y (fut 1p 3s), | cast-iron (gen) | door (dat) – [case extension] – [particle] | X-hangs-Y (fut 1p 3s), | craftsman (gen sg) | X-locks-Y-up (masdar dat) | [particle] | then – [particle] | X-will-do-Y-on-time (fut 1p 3s) – [particle].

17.4 brothers | they thought, | what | it bothers us, | we will go away, | that | of straight-curve | shears | we will bring it, | cast iron | door | we will hang it, | of the craftsman | locking up | however | after | we will do it on time they said.

17.5 The brothers thought: "What does it matter to us – we'll go and fetch the straight-curved shears, we'll hang the iron door, and we can lock up the builder later."

18.1 გაგზავნეს ორი ძმა.

18.2 *ga-gzavn-es or-i žma.*

18.3 X-sends-Y (aor 3p 3s) | two (nom) | brother (nom sg).

18.4 they sent him | two | brother.

18.5 They sent two of the brothers off.

19.1 ბევრი სიარულის შემდეგ ძმები ოსტატის ცოლს მიადგნენ და დანაბარები მოახსენეს.

19.2 *bevr-i si+ar+ul-is šemdeg zm-eb-i ost'at'-is col-s mi-a-dg-nen da da-na-bar-eb-i mo-a-xsen-es.*

19.3 much (gen) | X-walks (masdar gen) | after | brother (nom pl) | craftsman (gen sg) | wife (dat sg) | X-approaches-Y (aor 3p 3s) | and | X-entrusts-Y (perf part nom pl) | X-says-Y-to-Z (aor 3p 3s 3s).

19.4 much | of walking | after | brothers | of the craftsman | wife | they approached her | and | what had been entrusted | they said it to her.

19.5 After much walking, they reached the builder's wife and gave her the message.

20.1 ქალი მაშინვე მიხვდა ყველაფერს, შეიყვანა ძმები თორმეტკლიტულში, კარი გარედან მაგრად დაუკეტა და მიაბა ახა:

20.2 *kal-i mašin-ve mi-Ø-xvd-a q'vela+per-s, še-i-q'van-a zm-eb-i t+or+met'-k'lit-ul-ši, k'ar-i gare+dan magr-ad da-u-k'et'-a da mi-a-žax-a:*

20.3 woman (nom sg) | then – [particle] | X-realizes-Y (aor 3s 3s) | everything (dat), | X-brings-Y-in (aor 3s 3p) | brother (nom pl) | twelve-lock-place (dat sg) – in, | door (nom sg) | from-outside | strongly | X-closes-Y-on-Z (aor 3s 3s 3p) | and | X-suddenly-calls-out-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3p):

20.4 woman | right then | she realized it | everything, | she brought them in | brothers | into the twelve lock place, | door | from outside | strongly | she closed it on them | and | she suddenly called it out to them:

20.5 She immediately realized what was afoot, led the brothers into the room with twelve locks, and securely locked them in, calling out to them:

21.1 – ერთი კაცი ხომ ჩემი ქმარია დამწყვედეული, ორნიც თქვენ იქნებითო.

21.2 – *ert-i k'ac-i xom čem-i kmar-i-a da-mc'q'vd-e-ul-i, or-n-i-c tkven i-kn-eb-i-t-o.*

21.3 one (nom) | man (nom sg) | [particle] | my (nom) | husband (nom sg) – X-is (pres 3s) | X-locks-Y-up (perf part nom sg) | two (nom pl) – [particle] | you (nom pl) | X-is (fut 2p) – [particle].

21.4 one | man | indeed | my | husband is | locked up | two | you | you will be she said.

21.5 "My husband is just one prisoner, and now you'll make two more!"

22.1 ძმებმა რომ დაიგვიანეს, ადგა კიდევ ორი ძმა და იმათი აძბის გასაგებად გაეშურა.

22.2 *zm-eb-ma rom da-i-gvian-es, a-dg-a k'idev or-i žma da i+mat-i amb-is ga-sa-g-eb-ad ga-e-šur-a.*

22.3 brother (nar pl) | that | X-is-late (aor 3p), | X-gets-up (aor 3s) | again | two (nom) | brother (nom sg) | and | their (gen) | news (gen sg) | X-learns-of-Y (fut part adv) | X-hurries-away (aor 3s).

22.4 brothers | when | they were late, | he got up | another | two | brother | and | their | of the news | to learn of | they hurried away.

22.5 When the brothers were overdue, two others rushed off to find out what had happened to them.

23.1 ოსტატის ცოლმა ამათაც იგივე დღე აწია:

23.2 *ost'at'-is col-ma a+ma+t-a-c igi-ve dge a-c'-i-a*:

23.3 craftsman (gen sg) | wife (nar sg) | that (dat pl) – [case extension] – [particle] | it (nom) – [particle] | day (nom sg) | X-causes-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3p):

23.4 of the craftsman | wife | them | very same | day | she caused it to them:

23.5 The builder's wife played the very same trick on them too.

24.1 შეიყვანა თორმეტკლიტულში, ორ ძმას კიდევ ორი მიუმატა და გარედან კარი მაგრად დაუკეტა.

24.2 *še-i-q'van-a t+or+met'-k'lit'-ul-ši, or žma-s k'idev or-i mi-u-mat'-a da gare+dan k'ar-i magr-ad da-u-k'et'-a*.

24.3 X-brings-Y-in (aor 3s 3p) | twelve-lock-place (dat sg) – in, | two (dat) | brother (dat sg) | again | two (nom) | X-adds-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s) | and | from-outside | door (nom sg) | strongly | X-closes-Y-on-Z (aor 3s 3s 3p).

24.4 she brought them in | into the twelve lock place, | two | brother | more | two | she added him to him | and | from outside | door | strongly | she closed it on them.

24.5 She led them into the room with twelve locks, put the two of them with the other pair, and closed the door securely on them from outside.

25.1 – ერთი ჩემი ქმარი იქნება დამწყვდეული, ოთხი კი თქვენო.

25.2 – *ert-i čem-i kmar-i i-kn-eb-a da-mc'q'vd-e-ul-i, otx-i k'i tkven-o*.

25.3 one (nom) | my (nom) | husband (nom sg) | X-is (fut 3s) | X-locks-Y-up (perf part nom sg) | four (nom) | [particle] | you (nom pl) – [particle].

25.4 one | my | husband | he will be | locked up | four | however | you she said.

25.5 "My husband is just one prisoner, but there are four of you!"

26.1 გავიდა ხანი და ძმებმა იფიქრეს:

26.2 *ga-vid-a xan-i da žm-eb-ma i-pikr-es*:

26.3 X-goes (aor 3s) | period-of-time (nom sg) | and | brother (nar pl) | X-thinks (aor 3p):

26.4 it passed | period of time | and | brothers | they thought:

26.5 Some time passed and the brothers thought:

27.1 თუ რამე არ ვიღონეთ, ამ თორმეტკლიტულში ამოვიხოცებითო და ოსტატის ცოლს შეუთვალეს:

27.2 *tu ra-me ar v-i-ğon-e-t, am t+or+met'-k'lit'-ul-ši a-mo-v-i-xoc-eb-i-t-o da ost'at'-is col-s še-u-tval-es*:

27.3 if | what – [particle] | not | X-makes-vigorous-effort-to-achieve-Y (aor 1p 3s) | this (dat) | twelve-lock-place (dat sg) – in | X-is-killed (fut 1p) – [particle] | and | craftsman (gen sg) | wife (dat sg) | X-lets-Y-know-Z (aor 3p 3s 3s):

27.3 if | something | not | we made vigorous effort to achieve it | this | in the twelve lock place | we will be killed they said | and | of the craftsman | wife | they let her know it:

27.4 'If we don't attempt something, we will all die here in this room with twelve locks', and so they proposed to the builder's wife:

28.1 – ოღონდ აქედან გაგვიშვი და რასაც ითხოვ, აგისრულებთო.

28.2 – *oğond ake+dan ga-gv-i-šv-i da ra-s-a-c i-txov, a-g-i-srul-eb-t-o*.

28.3 only | from-here | X-lets-Y-go (imper 2s 1p) | and | what (dat) – [case extension] – [particle] | X-demands-Y (fut 2s 3s), | X-fulfils-Y-for-Z (fut 1p 3s 2s) – [particle].

28.4 only | from here | let us go | and | what | you demand it, | we will fulfil it for you they said.

28.5 "If you only let us out of here, we will do anything you ask of us."

29.1 ოსტატის ცოლმა უპასუხა:

29.2 *ost'at'-is col-ma u-p'asux-a*:

29.3 craftsman (gen sg) | wife (nar sg) | X-answers-Y (3s 3p):

29.4 of the craftsman | wife | she answered them:

29.5 The builder's wife replied:

30.1 – რამდენი ლოდიც თქვენს ციხე-კოშკს მოხმარდა, იმდენ ხარ-

ძროხას სანამ არ მომიყვანთ და ჩემს ქმარსაც არ გამოუშვებთ, დღის სინათლეს ვერ ეღირსებითო.

30.2 – *r+am+den-i lod-i-c tkven-s cixe-k'ošk'-s mo-Ø-xmar-d-a, im+den xar-žroxa-s sanam ar mo-m-i-q'van-t da čem-s kmar-s-a-c ar ga-mo-u-šv-eb-t, dg-is si+natl+e-s* (dat) *ver e-ğirs-eb-i-t-o*.

30.3 as-many (nom) | stone (nom sg) – [particle] | your (dat) | castle-tower (dat sg) | X-is-used-for-Y (aor 3s 3s), | so-many (dat) | bull-cow (dat sg) | until | not | X-brings-Y-to-Z (fut 2p 3s 1s) | and | my (dat) | husband (dat sg) – [case extension] – [particle] | not | X-lets-Y-out (fut 2p 3s) | day (gen sg) | light (dat) | [particle] | X-deserves-Y (fut 2p 3s) – [particle].

30.4 so many | stone | your | castle tower | it was used for it, | that many | bull cow | until | not | you will bring it to

me | and | my | husband | not | you will let him out | of the day | light | cannot | you will deserve it she said.

30.5 "Until you bring me here as many cattle as you have used stones in the tower, and until you have freed my husband, you will never see the light of day again!"

31.1 რაღას იზამდნენ დამწყვდეული ძმები, შინ დარჩენილს კაცი გაუგზავნეს და ყველაფერი წერილად შეუთვალეს:

31.2 *ra-ga-s i-z-am-d-nen da-mc'q'vd-e-ul-i žm-eb-i, šin da-rčen-il-š k'ac-i ga-u-gzavn-es da q'vela+per-i c'er+il-ad še-u-tval-es:*

31.3 what – [particle] (dat) | X-does-Y (cond 3p 3s) | X-locks-Y-up (perf part nom sg) | brother (nom pl), | at-home | X-remains (perf part dat sg) | man (nom sg) | X-sends-Y-to-Z (aor 3p 3s 3s) | and | everything (nom) | letter (adv sg) | X-lets-Y-know-Z (aor 3p 3s 3s):

31.4 something | they would do it | locked up | brothers, | at home | he who remained | man | they sent him to him | and | everything | by a letter | they let him know it:

31.5 What could the imprisoned brothers do but send a man to the remaining brother at home, explaining everything in a letter:

32.1 ჩვენი ოსტატე გამოუშვი, რაც ხარ-ძროხა გყავს, ისიც დღესვე აქ მორეკეო.

32.2 *čven-i ost'at'-i-c ga+mo-u-šv-i, ra-c xar-žroxa gv-q'av-s is-i-c dge-s-ve ak mo-rek'-e-o.*

32.3 our (nom) | craftsman (nom sg) – [particle] | X-lets-Y-go (imper 2s 3s), | what (nom) – [particle] | bull-cow (nom sg) | X-has-Y (pres 1p 3s) | that (nom) – [particle] | day (dat) – [particle] | here | X-brings-Y (imper 2s 3s) – [particle].

32.4 our | craftsman | let him go, | what | bull cow | we have it | that | this very day | here | bring it here they said.

32.5 "Let our builder go, and drive all our cattle here this very day", they wrote.

33.1 ამ ხუთივე ძმას უთვალავი ხარ-ძროხა ჰყავდა.

33.2 *am xut-i-ve žma-š u+tval+av-i xar-žroxa h-q'av-d-a.*

33.3 this (dat) | five – [particle] | brother (dat sg) | countless (nom) | bull-cow (nom sg) | X-has-Y (imp 3s 3s).

33.4 this | five | brother | countless | bull cow | he used to have it.

33.5 These five brothers had very many cattle indeed.

34.1 გამოუშვა ძმამ დილეგში დამწყვდეული ოსტატი, გაირეკა წინ ხუთივე ძმის ჯოგი, ოსტატის ცოლს კარზე მიაყენა.

34.2 *ga+mo-u-šv-a žma-m dileg-ši da-mc'q'vd-e-ul-i ost'at'-i, ga-i-rek'-a c'in xut-i-ve žm-is jog-i, ost'at'-is col-š k'ar-ze mi-a-q'en-a (aor).*

34.3 X-lets-Y-go (aor 3s 3s) | brother (nar sg) | dungeon (dat sg) – in | X-locks-Y-up (perf part nom sg) | craftsman (nom sg), | X-drives-Y (aor 3s 3s) | before | five (gen) – [particle] | brother (gen sg) | herd (nom sg), | craftsman (gen sg) | wife (dat sg) | door (dat sg) – on | X-brings-Y-to-a-stop-near-Z (aor 3s 3s 3s).

34.4 he lets him go | brother | in the dungeon | locked up | craftsman, | he drove it | before | five | of the brother | herd, | of the craftsman | wife | at the door | he brought it to a stop near it.

34.5 The brother set the builder free from the dungeon and drove the brothers' herd before him to the door of the house where the builder's wife lived.

35.1 ოსტატის ცოლმაც თავისი აასრულა, გაათავისუფლა თორმეტკლიტულში დამწყვდეული ოთხივე ძმა და უთხრა:

35.2 *ost'at'-is col-ma-c tav+is-i a-a-srul-a, ga-a-tav+is+upl-a t+or+met'-k'lit'-ul-ši da-mc'q'de-ul-i otx-i-ve žma da u-txr-a:*

35.3 craftsman (gen sg) | wife (nar sg) – [particle] | her (nom) | X-fulfils-Y (aor 3s 3s), | X-frees-Y (aor 3s 3s) | twelve-lock-place (dat sg) – in | X-locks-Y-up (perf part nom sg) | four – [particle] | brother (nom sg) | and | X-says-Y-to-Z (aor 3s 3s 3p):

35.4 of the craftsman | wife | her | she fulfilled it, | she freed him | in the twelve lock place | locked up | four | brother | and | she said to them:

35.5 The builder's wife kept her side of the bargain, freed the four brothers who were imprisoned in the room with twelve locks, and said:

36.1 – აი, ასეც თქვენი სწორ-მრუდის მაკრატელა, წაბრძანდით და ღმერთმა სიკეთეში მოგახმაროთო.

36.2 – *ai, ase-c tkven-i sc'or-mrud-is mak'rat'ela, c'a-bržan-d-i-t da ġmert-ma si+k'et+e-ši mo-g-a-xmar-o-t-o.*

36.3 [particle], | thus – [particle] | your (nom) | straight-curve (gen sg) | shears (nom sg), | X-goes-away (imper 2p) | and | God (nar) | goodness (dat) – in | X-makes-use-of-Y-for-Z (opt 3s 2p 3s) – [particle].

36.4 there, | thus | your | of straight-curve | shears, | please go away | and | God | in goodness | may he make use of you she said.

36.5 "There's your straight-curved shears for you!" she said to them. "Please leave us alone, and may God make good use of you."

37.1 კუდამოპუბული ძმები შინ დაბრუნდნენ, ოსტატმა და მისმა ცოლმა კი ბედნიერად იცხოვრეს.

37.2 *k'ud+a+mo+žu+eb+ul-i žm-eb-i šin da-brun-d-nen, ost'at'-ma da mis-ma col-ma k'i bed+n+ier-ad i-cxovr-es.*

37.3 tail + X-hangs-between-legs (perf part nom sg) | brother (nom pl) | home | X-returns (aor 3p), | craftsman (nar sg) | and | his (nar) | wife (nar sg) | [particle] | happily | X-lives (aor 3p).

37.4 tail hung between legs | brothers | home | they returned, | craftsman | and | his | wife | however | happily | they lived.
37.5 The brothers returned home with their tails between their legs, and the builder and his wife lived happily ever after.

Notes

2.2 იყო და არა იყო რა *i-q'-o da ara i-q'-o ra* 'once upon a time'.

4.1 იმისთანა *im-is-tana* 'like that, such a'; -თანა *-tana* denotes similarity; მეორე *me-or-e* 'second, other'.

5.1 ადგნენ და წავიდნენ *a-dg-nen da c'a-vid-nen*: cf. ადგა და... *a-dg-a da...* used to indicate the beginning of an action.

7.1 როგორც იქნა *rogor-c i-kn-a* 'with difficulty'.

10.1 კომისთანა *k'ošk'-is-tana*: see 4.1.

11.1 ყველაზე უკეთესი *q'vela-ze u+k'et+es-i* 'the best of all, the very best'.

17.1 რა გვენადვლება *ra gv-e-naǵvl-eb-a* 'what bothers us, what troubles us'.

23.1 იგივე დღე აწია *igi-ve dǵe a-c'-i-a*: cf. შავ დღეს დააწევს *šav dǵe-s da-a-c'-ev-s* 'he will cause him much trouble'.

APPENDICES

Number and Number Agreement

Summary

Indefinite pronouns take a singular verb, as do singular nouns, combinations of singular inanimates, inanimate plurals, and collective nouns. Quantifiers usually require the singular number of the noun.

Plural animate nouns (and inanimates treated as such) agree with a plural verb. The presence of an *n*-plural invariably triggers plural agreement, overriding any rule that might otherwise demand the singular.

The perfect participle can behave as a noun or as an adjective. The number of the relative pronoun is determined by the 'logical' number of the head noun or pronoun. In practice, there is some confusion within the system and 'non-standard' usages are not infrequent.

Illustrations are grouped under the following general headings.

- Singular verb + Indefinite pronoun
- Singular verb + Noun(s)
- Plural verb + Animate plural noun(s)
- Copula + Animate plurals
- Noun + Quantifier
- Adjective + Copula
- Relative clauses

Singular verb + Indefinite pronoun [↑]

The norm is that indefinite pronouns, such as ბევრი *bevr-i* 'many', ზოგი *zog-i* 'some', ორივე *or-i-ve* 'both', ყველა *q'vela* 'all' and the like, take a singular third person verb.

არსენა ბევრმა იცნო. [MJ1]
arsena bevr-ma i-cn-o.
Arsena (nom) many (nar) X-knows-Y (aor 3s)
Many knew Arsena.

ზოგმა დაიჯერა, ზოგმა არა. [NC]
*zog-ma da-i-**jer**-a, zog-ma ara.*
some (nar) X-believes-Y (aor 3s 3s), some (nar) not
Some believed it, others did not.

A plural verb is sometimes found with these pronouns. Inconsistencies in number agreement may occur in works by the same author, as in the following two pairs of examples.

ორივემ გაიღიმა. [MJ1]
*or-i-ve-m ga-i-**gim**-a.*
two – [particle] (nar) X-smiles (aor 3s)
Both smiled.

ორივემ გულიანად გაიცინეს. [MJ2]
*or-i-ve-m gul-ian-ad ga-i-**cin**-e-s.*
two – [particle] (nar) heartily X-laughes (aor 3p)
Both laughed heartily.

ყველამ არსენას გადაჰხედა. [MJ1]
*q'vela-m arsena-s ga+da-**h-xed**-a.*
all (nar) Arsena (dat) X-looks-at-Y (aor 3s 3s)
They all looked at Arsena.

ყველამ მარინეს გადაჰხედა. [MJ1]
*q'vela-m marine-s ga+da-**h-xed**-e-s.*
all (nar) Marine (dat) X-looks-at-Y (aor 3p 3s)
They all looked at Marine.

n-Plural

Indefinite pronouns in the *n*-plural invariably take plural verbs.

სამხრეთელები ბევრნი ვართ. [AM1]
samxret-el-eb-i bevr-n-i v-ar-t.
southerner (nom pl) many (nom pl) X-is (pres 1p)
We southerners are many.

ყველანი აქ არიან. [DJ]
q'vela-n-i ak ar-i-an.
all (nom pl) here X-is (pres 3p)
They are all here.

Singular verb + Noun(s) [↑]

The norm is that singular subjects take singular verbs. This is also the case for a combination of two or more singular inanimate nouns.

ბაღიც და სახლიც ძლივსა მოსჩანდა. [MJ1]
bag-i-c da saxl-i-c žlivs-ga mo-s-čan-d-a.
garden (nom sg) – [particle] and house (nom sg) – [particle] barely – [particle] X-is-visible [imp 3s]
Both the garden and the house were barely visible.

Confusion arises sometimes (as in English) when an inanimate noun, such as ნაწილი *na+c'il-i* 'part' (in the sense 'part of a whole'), is linked to an animate plural or collective noun, as in the following pair of illustrations.

კახთა ერთი ნაწილი ლეკის მოენე იყო. [MS1]
k'ax-ta ert-i na+c'il-i lek'-is mo-en-e i-q'-o.
Kakhetian (gen pl) one (nom) part (nom sg) Daghestanian (gen sg) informant (nom sg) X-is (aor 3s)
One part of the Kakhetians were Daghestanian informants.

[ქართველების] დიდ ნაწილს საბანკო სტრუქტურებისადმი ნდობა არ აქვთ. [Eph.]
kartv-el-eb-i-s did na+c'il-s sa-bank'-o st'rukt'ur-eb-is-admi nd-ob-a ar a-kv-t.
Georgians (gen pl) large (dat) part (dat sg) banking (gen) structure (gen pl) – towards trust (masdar nom) not X-has-Y (pres 3p 3s)
A large part of the Georgians do not have confidence in the banking structures.

Collective nouns

Collective nouns usually take a singular verb.

უმეტესობა სოფელში იყო გაფანტული. [MA1]
u+met'+es-ob-a sopel-ši i-q'-o ga-pant'-ul-i.
majority (nom) village (dat sg) – in X-is (aor 3s) X-scatters-Y (past part nom sg)
The majority were scattered throughout the village.

სადამოღობით იკრიბებოდა ამ კუთხის გლეხობა. [NC]
sagamo-ob-it i-k'rib-eb-od-a am k'utx-is glex-ob-a.
in-the-evenings X-gathers-together (imp 3s) this (gen) part (gen sg) peasantry (nom)
The peasants of this area used to get together in the evenings.

Inanimate plural noun(s)

The norm is that an inanimate plural noun takes a singular verb, as in the following illustration. Note the singular number with სხვადასხვა *sxva-da-sxva* 'various'.

ხეები დახუნძლული იყო სხვადასხვა ხილით. [NC]
xe-eb-i da-xunzl-ul-i i-q'-o sxva-da-sxva xil-it.
tree (nom pl) X-yields-much (past part nom sg) X-is (aor 3s) various fruit (inst sg)
The trees were laden with various kinds of fruits.

Two or more singular inanimate nouns take a singular verb.

პაპას დარგული კაკალი და ატამი გახმა. [GD]
p'ap'a-s da-rg-ul-i k'ak'al-i da at'am-i ga-xm-a.

grandfather (gen sg) X-sows (past part nom sg) walnut (nom sg) and peach (nom sg) X-withers (aor 3s)
The walnut and peach trees planted by Grandfather withered.

Compound human noun

Georgian frequently combines semantically two related nouns (usually, but not always, joined by a hyphen), as in მიწა-წყალი *mic'a-c'q'al-i*, literally 'earth-water', but meaning 'land to be worked', or 'the territory of a country' or, indeed, 'homeland'. Where the two nouns are animate, the accompanying verb is frequently in the singular, as in this illustration.

მისი ცოლ-შვილი მშიერი უნდა დარჩენილიყო. [Eph.]
mis-i col-švil-i m+ši+er-i u+nd+a da-rčen-il-i-q'-o.
his (nom) wife-child (nom sg) hungry (nom) [particle] X-remains (plup 3s)
His wife and child had to remain hungry.

However, there is significant fluctuation between the singular and the plural number in the verb, and variations can be found even within a single work, as in this pair of illustrations.

იქნება ლაცაბიძის დედ-მამა ამოვიდა ზუგდიდიდან? [MJ1]
i+kn+eb-a lacabiž-is ded-mama a+mo-vid-a zugdid-i-dan?
[particle] Latsabidze (gen) mother-father (nom sg) X-comes-up (aor 3s) Zugdidi (inst) – from?
Perhaps Latsabidze's parents have come up from Zugdidi?

რა დაუშავეს ჩემმა მოხუცებულმა დედ-მამამ? [MJ1]
ra da-u-šav-es čem-ma mo+xuc+eb+ul-ma ded-mama-m?
what (nom) X-harms-Y (aor 3p 3s) my (nar) X-ages (perf part nar sg) mother-father (nar sg)?
What harm have my elderly parents done him?

Plural verb + Animate plural noun(s) [↑]

Animate plural nouns agree with a plural verb.

ქალებმა რუსული არ იციან. [MJ1]
kal-eb-ma rus-ul-i ar i-c-i-an.
woman (nar pl) Russian (nom) not X-knows-Y (pres 3p 3s)
The women do not know Russian.

ქალი და კაცი ერთხანს დუმდნენ. [AM1]
kal-i da k'ac-i ert+xan-s dum-d-nen.
woman (nom sg) and man (nom sg) briefly X-is-silent (imp 3p)
The woman and the man were silent for a while.

ცხენებმაც ლაწა-ლუწი ასტეხეს და ჯაგნარში გზააბნეულ ნადირს გზა უყეელეს. [MJ1]
cxen-eb-ma-c lac'a-luc'-i a-s-t'ex-e-s da jag+nar-ši gza+a-bn-e-ul nadir-s gza u-q'el-e-s.
horse (nar pl) – [particle] smashing-sound (nom sg) X-begins-Y (aor 3p 3s) and briar-patch (dat sg) – in lost (dat sg) prey (dat sg) way (nom sg) X-blocks-Y's-Z (aor 3p 3s 3s)
The horses started a rumpus and cornered the disorientated prey in the briars.

Plural agreement extends to inanimate nouns commonly treated as animates, as in the following illustration.

მანქანები ეზოში დგანან.
mankan-eb-i ezo-ši dg-an-an.
car (nom pl) yard (dat sg) – in X-stands (pres 3p)
The cars stand in the yard.

Anthropomorphized inanimate plurals

A plural inanimate noun treated as an animate agrees with a plural verb.

მთებო, მთებო! რას ელით, ვის ელით? [VP1]
mt-eb-o, mt-eb-o! ra-s e-l-i-t, vi-s e-l-i-t?
mountain (voc pl), mountain (voc pl)! what (dat) X-waits-for-Y (pres 2p 3s), who (dat) X-waits-for-Y (pres 2p 3s)?
Mountains, O Mountains! What do you wait for? Whom do you wait for?

When they occur in the *n*-plural, such nouns behave regularly by agreeing with a plural verb.

მთანი მაღალნი იდგნენ და ელოდნენ. [VP1]
mta-n-i maǰal-n-i i-dg-nen da e-lod-nen.
mountain (nom pl) high (nom pl) X-stands (aor 3p) and X-waits-for-Y (aor 3p 3s)
The lofty mountains stood and waited.

Perfect participle

A perfect participle can behave as an animate plural nominal, and usually takes a plural verb when it is the subject of a clause.

სადამო ხანს ხანში შესულები იკრიბებოდნენ. [NC]
saǰamo xan-s xan-ši še-sul-eb-i i-k'rib-eb-od-nen.
evening (nom sg) time (dat sg) age (dat sg) – in X-enters (perf part nom pl) X-gathers-together (imp 3p)
In the evenings the elderly people used to gather together.

დედაჩემი ბავშვებს დაბანილებს დამახვედრებს. [Eph.]
deda-čem-i bavšv-eb-s da-ban-il-eb-s da-m-a-xvedr-eb-s.
my-mother (nom) child (dat pl) X-bathes-Y (perf part dat pl) X-keeps-Y-for-Z's-return (fut 3s 3p 1s)
My mother will have the children bathed for me when I return.

Although behaving as a plural animate subject, the perfect participle can also sometimes be found in the singular, accompanied by a plural verb.

შემდეგ გახარებული დაბრუნდნენ. [MJ1]
šemdeg ga-xar-eb-ul-i da-brun-d-nen.
later X-delights-Y (perf part nom sg) X-returns (aor 3p)
They later returned delighted.

Such perfect participles can also form the *n*-plural, and are accompanied by a plural verb.

ოთხივენი სახლში შეცვივდნენ და გაოცებულნი შედგნენ. [MJ1]
otx-i-ve-n-i saxl-ši še-cviv-d-nen da ga-oc-eb-ul-n-i še-dg-nen.
four – [particle] (nom pl) house (dat sg) – in X-dashes-into (aor 3p) and X-astonishes-Y (perf part nom pl) X-halts (aor 3p)
The four of them dashed into the house and came to a halt in astonishment.

ყველანი ხელცარიელნი დავბრუნდით უკან. [DJ]
q'vela-n-i xel-cariel-n-i da-v-brun-d-i-t uk'an.
all (nom pl) empty-handed (nom pl) X-returns (aor 1p) back
We all returned back empty-handed.

Copula + Animate plurals [↑]

The norm is that the plural copula links a plural animate subject – either pronoun (whether explicit or not) or noun – and a plural human noun, as in the following illustration.

ჩემი ნათესავები მსახიობები არიან. [GD]
čem-i na+tes+av-eb-i msaxiob-eb-i ar-i-an.
my (nom) relative (nom pl) actor (nom pl) X-is (pres 3p)
My relatives are actors.

This also applies to sentences with two or more animate nouns as subject.

გივი და ლაშა მფრინავები არიან. [GD]
givi da laša m+prin+av-eb-i ar-i-an.
Givi (nom) and Lasha (nom) pilot (nom pl) X-is (pres 3p)
Givi and Lasha are pilots.

However, one sometimes comes across the singular in such sentences.

ასეთებია ექიმები და მასწავლებლები. [Eph.]
as+et-eb-i-a ekim-eb-i da ma+sc'avl+eb-l-eb-i.
such-a (nom pl) – X-is (pres 3s) doctor (nom pl) and teacher (nom pl)
Such are doctors and teachers.

ხალხი *xalxi*

The number of the copula is variable when the linked noun is ხალხი *xalxi* 'people'.

ქართველები რბილი ხალხია. [ND1]
kartv-el-eb-i rbil-i xalxi-a.
Georgian (nom pl) soft (nom) people (nom) – X-is (pres 3s)
The Georgians are easy-going people.

ჩვენა უსწავლელი ხალხი ვართ. [MJ1]
čven-a u-sc'avl-el-i xalxi v-ar-t.
we (nom) – [case extension] X-studies-Y (privative part nom sg) people (nom) X-is (pres 1p)
We are uneducated people.

ხალხი არა ხართ. [NC]
xalxi ara x-ar-t.
people (nom) not X-is (2p)
You are not people.

Noun + Quantifier [↑]

The general norm is that quantifiers require the singular number of the noun. This is the case with numerals, as in the following illustration where the combination of a numeral and an animate noun agrees with a singular verb.

კიდევ სამი გოგო ცხოვრობს მათთან, მაგრამ ისინი იოლად იშოვიან ბინას. [AM1]
k'idev sam-i gogo cxovr-ob-s ma-t-tan, magram isi-n-i iol-ad i-šov-i-an bina-s.
further three (nom) girl (nom sg) X-lives (pres 3s) they (dat) – at, but they (nom) easily X-finds-Y (fut 3p 3s) flat (dat sg)
A further three girls live with them, but these will easily find a flat.

The *n*-plural of a numeral is nominal in nature and, like all *n*-plurals, agrees with a plural verb.

ხუთნი გადმოვიდნენ. [DJ]
xut-n-i gad+mo-vid-nen.
five (nom pl) X-comes-over (aor 3p)
The five of them came over.

The following quantifiers usually occur with a singular noun: ათასგვარი *at-as-gvar-i* 'many kinds of', ათასნაირი *at-as-nair-i* 'many kinds of', ბევრი *bevr-i* 'much, many', დიდძალა *did-žala* 'very much, very many', ზოგი *zog-i* 'some', თითო-ოროლა *tito-or+ola* 'one or two, several', მრავალი *mraval-i* 'much, many', ორივე *or-i-ve* 'both', რამდენი *ram+den-i* how much, how many', სხვადასხვა *skva-da-sxva* 'various', უამრავი *uamrav-i* 'very much, very many, numerous', უთვალავი *u-tval-av-i* 'very much, very many, countless', ურიცხვი *u-ricxv-i* 'very much, very many, countless', ყველა *q'vela* 'all', ყველანაირი *q'vela-nair-i* 'all kinds of', ყოველგვარი *qovel-gvar-i* 'all kinds of', ყოველნაირი *q'ovel-nair-i* 'all kinds of'.

The plural number is sometimes encountered with these determiners, as in the second of the following pair of illustrations (where a singular verb and perfect participle accompany the inanimate plural).

ომის გამო ამ გზებზე უამრავი ჯარი და ხალხი დადიოდა. [MJ1]
om-is gamo am gz-eb-ze uamravi jar-i da xalxi da-di-od-a.
war (gen sg) because-of this (dat) road (dat pl) – on numerous (nom) army (nom sg) and people (nom sg) X-goes (imp 3s)
Numerous soldiers and civilians were moving on these roads because of the war.

კედელზე უამრავი ნახაზები იყო გაკრული. [NC]
k'edel-ze uamrav-i na-xaz-eb-i i-q'-o ga-k'r-ul-i.
wall (dat sg) – on numerous (nom) drawing (nom pl) X-is (aor 3s) X-affixes-Y-to-Z (perf part nom sg)
Numerous drawings were affixed to the wall.

The norm is that the following quantifiers occur with a plural noun, although a singular sometimes occurs: ნაირ-ნაირი *nair-nair-i* 'various kinds of', სხვადასხვაგვარი *sxva-da-sxva-gvar-i* 'various kinds of'.

ბევრმა გულმკერდი ნაირნაირი ორდენებით დაიმშვენა. [Eph.]
bevr-ma gul-mk'erd-i nair-nair-i orden-eb-it da-i-mšven-a.
many (nar) chest (nom sg) various-kinds-of (inst) medal (inst pl) X-adorns-his-Y (aor 3s 3s)
Many adorned their chests with medals of various kinds.

სუფრაზე გაჩნდა ნაირ-ნაირი ნუგბარი. [Eph.]
supra-ze ga-čn-d-a nair-nair-i nugbar-i.
table (dat sg) – on X-appears (aor 3s) various-kinds-of (nom) delicacy (nom sg)
Various kinds of delicacies appeared on the table.

Adjective + Copula [↑]

When a plural animate subject (whether explicit or implicit) is linked by the plural copula to one or more adjectives, the norm is that these predicative adjectives are in the plural.

პატიოსნები და ყოჩაღები იყვნენ. [MJ2]
p'at'iosn-eb-i da q'očağ-eb-i i-q'v-nen.
honest (nom pl) and valiant (nom pl) X-is (aor 3p)
They were honest and valiant.

ჩვენ ძალიან ცუდები ვართ. [AM1]
čven žalian cud-eb-i v-ar-t.
we (nom) very bad (nom pl) X-is (1p)
We are very bad.

These plural non-attributive adjectives can be viewed as animate nominals ('honest and valiant people' and 'bad people' could be substituted in the these illustrations), and the construction is thus analogous to the situation described under 'Copula + Animate plurals' above. Predicative adjectives can also sometimes occur in the singular with the plural copula, and fluctuations can be found within a single work, as in the following pair of illustrations.

ეს ჩიტები, ეს ძაღლი, კამეჩი და ღორიც ჩემზე და შენზე ათწილ და ასწილ ბედნიერი არიან. [MJ2]
es čit-eb-i, es žağl-i, k'ameč-i da ġor-i-c čem-ze da šen-ze at-c'il da as-c'il bednier-i ar-i-an.
this (nom) bird (nom pl) this (nom) dog (nom sg), buffalo (nom sg) and pig (nom sg) – [particle] I (dat) – on and you (dat) – on ten-times and hundred-times happy (nom) X-is (pres 3p)
These birds, this dog, the buffalo, and the pig too, are ten, a hundred times happier than me.

ის ძაღლიც და ის ღორიც ჩემზე ბედნიერები არიან. [MJ2]
is žağl-i-c da is ġor-i-c čem-ze bednier-eb-i ar-i-an
that (nom) dog (nom sg) – [particle] and that (nom) pig (nom) – [particle] I (dat) – on happy (nom pl) X-is (pres 3p)
Both that dog and that pig are happier than me.

Perfect participle

The perfect participle, in combination with the copula, behaves as an adjective in the following two pairs of illustrations. The instability in the plural marking of the participle is evident.

ყველა ძალიან გახარებულები ვართ. [Eph.]
q'vela žalian ga-xar-eb-ul-eb-i v-ar-t.
all (nom) very X-delights-Y (perf part nom pl) X-is (pres 1p)
We are all very delighted.

ჩვენ ძალიან გახარებული ვართ. [Eph.]
čven žalian ga-xar-eb-ul-i v-ar-t.
we (nom) very X-delights-Y (perf part nom sg) X-is (pres 1p)
We are very delighted.

ყველა მიცნობდა და თითქოს შეჩვეული იყვნენ ჩემ გარეგნობას. [Eph.]
q'vela m-i-cn-ob-d-a da titkos še-čve-ul-i i-q'v-nen čem garegn-ob-a-s.
all (nom) X-knows-Y (imp 3s 1s) and [particle] X-is-accustomed-to-Y (perf part nom sg) X-is (aor 3p) my (dat) appearance (dat sg)
All knew me and would have been accustomed to my appearance.

ისინი შეჩვეულები იყვნენ ნათიას უცნაურობებს. [Eph.]

isi-n-i še-čve-ul-eb-i i-q'v-nen natia-s ucnaur-ob-eb-s.

they (nom) X-is-accustomed-to-Y (perf part nom pl) X-is (aor 3p) strange-characteristic (dat pl)
They were accustomed to Natia's strange ways.

n-Plural

Non-attributive adjectives and participles can also take the *n*-plural, and agree with a plural verb.

მარტონი ვიყავით. [DJ]

mart'o-n-i v-i-q'av-i-t.

alone (nom pl) X-is (aor 1p)

We were alone.

ორივენი დაღლილები ვართ. [MJ4]

or-i-ve-n-i da-ǰl-il-eb-i v-ar-t.

two – [particle] (nom pl) X-tires-Y (perf part nom pl) X-is (pres 1p)

Both of us are tired.

Relative clauses [↑]

In relative clauses the number of the relative pronoun is determined by whether the head noun or pronoun is 'logically' (not 'grammatically') singular or plural. The behaviour of the verb in the relative clause is similar to that described above.

In the following illustration, the animate head noun კაცი *k'aci* is 'grammatically' singular following the numeral, but the relative pronoun რომლებიც *romlebic* and the verb აბოლებდნენ *abolebdnen* in the relative clause are both in the plural, reflecting the 'logical' or real-world plural animate referent.

დაინახა მერხზე ჩამომჯდარი ორი კაცი, რომლებიც აბოლებდნენ სიგარეტს. [AM1]

da-i-nax-a merx-ze ča+mo-m-jd-ar-i or-i k'ac-i, roml-eb-i-c a-bol-eb-d-nen sigaret'-s.

X-catches-sight-of-Y (aor 3s 3s) bench (dat sg) – on X-sits-down (act part nom sg) two (nom) man (nom sg),
who (nom pl) X-smokes-Y (imp 3p 3s) cigarette (dat sg)

He caught sight of two men sitting on a bench and smoking a cigarette.

The inanimate plural head noun ფოტოები *pot'oebi* takes the singular verb მოწმობს *moc'mobs* in the main clause in the following example, while the plural relative pronoun რომლებიც *romlebic* takes a plural verb ამშვენებენ *amšveneben* in the subordinate clause.

[ამას] მოწმობს ძველი ფოტოები, რომლებიც ამშვენებენ ჩვენი ბინის კედლებს. [DJ]

[am-a-s] mo-c'm-ob-s žvel-i pot'o-eb-i, roml-eb-i-c a-mšven-eb-en čven-i bin-is k'edl-eb-s.

this (dat) X-demonstrates-Y (pres 3s 3s) old (nom) photo (nom pl), which (nom pl) X-decorates-Y (pres 3p 3p)
our (gen) flat (gen sg) wall (dat pl)

The old photos decorating the walls of our flat are evidence of this.

The following example differs from the previous one in that the verb in the relative clause is in the singular.

ყორების გასწვრივ შემოწყობილი იყო დიდი ქვები, რომლებიც სავარძლების როლს ასრულებდა. [NC]

q'ore-eb-is gasc'vrviv še-mo-c'q'-ob-il-i i-q'-o did-i kv-eb-i, roml-eb-i-c savaržl-eb-is rol-s a-srul-eb-d-a.

pile-of-rocks (gen pl) along X-arranges-Y-around-Z (perf part nom sg) X-is (aor sg) big (nom) stone (nom pl),
which (nom pl) armchair (gen pl) role (dat sg) X-fulfills-Y (imp 3s 3s)

Arranged around the piles of rocks were large stones that served as armchairs.

The plural relative pronoun can occur in an oblique case, such as the genitive in the following illustration.

არაჩვეულებრივი ლექტორები მყავდნენ [= მყავდა], რომლების ერთ ლექციაზე დასწრების გამო ღირდა მან
დ [სიარული]. [Eph.]

*ara-čveulebriv-i lekt'or-eb-i m-q'av-d-nen [= m-q'av-d-a], roml-eb-is ert lekcia-ze da-sc'r-eb-is gamo ǰir-d-a
mand [si-ar-ul-i].*

extraordinary (nom) lecturer (nom pl) X-has-Y (imp 1s 3p), who (gen pl) one (dat) lecture (dat) – on X-attends-
Y (masdar gen) because-of X-is-worth-Y (imp 3s 3s) there X-goes (masdar nom)

I had some extraordinary lecturers, attendance at one of whose lectures made going there worthwhile.

The relative pronoun can also occur in the *n*-plural, although the nominative is nearly obsolete in the modern language.

ძალიან მოენატრა ქალები, რომელთაც მატარებლით გამოექცა დედაქალაქიდან. [AM1]

zalian mo-e-nat'r-a kal-eb-i, romel-ta-c mat'arebl-it ga+mo-e-ka-a deda-kalak-i-dan.

very X-misses-Y (aor 3s 3p) woman (nom pl), who (gen pl) train (inst sg) X-leaves-rapidly (plup 3s) capital (inst sg) – from

He very much missed the women with whom he had fled the capital by train.

The following rather inelegant sentence from a news report contains no fewer than four relative clauses. A number of the points on made above on number agreement are illustrated here.

პირველი, რასაც ის ხაზს უსვამს, გახლავთ, რომ "ფართო ევროპის" პროგრამა მოიცავს ქვეყნების ძალიან ფართო სპექტრს, რომელთა ერთ ნაწილს წარმოადგენენ დასავლეთი ბალკანეთის ქვეყნები, რომლებსაც უკვე დაპირდნენ ევროკავშირის წევრობას მომავალში, ქვეყნების მეორე ნაწილი კი არიან სამხრეთი ხმელთაშუა ზღვისპირეთის ქვეყნები, რომლებსაც უკვე განემარტათ, რომ არავითარი შანსი არაქვთ ევროკავშირის წევრობის. [Eph.]

p'irvel-i, ra-s-a-c is xaz-s u-sv-am-s, g-a-xl-av-t, rom "parto evrop'-is" p'ograma mo-i-c-av-s kveq'n-eb-is zalian parto sp'ek't'r-s, romel-ta ert na+c'il-s c'ar+mo-a-dgen-en dasavlet-i balk'an-et-is kveq'n-eb-i, roml-eb-s-a-c uk've da-Ø-p'ir-d-nen evro+k'avšir-is c'evr-oba-s momaval-ši, kveq'n-eb-is me-or-e nac'il-i k'i ar-i-an samxret-i xmel-ta-šua-zgv-is+p'ir-et-is kveq'n-eb-i, roml-eb-s-a-c uk've gan-e-mart'-a-t, rom aravitar-i šans-i ar-a-kv-t evro-k'avšir-is c'evr-ob-is.

first (nom), which (dat) that (nom) line (dat sg) X-writes-Y-under-Z (pres 3s 3s 3s), X-is (pres 3s), that "broad (gen) Europe (gen)" programme (nom sg) X-comprises-Y (pres 3s 3s) very wide (dat) spectrum (dat sg), which (gen pl) one (dat) part (dat sg) X-represents-Y (pres 3p 3s) west (nom) Balkans (gen) country (nom pl), which (dat pl) already X-promises-Y-to- Z (aor 3p 3s 3p) European-Union (gen) membership (dat) future (dat) – in, country (gen pl) second (nom) part (nom sg) [particle] X-is (pres 3p) south (gen) Mediterranean-coast (gen) country (nom pl), which (dat pl) already X-makes-Y-clear (plup 3p 3s), that none-whatsoever (nom) chance (nom sg) X-has-Y (pres 3p 3s) European-Union (gen) membership (gen)

The first thing that this underlines is that the 'Broader Europe' programme comprises a very broad spectrum of countries, one part of which the west Balkan countries represent, to whom future membership of the European Union has already been promised, while the second part of these countries are those on the south of the Mediterranean, who have already made it clear that they have no chance whatsoever of EU membership.

Sources

- AM1 აკა მორჩილაძე, *სხვა*
DJ დავით ჯავახიშვილი, *დამთხვევები და შემთხვევები*
Eph. newspaper, Internet page, or the like.
GD ქეთევან გოჩიტაშვილი, ნანა დანელია, *სავარჯიშო რვეული ქართულ მართლწერაში*
MJ1 მიხეილ ჯავახიშვილი, *არსენა მარაბდელი*
MJ2 მიხეილ ჯავახიშვილი, *ჰაყოს ხიზნები*
MJ3 მიხეილ ჯავახიშვილი, *თეთრი საყელო*
MJ4 მიხეილ ჯავახიშვილი, *კურდღელი*
NC ნოდარ ცერცვაძე, *ასე იყო*
ND1 ნოდარ დუმბაძე, *ნუ გეშინია, დედა!*
VP1 ვაჟა-ფშაველა, *მთანი მაღალნი*

Deviations from Grammatical Norms

Like other languages with normative rules of grammar, Georgian exhibits a number of deviations from these norms as a result of various processes, including dialectal influences. The deviations described here are sometimes encountered in the spoken language, and very occasionally in writing.

Singular and Plural

Generally speaking, the Georgian language defaults to the singular number, except when the reference is to an animate -ებ- / -*eb* plural or to an ნ- / *n*-plural. However, there are a number of situations where number agreement sometimes contravenes the normative rules in the colloquial language.

The norm is that the singular accompanies such quantifiers as ამდენი *amdeni* ('so many'), ბევრი *bevri* ('much, many'), ზოგი *zogi* ('some'), მრავალი *mravali* ('many'), რამდენიმე *ramdenime* ('several'), სხვადასხვა *skhvadaskhva* ('various'), უამრავი *uamravi* ('numerous'), and the like. However, these are frequently followed by the plural in colloquial speech, e.g., ბევრი წიგნი *bevri ts'ign-i* → *ბევრი წიგნები **bevri ts'ign-eb-i* ('many books').

Numerals with the suffixed particle -ვე *-ve* are followed by the singular in the standard language, but colloquially sometimes by the plural, e.g., სამივე მოვიდა *sam-i-ve mo-vid-a* → *სამივე მოვიდნენ **sam-i-ve mo-vid-nen* ('all three came'). ყველა *q'vela* ('all') behaves in a similar manner.

Standard Georgian has a number of verb roots restricted to the singular, with other corresponding roots reserved for the plural (including inanimates, in an exception to the general rule). Note that the relevant plural may be either the subject or the direct object. One may sometimes hear a plural verb based on the 'singular' root in place of the standard plural form, as in the following illustrations:

NORM		DEVIATION		
PLUR. ROOT	pres. 3	SING. ROOT	pres. 3	
-ყრ- -q'r-	*კენჭებს ყრის <i>*k'ench'-eb-s q'r-i-s</i>	-გდ- -gd-	კენჭებს აგდებს <i>k'ench'-eb-s a-gd-eb-s</i>	'he throws the pebbles'
-ხოც- -khots-	იხოცებიან <i>i-khots-eb-i-an</i>	-კვდ- -k'vd-	*კვდებიან <i>*k'vd-eb-i-an</i>	'they die'
-სხ- -skh-	*სტუმრებს ასხამს <i>*st'umr-eb-s a-skh-am-s</i>	-სვ- -sv-	სტუმრებს სვამს <i>st'umr-eb-s sv-am-s</i>	'he seats the guests'
-სხედ- -skhed-	სხედან <i>skhed-an</i>	-ზ- -z-	*ზიან <i>*z-i-an</i>	'they sit'

Under the influence of some European languages, Georgian has acquired the custom of using the second person plural as a polite form of addressing one person. The reversions sometimes heard in colloquial speech to the older Georgian usage of the singular should not necessarily be assumed to be disparaging. At the same time, one may also sometimes hear such hypercorrected forms as *კარგიით *k'arg-i-t* ('good') and ბოდიშით *bodish-i-t* ('excuse me'), where the plural marker -ით *-t* has become a marker of politeness.

Forenames

The stems of Georgian forenames may end in a consonant (ლევანი *levan-i* 'Levan') or a vowel (ნინო *nino* 'Nino'). In the standard language, the vocative case corresponds to the bare stem (here, ლევან! *levan!* and ნინო! *nino!*). Occasionally, the ending -ი *-i* may be the final letter of the stem (e.g., გიორგი *giorgi* 'George'), but it is usually the nominative suffix applied to a consonantal stem (e.g., ვახტანგი *vakht'ang-i* 'Vakhtang'). However, in the colloquial language, the latter is sometimes re-interpreted as an ი- / *i*-stem noun, resulting in such non-standard vocatives as *ოთარი! **otari!* and *ნოდარი! **nodari!*, instead of the standard ოთარ! *otar!* ('Otar') and ნოდარ! *nodar!* ('Nodar'). This can also extend to other cases, as in the following illustration:

*თამაზიმ დროზე დაამთავრა.

**tamazi-m dro-ze da-a-mtavr-a.*

თამაზმა დროზე დაამთავრა.

tamaz-ma dro-ze da-a-mtavr-a.

Tamaz (nar) time (dat sg) – on (post) X-finishes-Y (aor 3s 3s)

Tamaz finished it on time.

Basic C3 Verbs

The first and second persons of the present screeve of certain basic C3 verbs are sometimes derived by affixing the corresponding forms of the present screeve of the verb 'to be' (ყოფნა *q'opn-a*) in a manner similar to the basic verbs of motion, as in the following example using the verb ტირის *t'ir-i-s* ('he cries'):

PERSON	NORM	DEVIATION	
1s (1p)	ვტირი(თ) <i>v-t'ir-i(-t)</i>	*ვტირივარ(თ) <i>*v-t'ir-i-v+ar(-t)</i>	'I (we) cry'
2s (2p)	ტირი(თ) <i>t'ir-i(-t)</i>	*ტირიხარ(თ) <i>*t'ir-i-kh+ar(-t)</i>	'you cry'
3s	ტირის <i>t'ir-i-s</i>		'he cries'
3p	ტირიან <i>t'ir-i-an</i>		'they cry'

Other verbs in this category are კვივის *k'iv-i-s* ('he shrieks'), მღერის *mgher-i-s* ('he sings') and ტყუის *t'q'u-i-s* ('he tells an untruth').

Verbs with PSF -ავ -av and -ამ -am

Under the influence of western Georgian dialects, the PSF -ამ -am in the standard language is sometimes replaced by -ავ -av, as in the following illustrations:

ROOT	NORM	DEVIATION	
-სვ- <i>-sv-</i>	სვამს <i>sv-am-s</i>	*სვავს <i>*sv-av-s</i>	'he drinks it'
-სხ- <i>-skh-</i>	ასხამს <i>a-skh-am-s</i>	*ასხავს <i>*a-skh-av-s</i>	'he pours it'

Less common is the converse where, under the influence of eastern dialects, the PSF -ავ -av is occasionally replaced by -ამ -am (e.g., კარგავს *k'arg-av-s* → კარგამს **k'arg-am-s* 'he loses it').

Perfect Screeve of Verbs with PSF -ავ -av and -ამ -am

The normative rule for the formation of the perfect screeve of C1 verbs with PSF -ავ -av and -ამ -am involves the addition of the PM -ს -s to the verb stem, for example ხატავს *khat'-av-s* ('he paints it') → დაუხატავს *da-u-khat'-av-s* ('he painted it'). However, an alternative form is frequently heard, employing the PSF -∅ in combination with the SM -ო -i and the PM -ა -a, as in the following examples:

ROOT	NORM	DEVIATION	
-ბ- <i>-b-</i>	დაუბამს <i>da-u-b-am-s</i>	*დაუბია <i>*da-u-b-i-a</i>	'he tied it up'
-თქვ- <i>-tkv-</i>	უთქვამს <i>u-tkv-am-s</i>	*უთქვია <i>*u-tkv-i-a</i>	'he said it'
-ნახ- <i>-nakh-</i>	უნახავს <i>u-nakh-av-s</i>	*უნახია <i>*u-nakh-i-a</i>	'he saw it'
-ხატ- <i>-khat'-</i>	დაუხატავს <i>da-u-khat'-av-s</i>	*დაუხატია <i>*da-u-khat'-i-a</i>	'he painted it'

Intrusive -ავ

In the colloquial language, a number of root verbs (that is, verbs with PSF -∅) – usually with root vowel ე e and sometimes exhibiting ablaut – occasionally have present and future subseries forms based on a stem incorporating the PSF -ავ -av, as in the following illustrations:

ROOT	NORM	DEVIATION	
-წყვეტ- -ts'q'vet'-	წყვეტს ts'q'vet'-s	*წყვეტავს *ts'q'vit'-av-s	'he decides it'
-ხვრეტ- -khvret'-	ხვრეტს khvret'-s	*ხვრიტავს *khvrit'-av-s	'he drills it'

Abbreviations

This is a list of some of the less common abbreviations used in this grammar.

abs	absolute
adv	adverbial
aor	aorist
AV	auxiliary verb
cond	conditional
C#	Class #
dat	dative
fut	future
gen	genitive
imp	imperfect
imper	imperative
intrans	intransitive
IO	indirect object
IPA	International Phonetic Association
mas	masdar
nar	narrative
NCC	North Central Caucasian
NEC	North East Caucasian
nom	nominative
num.	numeral
NWC	North West Caucasian
opt	optative
part	participle
pass	passive
perf	perfect
pl	plural
PI	passive infix
Plur	plural marker
plup	pluperfect
PM	pronominal marker
PSF	present/future stem formant
PV	pre-radical vowel
PVB	preverb
pres	present
rel	relative
SA	stem augment
SM	screeve marker
sg	singular
stat	stative
sub	subject
subj	subjunctive
S#	Series #

trans	transitive
val	valency
voc	vocative
∅	null (unwritten) affix
1s	first person singular
2s	second person singular
2p	second person plural
3s	third person singular
3p	third person plural
-	morpheme boundary
–	root or stem
+	as '-' but tightly bound
	or
/	or
→ A	refer to A, see A
A → B	B is derived from A
A ← B	A is derived from B
	root of finite verb
*	incorrect or assumed form

Glossary

This glossary provides brief explanations of some selected specialized terms. It does not cover the parts of speech described in detail in this grammar. The definitions are far from complete, and so it is recommended that you consult a good textbook on linguistics for more information.

Ablaut	→ Vowel alteration in a word → root that changes the grammatical function of a word, e.g., 'get' / 'got'.
Absolute verb	A → verb which incorporates a → subject and a → direct object, but no → indirect object.
Active language	A language in which the → subject of a → transitive verb is marked with the same → case as the → subject of an → 'active' → intransitive, while the → object of a → transitive verb is marked with the same → case as the → subject of an → 'inactive' → intransitive.
Active participle	A → non-finite verb form that names the 'doer' of the action described by the corresponding → verb, e.g., 'singer', 'cleaner'.
Active verb	A → verb whose → subject is the 'doer' of the action.
Active voice	A grammatical structure in which the → subject is the 'actor'.
Adjective	A word that modifies a → noun, e.g., 'big', 'small', etc.
Adverb	A word that modifies a → verb, e.g., 'quickly', 'slowly', etc.
Affix	A grammatical element added to a word or part of a word.
Agglutinative language	A language in which elements combine linearly to form words, each element having a distinctive role.
Agreement	The requirement for associated words to share features, e.g., 'they have', where both the pronoun and the verb are plural.
Allophone	A variation in the realization of a basic sound of a language, but which can never by itself change the meaning of a word.
Areal	Based on a geographical region.
Ascender	The part of a letter that projects above the level of 'basic' letters, e.g., 'd' and 'k' have ascenders, whereas 'x' does not.
Aspect	The viewpoint of whether the action is completed ('perfective aspect') or uncompleted ('imperfective aspect').
Aspiration	The audible breath that accompanies some sounds.
Assimilation	The process by which individual sounds exert an influence on adjacent sounds.
Bipersonal verb	A → verb which has a → subject and an → object.
Cardinal number	The counting numbers one, two, three, etc.
Case extension	The addition of the suffix -s -a to some → case endings.
Case	Variation in the structure of → nouns, → adjectives, or → pronouns to show grammatical relationships.
Causative verb	A → verb that describes the 'enabling' of another person's actions by the → subject, e.g., 'he causes him to write it / he makes him write it / he lets him write it'.
Circumfix	An → affix that consists of the combination of a prefix and a suffix.
Class	→ Verb class
Clause	A part of a sentence that contains a → subject and a → verb.
Conjugation	The addition of a set of → affixes to a → verb to express its grammatical relationship to the rest of the sentence.
Consonant	A speech sound that is produced with some constriction of the vocal tract, as the 't' sound in 'at'. → Vowel
Copula	The linking → verb 'to be'.
Cursive script	A script used in handwriting.
Declension	The addition of a set of → affixes to a → noun to express its grammatical relationship to the rest of the sentence.
Dene-Caucasian	A putative 'superfamily' uniting several language families.

Denominative verb	A → verb derived from a → noun. Also used loosely to include → verbs derived from → adjectives.
Descender	The part of a letter that projects below the level of 'basic' letters, e.g., 'p' and 'y' have ascenders, whereas 'x' does not.
Desiderative verb	A → verb that indicates a desire or urge to do something.
Determiner	A category of word that helps 'determine' the interpretation of a → noun, and which includes → adjectives.
Digraph	A sequence of two or more letters pronounced as a single sound.
Diphthong	A → vowel that sequentially combines the qualities of two → vowels, as in the English words 'day' and 'how'.
Direct object	The direct 'experiencer' of the action expressed by the → verb.
Direct verb	A → verb that is not accompanied by → inversion.
Dissimilation	The process by which sounds influence each other such that they become less alike.
Ejective consonant	A → consonant whose production involves the sudden release of air compressed by the closed → glottis.
Ergative case	→ Narrative case
Ergative language	A language in which the → object of a → transitive verb is marked in the same way as the → subject of an → intransitive verb.
Expressive verb	A → verb that depicts noise, light, or certain types of motion.
Finite verb	A → verb that stands alone in a main → clause and expresses time, person, number, and so on, as in the English 'he held it'.
Fricative	A → consonant whose production involves some friction, e.g., 'f', 'v', 's', 'z', etc.
Future participle	A → non-finite verb form that behaves as an → adjective describing that which will be subjected to the action of the → verb, or that to be used in implementing the action of the → verb.
Gerund	A → non-finite verb form that behaves as a → noun, e.g., 'saying'.
Glottal stop	A sound such as the unwritten release of the → glottis between the two 'o's in 'co-operate'.
Glottis	The aperture between the folds of the vocal cords.
Glottochronology	The study of the time relationships between differing languages based upon comparisons of their shared vocabulary.
Harmonic cluster	A group of → consonants in which the point of articulation moves from the front to the back of the mouth, and in which the individual elements are of the same type (→ voiced, → voiceless aspirated, or → voiceless ejective).
Imperative	
Imperfective aspect	A viewpoint from which the action of the → verb is considered as uncompleted.
Inactive verb	A → verb whose → subject is the 'experiencer' of the action.
Inceptive verb	A → verb that denotes a change of state, e.g., 'he fell in love', 'he became afraid'.
Indicative mood	The expression of a statement or question.
Indirect object	The indirect 'experiencer' of the action expressed by the → verb.
Indirect verb	(1) A Class 4 → verb. (2) A → verb that is accompanied by → inversion.
Inflected language	A language in which there is no exact one-to-one correspondence between the basic elements and the resulting forms of the words that result from their combination.
Infix	An → affix which is inserted into a word, in contrast to a prefix, suffix, or → circumfix.
Intransitive verb	A → verb with a → subject but no → direct object.
Inversion	The use of the dative case to mark the → subject, while the → direct object is marked by the nominative.
IPA	The 'International Phonetic Alphabet', a standardized means of transcribing the sounds of the world's languages.
Left-branching language	A language in which → adjectives and genitive → nouns precede the → nouns they modify.

Ligature	A sequence of two or more connected letters.
Locative expression	An expression of place.
Majuscule	A capital letter.
Masdar	A form of the → verb that behaves as a → noun. It does not provide any information as to the time of the action, the person involved, or other details typically contained in a → finite verb form. Instead, it expresses the intrinsic 'essence' of the verb, its basic meaning. It may be compared with the English verbal nouns 'to hold' and 'holding', for example.
Medial verb	A Class 3 → verb.
Metathesis	The transposition of sounds in a word.
Monopersonal verb	A → verb which has a → subject, but no → object.
Mood	→ Indicative mood; → Subjunctive mood
Morpheme	The minimal distinctive grammatical unit.
Morphology	The study of word structure.
Narrative case	The → case that marks the → subjects of Class 1 and Class 3 → verbs in the aorist series. It is also known as the ergative → case.
Nostratic	A putative 'superfamily' uniting several language families, including the Indo-European and Kartvelian families.
Non-attributive adjective	An → adjective that does not precede the → noun it modifies.
Non-finite verb	A → verb that occurs in a dependent clause and that does not distinguish time, person, number, and so on, such as the English → gerund 'holding'.
Non-inverted verb	→ Direct verb
Noun	A word that names a person, place, or thing.
Noun class	A grouping of → nouns with similar behavior, such as the 'feminine' → nouns of some Indo-European languages.
Object	The 'receiver' or 'goal' of an action.
Oblique case	A → case other than the nominative.
Ordinal number	A number that expresses relative order, e.g., first, second, third, etc.
Participle	→ Active participle; → Future participle; → Perfect participle
Passive voice	A grammatical structure in which the → subject is the 'recipient' or 'experiencer' of the action.
Perfect participle	A → non-finite verb form that behaves as a derived → adjective describing the action or state of the → verb in past time, e.g., 'sung', 'cleaned'.
Perfective aspect	A viewpoint from which the action of the → verb is considered as completed.
Periphrastic passive	A form of the → passive that comprises the verb 'to be' or 'to have' in combination with a → participle.
Phonology	The study of the sounds of languages.
Plosive	A → consonant produced by the sudden release of air, e.g., 'p', 'd', etc.
Polypersonalism	The incorporation of a → subject, → direct object, and → indirect object into the → verb.
Postfix	A suffix.
Postposition	A word or suffix that occurs after a → noun, and which has a similar role to that of the preposition in English ('on', 'at', etc.).
Predicate	The constituent parts of a sentence with the exclusion of the → subject.
Prefixal intransitives	A sub-category of Class 2 → verbs with pre-radical vowel o- i-.
Pronoun	A word that can substitute for a noun.
Radical intransitives	A sub-category of Class 2 → verbs with present/future stem formant -ǰb -eb.
Reflexive construction	A construction in which the → subject and → object of a → verb refer to the same person or thing.
Relative construction	A construction involving an → indirect object.
Relative verb	A → verb which incorporates a → subject and → indirect object, but no → direct object.

Resultative verb	A → verb form that emphasises the outcome of an action.
Root	That which remains when all → affixes are removed from a word.
Rounded vowel	A → vowel accompanied by lip rounding, e.g., 'o' and 'u'.
Screeve	A form of a → verb that is characterized by a particular combination of time reference, → mood, → aspect, etc.
Series	A grouping of → verb → screeves with shared characteristics.
Sino-Caucasian	→ Dene-Caucasian
Sprachbund	A linguistic area.
Subject	The 'doer' of the action expressed by the → verb.
Subordinate clause	A dependant → clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction.
Subjunctive mood	The expression of a wish, desire, uncertainty, and the like.
Subseries	A subdivision of a → series.
Stem	→ Verb stem
Suffixal intransitives	A sub-category of Class 2 → verbs with stem augment - <i>ᵛ</i> - <i>d</i> .
Syncope	The omission of sounds in a word.
Syntax	The study of sentence structure.
Tense	The time reference of a → verb.
Transitive verb	A → verb with a → subject and a → direct object.
Tripersonal verb	A → verb with a → subject, → direct object, and an → indirect object.
Truncated imperative	A short form of the → imperative.
Unrounded vowel	A → vowel not accompanied by lip rounding, e.g., 'e' and 'i'.
Unvoiced consonant	A → consonant that is not accompanied by vibration of the vocal chords, e.g., 'p', 't', etc.
Uvular consonant	A → consonant in which the back of the tongue makes contact with the back of the soft palate or uvula.
Velar consonant	A → consonant in which the back of the tongue makes contact with the soft palate or velum.
Verb	A 'doing' or 'action' word.
Verb class	A grouping of → verbs that share similar → morphological and semantic characteristics.
Verb stem	The → verb → root in combination with a present/future stem formant.
Version	The use of the pre-radical vowel to mark the nature of the relationship with the → subject or → indirect object of a → verb.
Vigesimal	Based on the number twenty.
Voice	→ Active voice; → Passive voice
Voiced consonant	A → consonant that is accompanied by vibration of the vocal chords, e.g., 'b', 'd', etc.
Voiceless consonant	A → consonant that is not accompanied by vibration of the vocal chords, e.g., 'p', 't', etc.
Vowel	A speech sound that is accompanied by no audible friction, as the 'a' sound in 'at'. → Consonant